FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Brush Up Your English

S T IMAM

Vocabulary
Rules of Grammar
Comprehension
General Essays

350/-

Brush Up Your English

S T IMAM

PAKISTAN BOOK HOUSE
C.S.S
P.C.S
EXPERT
HYD: 0344-3050698

Bharati Bhawan
PUBLISHERS & DISTRIBUTORS

Copyright © 2018 by **Bharti Bhawan**

All rights are reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the express written permission of the publisher except for the use of brief quotations in a book review.

New Delhi
4271/3 Ansari Road, Daryaganj, New Delhi 110 002

Preface

This book is the outcome of a discussion I had with the publishe while writing *Test Your English: A Five-Week Course*. That book ha a large number of questions, but very little on grammar. It wa decided that a book needs to be written to cater to the needs of thos students who not only need practice exercises for various competi tions, but also need to brush up the rules of grammar, their vocabu lary, etc. Thus *Brush Up Your English* was born.

The aim of this book is to make the dry-as-dust rules of gram mar—a nightmare for majority of students—palatable enough to go down even an unwilling throat. Another point of emphasis is WORD POWER. With words, say Norman Lewis and Wilfred Funk, you relate to people, communicate your feelings and thoughts to them, influ ence them, persuade them, control them. They help you go places win friends and influence people.

The exercises have been so graded that they will put students through their paces. It is a modest attempt at making them attain proficiency in writing clear, correct and beautiful English. I am sure this book will help students avoid poor grammar and sloppy construction, and learn the nuances of language.

I am beholden to very many teachers of English—their number is legion—for encouraging me, from time to time, to stick on to the job of writing books on English grammar and composition. My own teaching experience—spanning over a period of thirty-six years—and my contact with students of all levels have helped me immeasurably in knowing their linguistic imperfections and inadequacies. I have tried to address these weak points. I hope that the readers benefit from this book.

S T IMAM

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

CONTENTS

Preface v

Preliminary Test: A Curtain Raiser vi

Question Format and Answer-sheet xvi

1. Introduction 1
2. Word Power 13
3. Antonyms 76
4. Synonyms 88
5. Paronyms or Pair of Words 99
6. Words Often Mistaken for One Another (Brain Teasers) 123
7. One-Word Substitution 134
8. Word-Formation 151
9. Silent Consonant Letters 169
10. Contractions 171
11. Prepositions 176
12. Spelling of Words 220
13. Correction of Errors 238
    [Subject–Verb Agreement]
14. Hundreds of Errors: How to Avoid Them 253
15. Idioms and Phrases 290
16. Foreign Words and Phrases 323
17. Cloze Test (Word-Choice Test) 332
18. Sentence Sequence 348
19. Comprehension 359
20. Transformation of Sentences 382
21. Test Yourself (Practice Tests) 414

Set 1 : National Defence Academy Exam, 1991
Set 2 : SSC Asst. Grade Exam, 1992
Set 3 : SSC Stenographer Grade 'D' Exam, 1992
Set 4 : BSRB (Bombay) PO Exam, 1992
Set 5 : BSRB (Patna) Clerical Grade Exam, 1992
Set 6 : R R Board (Bhubaneshwar)
Asst. Station Master Exam, 1993
Set 7 : BSRB (Patna) Clerical Grade Exam, 1993

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Preliminary Test: A Curtain Raiser

I know you're raring to have a go at the various All-India Level Competitive Examinations. But before you do that, pause for a while. And ask yourself these questions: Am I equal to the acid test? Do I have the expertise to make the grade? What are my weak spots, strong points? So on and so forth.

No matter how good you think your English is, there are bound to be some grey areas. A few weak links. Better test yourself and see how good your English is.

Here is a set of 100 questions covering grammar, usage, vocabulary, spelling, foreign words, proverbs, and idioms and phrases. With complete Answer-Sheet. And Scoring Chart. To let you know, fairly accurately, your degree of proficiency in English. Analyse your score to determine in what areas you are weak. Your next step will be to plug the holes, smoothen the rough edges, update your knowledge of usage and grammar. It would be a fitting answer to your twin questions: 'Where did I go wrong? How can I do better?'

Direction: *Out of the given alternatives choose the correct word which very closely fits each definition.*

1. Intentional destruction of racial group:
   (a) *homicide* ■ (b) *genocide* □ (c) *fratricide* □
2. A person who is fond of fighting:
   (a) *bellicose* ■ (b) *quarrelsome* □ (c) *jingoist* □
3. A child born after the death of its father:
   (a) *posthumous* □ (b) *premature* □ (c) *post-dated* □
4. Scientific study of insects:
   (a) *ontology* □ (b) *zoology* □ (c) *entomology* □
5. A government controlled by the rich:
   (a) *oligarchy* ■ (b) *aristocracy* □ (c) *plutocracy* □
6. A postage stamp collector:
   (a) *philatelist* ■ (b) *numismatist* □ (c) *philanthropist* □
7. An abnormal dread of being shut up in a small room:
   (a) *claustrophobia* □ (b) *podophobia* □ (c) *zoophobia* □
8. One who talks in sleep:
   (a) *somnambulist* □ (b) *somniloquent* □ (c) *garrulous* □

9. A person who studies the science of weather forecast:
(a) *meteorologist* ☐ (b) *archaeologist* ☐ (c) *astronomer* ☐

10. A lover of books:
(a) *librarian* ☐ (b) *bibliophile* ☐ (c) *pedophile* ☐

Direction: *Rearrange the alphabet in order to make the correct words.*

11. MENATEGAROP (fruit)....Pomegranate
12. TBURREIOITN (punishment).....
13. SANTOCLEB (policeman).....
14. DONECGIE (mass murder).....
15. OODCRLSGIATI (heart specialist)....Cardiologist

Direction: *Say which of the italicized words best completes each of these sentences:*

16. We get milk from the nearby (*dairy / diary*). ☑ ☐
17. He has purchased a pair of (*canvas / canvass*) shoes. ☑ ☐
18. How much is this (*bail / bale*) of cotton? ☐ ☑
19. The (*plain / plane*) took off at 5 p.m. ☐ ☑
20. Birla is a business (*magnate / magnet*) ☑ ☑

Direction: *Each sentence is followed by four alternatives. Pick out the correct alternative which has the same meaning as the original sentence.*

21. As soon as he saw me he sprang to his feet.

No sooner .....
(a) had seen me than he sprang to his feet ☐
(b) did he see me than he sprang to his feet ☐
(c) he saw me he sprang to his feet ☐
(d) did he see me then he sprang to his feet ☐

22. Actions speak louder than words.

Words .....
(a) speak less loud than actions ☐
(b) speak as loud as actions ☐
(c) do not speak as loud as actions ☐
(d) are spoken louder than actions ☐

23. This old man is too weak to walk.

This old man .....
(a) is so weak that he cannot walk ☐
(b) is weak enough to walk ☐
(c) is enough weak to walk ☐
(d) is such weak that he cannot walk. ☐

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

24. He is the richest man of this place.

He is richer .....

(a) than any man of this place ☐
(b) than any other man of this place ☐
(c) than no man of this place ☐
(d) than of the men of this place ☐

Direction: *Select the correct spelling from amongst the given alternatives.*

25. (a) katlog (b) catlogue
(c) catalogue (d) catlogg

26. (a) miniature (b) maniture
(c) meneture (d) maniature

27. (a) comitte (b) comittee
(c) commitee (d) committee

28. (a) lesiure (b) leasure
(c) leisure (d) liesure

29. (a) mustach (b) moustachm
(c) moustache (d) mustache

30. (a) netural (b) neuteral
(c) neutral (d) neutreal

31. (a) neibur (b) neighbour
(c) neighber (d) neihbour

32. (a) sycology (b) sychology
(c) psychology (d) psykology

33. (a) dimater (b) diameter
(c) diamater (d) dieameter

34. (a) foraign (b) forein
(c) foreign (d) foreigne

Direction: *Select the word which is nearly the same in meaning to the given word.*

35. BELLIGERENT
(a) very hot ☐ (b) brilliant ☐
(c) waging war ☐ (d) aggressive ☐

36. JUVENILE
(a) tedius ☐ (b) humorous ☐
(c) young ☐ (d) hidden ☐

37. BERATE
(a) scold strongly ☐ (b) restrain ☐
(c) confer ☐ (d) delay ☐

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

38. EMACIATED
(a) primeval (b) vigorous
(c) garrulous (d) thin

39. ERADICATE
(a) eliminate (b) modest
(c) indicate (d) complicate

40. FRAGILE
(a) unfit (b) frank
(c) delicate (d) strong

Direction: *Pick the alternative which best completes each of these sentences:*

41. He said, "Happy New Year!"
He wished me .....
(a) and said that it was happy new year
(b) and exclaimed it was a happy new year
(c) and pointed out a happy new year it was
(d) a happy New Year

42. Why do you laugh at me?
Why am I ..... ?
(a) laughed by you (b) laughed at by you
(c) being laughed (d) to laugh at me

43. One should keep one's promise.
Promise .....
(a) is kept (b) would be kept
(c) should be kept (d) will be kept

44. She said to me, "Many thanks for the invitation."
She .....
(a) thanked me for the invitation
(b) would thank for the invitation
(c) thanked that he had given invitation
(d) thanks for the invitation

Direction: *Choose from the five alternatives the one having the correct order of words and mark it.*

45. (a) Is (b) Virtue (c) The
(d) Best (e) Honesty
(1) bacde (2) cdeab (3) eacdb
(4) ceadb (5) cbade

46. (a) Saw (b) Out (c) Him
(d) We (e) Going

(1) dacbe ☐ (2) daecb ☐ (3) cdabe ☐
(4) daceb ☐ (5) cdaeb

47. (a) Phone (b) On (c) To
(d) Talk (e) Me

(1) dceba ☐ (2) dbeca ☐ (3) decba ☐
(4) edbca ☐ (5) dcabe ☐

48. (a) Does (b) Never (c) Go
(d) He (e) Home

(1) badce ☐ (2) cdabe ☐ (3) daceb ☐
(4) daecb ☐ (5) dacbe ☐

Direction: *Pick the odd one out.*

49. (a) doctor ☐ (b) osteopath ☐
(c) pupil ☐ (d) dentist ☐

50. (a) terrace ☐ (b) floor ☐
(c) tree ☐ (d) stairs ☐

51. (a) steel ☐ (b) brass ☐
(c) liquor ☐ (d) lead ☐

52. (a) lamb ☐ (b) pork ☐
(c) venison ☐ (d) mutton ☐

Direction: *Fill in the blanks with one of the prepositions which completes the sentence.*

53. Hard work tells ..... one's health.
(a) *on* ☐ (b) *upon* ☐ (c) *at* ☐ (d) *into* ☐

54. He has been entrusted ..... this work.
(a) *with* ☐ (b) *to* ☐ (c) *on* ☐ (d) *from* ☐

55. I absolve you ..... all blames.
(a) *for* ☐ (b) *into* ☐ (c) *of* ☐ (d) *with* ☐

56. He is busy ..... his work.
(a) *in* ☐ (b) *on* ☐ (c) *about* ☐ (d) *with* ☐

Direction: *Identify the correct meaning of the Latin words from the list.*

57. **Annus mirabilis**
(a) **a great work** ☐ (b) wonderful year ☐
(c) **a gala day** ☐

58. **Magnum opus**
(a) **precious** ☐ (b) miraculous ☐
(c) **a great work** ☐

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

59. **Ad nauseam**
(a) to a disgusting degree ☐ (b) **frequently** ☐
(c) on duty ☐

60 **Homo sapiens**
(a) animals ☐ (b) **wild beasts** ☐
(c) the human race ☐

Direction: *Choose the word which is most OPPOSITE in meaning to the words given below in capitals.*

61. FRIVOLOUS
(a) Trivial ☐ (b) **Significant** ☐
(c) Fearless ☐ (d) **Permissive** ☐

62. RELINQUISH
(a) Conquer ☐ (b) **Attack** ☐
(c) Assume ☐ (d) **Withdraw** ☐

63. RECALCITRANT
(a) Excitable ☐ (b) **Submissive** ☐
(c) Permissive ☐ (d) **Ambivalent** ☐

64. MYOPIC
(a) Blind ☐ (b) **Short-sighted** ☐
(c) Humble ☐ (d) **Optimistic** ☐

Direction: *Four alternative meanings are given below each sentence. Choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the idiom in italics.*

65. His visit to the USA proved *a damp squib*.
(a) a great success ☐ (b) **a curtain raiser** ☐
(c) an utter failure ☐ (d) **a thaw** ☐

66. He felt *ill at ease* after receiving the letter from his son.
(a) relieved ☐ (b) **disturbed** ☐
(c) sick ☐ (d) **embarrassed** ☐

67. I *stood my ground* in spite of many pressures.
(a) felt shaky ☐ (b) **was obstinate** ☐
(c) was prejudiced ☐ (d) **remained firm** ☐

68. He *rides the high horse* because of his high connection.
(a) puts on airs ☐ (b) **is famous** ☐
(c) is prosperous ☐ (d) **talks flatteringly** ☐

Direction: *Read each sentence to find out whether there is any error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The letter of that part is your answer. If there is no error, the answer is* **E** .

69. When the thief **(A)** / entered the house **(B)** the watchman on duty **(C)** / was fast aslept. **(D)** / No error **(E)**

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

70. No sooner he left the office (A) / than it started (B) / raining heavily (C) / all over the town. (D) / No error (E)

71. The teacher asked the students (A) / if every one of them (B) / were ready to attend (C) / practical class every day. (D) / No error (E)

72. Four days passed (A) / since I came (B) / to my home-town (C) / on vacation. (D) / No error (E)

73. How do you behave (A) / with others is (B) / an important consideration (C) / for all of us. (D) / No error (E)

Direction : *Each of these sentences is broken by three words but only one of the three words is the most suitable in the sentence. Pick up that word.*

74. February has
(a) *less* days than January.
(b) *lesser* days than January.
(c) *fewer* days than January.

75. Jagga is a
(a) *famous* criminal.
(b) *notorious* criminal.
(c) *worthy* criminal.

76. Who performed his funeral
(a) *rights?*
(b) *rites?*
(c) *riots?*

77. The rider held the
(a) *reins* of the horse.
(b) *rains* of the horse.
(c) *reigns* of the horse.

78. Do not
(a) *steer* me in the face.
(b) *stair* me in the face.
(c) *stare* me in the face.

79. Let me
(a) *pair* my nails.
(b) *pare* my nails.
(c) *pear* my nails.

Direction: *Rearrange the following five sentences A,B,C,D and E in a proper sequence so as to form a meaningful paragraph; then answer the questions given below them.*

A. He borrowed some money from his neighbour for me.
B. However, he promised to get the money I needed.
C. Since I had no money with me, I decided to borrow from my friend.
D. The electricity bill had to be paid immediately.
E. But, he had no money with him to lend me.

80. Which of the following sentences should come THIRD in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

81. Which of the following sentences should come FIRST in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

82. Which of the following sentences should come FIFTH in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

83. Which of the following sentences should come SECOND in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

84. Which of the following sentences should come FOURTH in the paragraph?
(a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

Direction: *In the following passage there are blanks each of which has been numbered. These numbers are printed below the passage and against each, five words are suggested, one of which fits in the blank appropriately. Find out the appropriate words.*

Withou water 85 animal can survive. In desert regions the greatest 86 to life is dr·ing up. But many creatures are able to make use of 87 little water that exists in arid areas. One of nature's masterpieces 88 creatures equipped to 89 wi desert life is the hardy camel. Stories range the desert lands far and wide about 90 endurance feats by camels. It is said that camels can 91 a distance of about 800 miles in eight days through continuous travel 92 an intake of a single drop of water. The popular 93 that camels store water in their humps is 94 in a way; water is indeed stored there but in the form of fat.

85. (1) every (2) no
(3) any (4) desert
(5) exceptional

86. (1) need (2) inadequacy
(3) requirement (4) worry
(5) threat

87. (1) what (2) the
(3) very (4) that
(5) extremely

88. (1) for (2) about
(3) among (4) with
(5) of

89. (1) live (2) resist
(3) bear (4) cope
(5) mix

90. (1) remarkable (2) little
(3) tolerable (4) popular
(5) obvious

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

91. (1) measure (2) reduce
(3) lead (4) reach
(5) cover

92. (1) for (2) without
(3) accepting (4) receiving
(5) except

93. (1) proverb (2) guess
(3) belief (4) version
(5) statement

94. (1) baseless (2) wrong
(3) misleading (4) correct
(5) truthful

Direction: *Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below it.*

On the 16th of August, 1987 when I was told I had cancer of the lungs, my relatives and friends were alarmed at the apparent calm with which I received the news. I suppose they overlooked the fact that at my age (I turned 72 on January 26) you develop a practical acceptance which helps face the impact of even such shocks. Besides, the tendency to set a good example as head of a large family somehow grows on you. However, despite the outward bravado, deep inside I was jolted by the news. This was because, as far back as I can remember, my health has never given me cause for concern.

95. The "I" in this passage stands for—
(a) the nurse (b) the patient
(c) the doctor (d) an accident victim

96. The narrator in this passage suffers from—
(a) tuberculosis (b) typhoid
(c) cancer of the lungs (d) bone cancer

97. In terms of age, the patient is—
(a) a young man (b) a school-going kid
(c) a middle-aged person (d) an old man

98. On hearing of the disease that has struck him, the narrator feels—
(a) relieved (b) anxious
(c) indifferent (d) shocked

99. Before the disease struck him, the narrator's health had always been—
(a) good (b) poor
(c) indifferent (d) full of problems

100. On January 26, the narrator's age was—
(a) 50 (b) 60
(c) 72 (d) 85

ANSWERS

1.(b) 2. (c) 3. (a) 4. (c) 5.(c) 6. (a) 7. (a) 8. (b) 9. (a) 10.(b) 11.POMEGRANATE 12. RETRIBUTION 13. CONSTABLE 14. GENOCIDE 15. CARDIOLOGIST 16.*dairy* 17.*canvas* 18.*bale* 19.*plane* 20. *magnate* 21.(b) 22. (c) 23. (a) 24. (b) 25. (c) 26. (a) 27. (d) 28. (c) 29. (c) 30. (c) 31. (b) 32. (c) 33. (b) 34. (c) 35. (d) 36. (c) 37. (a) 38. (d) 39. (a) 40. (c) 41. (d) 42. (b) 43. (c) 44. (a) 45. (3) 46. (4) 47. (1) 48. (1) 49. (c) 50. (c) 51. (c) 52. (a) 53. (b) 54. (a) 55. (c) 56. (d) 57. (b) 58. (c) 59. (a) 60. (c) 61. (b) 62. (c) 63. (b) 64. (b) 65. (c) 66. (d) 67. (d) 68. (a) 69. (D) (It should be: 'was fast asleep') 70. (A) (It should be: 'No sooner did he leave the office') 71. (C) (It should be: 'was ready to attend') 72. (A) (It should be: 'Four days have passed') 73. (A) (It should be: 'How you behave') 74. (c) 75, (b) 76. (b) 77. (a) 78. (c) 79. (b) 80. (e) 81. (d) 82. (a) 83. (c) 84. (b) 85. (2) 86. (3) 87. (2) 88. (3) 89. (4) 90. (1) 91. (5) 92. (2) 93. (4) 94. (3) 95. (b) 96. (c) 97. (d) 98. (d) 99. (a) 100. (c)

SCORE SHEET

Scoring: One point for each item of correct answer. No point even if partially correct.

Total Possible Points: 100

Your Score ..... Rating .....

RATING OF YOUR PROFICIENCY IN ENGLISH

90–100	Correct	Extraordinary
80–89	Correct	Excellent
75–79	Correct	Good
60–74	Correct	Average
50–59	Correct	Poor

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Question Format and Answer-sheet

The preliminary test must have given you an idea about your strong points as well as weak spots. I now wish you a delightfully fruitful session with the Reading Materials. It will not only brush up your knowledge but also prop up your morale. To take the various All-India Level Exams with a lot more of confidence than ever before. But before you jump into the fray, it is good to know the nature of Question Format used and the type of Answer-sheet provided. Only then can you Get Set, Be Ready and Go. Not in one single burst. But slowly and steadily. With measured steps.

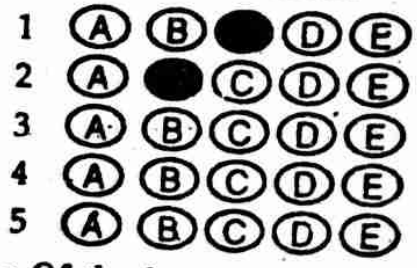
There is a variety of Multiple-Choice Questions. On Synonym, Antonym, Paronym, Word-formation, One-word substitution, Cloze test, Sentence completion, Comprehension, Ordering of words in a sentence, Ordering of letters in a word, Ordering of clauses or sentences in a sentence or a paragraph, Preposition, Punctuation, Proverbs, Idioms and Phrases, Transformation, etc. For each question several suggested answers are given, of which one answer is correct. The questions have several numbers like 1,2,3,4,5, etc. The Alternatives given with each question are marked as A,B,C,D,E and you are to choose one. Your answer will be either A or B or C or D or E. There are special directions for each section of the test. You have to stick to these directions. In letter and spirit.

There can be many variations of the same question. Some examples are given below.

Type 1. Direction: *Read the sentences to find out which part of the sentence (A or B or C or D) has an error. If there is no error, your answer will be 'E'. Mark the answer-choice by blackening the oval on your answer-sheet.*

1. This is one (A) / of the most (B) / interesting book (C) / I have ever read. (D) / No error E)
2. Until he (A) / does not try hard (B) / he will not (C) / learn to swim. (D)/ No error (E)

Answer-Sheet



Type 2. Direction: *Of the four sentences given below, one sentence is incorrect. Identify the incorrect sentence on your answer-sheet.*

1. (A) Many a man runs after money.
   (B) Are there any roses in the garden?
   (C) He dare not come to me.
   (D) Never does he walk on foot.

2. (A) Do not make a noise.
   (B) I have pinned my faith on you.
   (C) He has applied for lectureship.
   (D) He prides on his wealth.

Answer-Sheet

1	2	3	4	5	6
A	A	A	A	A	A
B	B	B	B	B	B
C	C	C	C	C	C
●	●	D	D	D	D

Type 3. Direction: *In the question given below there are two sentences (a) and (b). Both/neither/either of which may have a mistake. In your answer-sheet tick*

(A) if both (a) and (b) are correct
(B) if (a) is correct and (b) is wrong
(C) if (a) is wrong and (b) is correct
(D) if both (a) and (b) are wrong

1. (a) Walk slowly lest you should not fall down.
   (b) I have warned the children for making a noise.

   A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐

2. (a) He is good at studies, isn't he?
   (b) He is angry and indifferent to me.

   A ☐ B ☐ C ☐ D ☐

Type 4. Direction: *Can you say which of these is right? Mark the answer-choice on your answer-sheet.*

1. (A) Send the letter to my address.
   (B) Send the letter on my address.
   (C) Send the letter by my address.
   (D) Send the letter at my address.
   (E) Send the letter upon my address.

2. (A) The battle lines are ready.
   (B) The battle lines are clear.
   (C) The battle lines are dug up.
   (D) The battle lines are marked.
   (E) The battle lines are drawn.

Answer-Sheet

1	■	B	C	D	E
2	A	B	C	D	■
3	A	B	C	D	E

So gear up for a gruelling session with Reading Materials, Mock Tests and, then, the final show-down.

Look at these Answer-sheets.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

I

ANSWER SPACES: Vertical Format with Ovals

Section 1

1	2	3	4	5	6
A	A	A	A	A	A
B	B	B	B	B	B
C	C	C	C	C	C
D	D	D	D	D	D
E	E	E	E	E	E

Section 2

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B
C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Section 3

1	2	3	4	5	6
A	A	A	A	A	A
B	B	B	B	B	B
C	C	C	C	C	C
D	D	D	D	D	D
E	E	E	E	E	E

II

ANSWER SPACES: Horizontal Format with Ovals

Section 1

1	A	B	C	D	E	4	A	B	C	D	E
2	A	B	C	D	E	5	A	B	C	D	E
3	A	B	C	D	E	6	A	B	C	D	E

Section 2

1	A	B	C	D	E	4	A	B	C	D	E
2	A	B	C	D	E	5	A	B	C	D	E
3	A	B	C	D	E	6	A	B	C	D	E

Section 3

1	A	B	C	D	E	4	A	B	C	D	E
2	A	B	C	D	E	5	A	B	C	D	E
3	A	B	C	D	E	6	A	B	C	D	E

□

III

ANSWER SPACES: Vertical Format with Squares

Section 1

1	2	3	4	5	6
A	A	A	A	A	A
B	B	B	B	B	B
C	C	C	C	C	C
D	D	D	D	D	D
E	E	E	E	E	E

Section 2

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
A	A	A	A	A	A	A	A
B	B	B	B	B	B	B	B
C	C	C	C	C	C	C	C
D	D	D	D	D	D	D	D
E	E	E	E	E	E	E	E

Section 3

1	2	3	4	5	6
A	A	A	A	A	A
B	B	B	B	B	B
C	C	C	C	C	C
D	D	D	D	D	D
E	E	E	E	E	E

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

IV

ANSWER SPACES: Horizontal Format with Squares

Section 1

1	A	B	C	D	E
2	A	B	C	D	E
3	A	B	C	D	E
4	A	B	C	D	E
5	A	B	C	D	E
6	A	B	C	D	E

Section 2

1	A	B	C	D	E
2	A	B	C	D	E
3	A	B	C	D	E
4	A	B	C	D	E
5	A	B	C	D	E
6	A	B	C	D	E

Section 3

1	A	B	C	D	E
2	A	B	C	D	E
3	A	B	C	D	E
4	A	B	C	D	E
5	A	B	C	D	E
6	A	B	C	D	E

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

CHAPTER I

Introduction

It has taken me years of struggle, hard work and research to learn to make one simple gesture, and I know enough about the art of writing to realise that it would take as many years of concentrated effort to write one simple, beautiful sentence.

—ISADORA DUNCAN

A good sentence is "like a breath of air, filling the lungs and being expelled. It's like a wave, breaking on shore and then ebbing to sea. It's like the swing of a pendulum, forward and back." Yes, it's a simple operation of the mind, revealing the intricate beauty of a thought being moulded from the beginning to the end.

And you cannot straighten out such a sentence without those exciting little things wriggling with life—words. You may have a million dollar idea, but it will cut no ice if you can't convince others of its value. And words, the right words that are the mainspring of our language, that are the building blocks of our thought, that are the pigments that give colour to our sentence, are the only instruments you have to accomplish it with.

Words are the dress of thoughts. —CHESTERFIELD
Words are the pegs to hang ideas on. —BEECHER
Words are the instruments that make thought possible. —JUDD

The use of proper words in proper places can make one feel that every word is exactly right; no other word would do as well; each is pulling its weight; none would be dispensed with. This is the way you can make millions think as you think, feel as you feel. Indeed exquisite precision in the choice and placing of words can alone ensure exactitude of expression.

But inscrutable are the ways of words. If you can't put the right word in the right place the spell will lose its power. You will find yourself as much mistaken as Cassim in the Arabian tale, when he stood crying, 'Open wheat', 'Open barley', to the door which obeyed no sound but 'Open sesame'. Indeed if proper words are not used then what is said is not what is meant. As Anatole France has said, "The finest words in the world are only vain sounds if you cannot comprehend them."

We find in English language an almost unexampled variety of words.

kindred in meaning but distinct in usage for expressing almost all shades of human thought. You can embellish your language by interspersing throughout your conversation and written work, harmonious and meaningful expressions made up of appropriate word combinations.

A rich vocabulary is, then, an *open sesame* to the door of opportunity. It helps you not only get higher grades in competitive exams but also reach new heights in your specialized field of activity.

There are a variety of ways in which your linguistic equipment is tested in various competitive examinations. Here are a few samples:

Set I. Selection of an Appropriate Word

Direction: *Select the right word from the choices to fill in the blanks.*

Example I. Phulan Devi is a .....dacoit.

(a) *famous* (b) *notorious* (c) *noted*

The word 'famous' means 'widely and favourably known'; e.g., a *famous* dancer. 'Noted' indicates a limited general recognition; e.g., a *noted* expert in psychoanalysis. A 'notorious' person is widely but unfavourably known to people in general. So, the correct word is (b) *notorious*.

Example II. Don't shout at her. She's very.....

(a) *sensible* (b) *suave* (c) *sensitive*

A 'sensible' person is one who has common sense. 'Suave' means 'smooth and gracious in manner'. Such persons are expected to be calm and composed even in an intimidating situation. But a 'sensitive' person feels things easily or deeply—perhaps he can be easily hurt. So, the only correct choice is (c) *sensitive*.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Exercise

1. I have never heard him.....

   (a) *smile* (b) *laugh* (c) *limp*

2. The .....demands of the workers cannot be met.

   (a) *continual* (b) *continuous* (c) *rigorous*

3. We appealed to the President as a last.....

   (a) *recourse* (b) *resort* (c) *resource*

4. He was .....of all his belongings.

   (a) *stolen* (b) *looted* (c) *robbed*

5. Sir C V Raman was an.....scientist.

   (a) *eminent* (b) *imminent* (c) *immense*

6. Have you ever heard the.....of cannons?

   (a) *booming* (b) *jingling* (c) *rustling*

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

7. Who has.....electric connections?
   (a) *snapped* (b) *cut* (c) *slashed*
8. Let me.....the candle.
   (a) *switch off* (b) *blow out* (c) *extinguish*
9. The landlords of this place lead a.....life.
   (a) *luxuriant* (b) *luxurious* (c) *lavish*
10. Beware of that.....thief.
   (a) *veteran* (b) *mature* (c) *confirmed*

Answers: 1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (a) 6. (a) 7. (a) 8. (b) 9. (b) 10. (a)

Set II. Word Completion

Directions: *Find out the letters that will complete the following words:*

Example I. One thousand years: MILLE.....IUM

The word referred to above is MILLENNIUM. So the answer is NN.

Example II. Eighty-year-old:.....TOGE.....RIAN

The correct word is OCTOGENARIAN. So the answer is OC, NA.

Exercise

1. Noun of enemy: ...NM...TY
2. Opposite of nocturnal: ...URNAL
3. A woman-hater: ...SO...NIST
4. Witty, clever retort: RE...TEE
5. Venerable old man: ...TRI...CH
6. Hard to please: ...STI...OUS
7. Flower seller: ...LOR...ST
8. Environmental scientist: ...LOGIST
9. Lover of mankind: ...LAN...PIST
10. Walking in sleep: SOM...BULISM

Answers: 1. ENMITY 2. DIURNAL 3. MISOGYNIST 4. REPARTEE 5. PATRIARCH 6. FASTIDIOUS 7. FLORIST 8. ECOLOGIST 9. PHILANTHROPIST 10. SOMNAMBULISM

Set III. Jumbled Words

Directions: *Rearrange the words in order to make a meaningful sentence.*

Example I. You, me, for, done, what, have?

These jumbled words can be rearranged thus:

What have you done for me?

Example II. A, man, be, he, not, upon, is, relied, to.

The rearranged form of these jumbled words will be:

He is not a man to be relied upon.

Exercise

1. Lovely, a, what, is, place, it!
2. By, cannot, bread, alone, man, live.
3. Principle, to, your, stick, cost, at, all.
4. God, should, everyone, pray, to.
5. Go, does, the, never, to, he, cinema.
6. Only, when, I, hungry, I, eat, am.
7. Guard, danger, should, against, you, yourself.
8. Wall, ladder, the, against, the, place.
9. Belongings, of, me, all, robbed, he, my.
10. He, me, indifferent, to, with, angry, is, and.

Answers: 1. What a lovely place it is! 2. Man cannot live by bread alone. 3. Stick to your principle at all cost. 4. Everyone should pray to God. 5. Never does he go to the cinema. 6. I eat only when I am hungry. 7. You should guard yourself against danger. 8. Place the ladder against the wall. 9. He robbed me of all my belongings. 10. He is angry with and indifferent to me.

Set IV. Jumbled Letters

Direction: *Rearrange the letters to form a word whose meaning is given inside the brackets.*

Example I. TENPIDEARS *(Foot-walker)*

The jumbled letters can be rearranged thus: PEDESTRIAN. It means 'foot-walker'.

Example II. ROMERES *(Repentance)*

The rearrangement of the jumbled letters gives us the word REMORSE which means 'repentance'.

Exercise

1. GUEDRG *(rough)* 2. MEANIPOUN *(a disease)* 3. UTINALENET *(army officer)* 4. NOMATEPGRAE *(a fruit)* 5. MISTANIMUST *(coin-collector)* 6. COWLIRLAULEF *(a vegetable)* 7. SEPROVIPES *(cruel)* 8. ATNOISISANSAS *(murder)* 9. HOLIGORNTOY *(Bird study)* 10. MAROA *(scent)*

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Answers: 1.RUGGED 2. PNEUMONIA 3. LIEUTENANT 4. POMEGRANATE 5. NUMISMATIST 6. CAULIFLOWER 7. OPPRESSIVE 8. ASSASSINATION 9. ORNITHOLOGY 10. AROMA

Set V. Word-building

Direction: Add a three-letter prefix to the following words to form new words:

Example I. FORTUNE, TRUST, BEHAVE, CALCULATION

If we add the prefix MIS- to the words above, we get the following new words:

MISFORTUNE, MISTRUST, MISBEHAVE, MISCALCULATION

Direction: *Add a two-letter prefix to these words in order to form new words.*

Example II. VALUE, LINK, THRONE, BASE.

The addition of the prefix DE- gives us the following new words:

DEVALUE, DELINK, DETHRONE, DEBASE.

Exercise

1. PRESS 2. PRISON 3. PERIL 4. PRESSIONABLE 5. MINENT 6. PULSIVE 7. MIGRATE 8. PORTANT 9. BIBE 10. MURE.

Answers: 1. IMPRESS 2. IMPRISON 3. IMPERIL 4. IMPRESSIONABLE 5. IMMINENT 6. IMPULSIVE 7. IMMIGRATE 8. IMPORTANT 9. IMBIBE 10. IMMURE

Set VI. One-word Substitution

Direction: *Select the word which fits each definition.*

Example I. An expert in foods and nutrition:

(a) *patrician* (b) *dietician* (c) *pediatrician*

The word 'patrician' means 'a member of the governing classes in ancient Rome'. A doctor who specializes in children's diseases is called a 'pediatrician'. 'Dietician' means 'an expert in foods and nutrition'. You should, therefore, choose 'dietician' that is, (b).

Example II. A space-traveller:

(a) *technocrat* (b) *astronomer* (c) *astronaut*

The word 'technocrat' means 'a highly-skilled scientific specialist in charge of the organization of a country, industry, etc.'. But 'astronomer' stands for one who specializes in the scientific study of the sun, moon, stars, etc. 'Astronaut' is the right word for 'a space-traveller'. You should, therefore, choose 'astronaut' that is, (c).

Exercise

1. The creator of a design or plan for a building:
   (a) *cartographer* (b) *architect* (c) *bricklayer*
2. One who makes maps and charts:
   (a) *geologist* (b) *cartographer* (c) *geographer*
3. A specialist in making eyeglasses:
   (a) *optician* (b) *optometrist* (c) *oculist*
4. One who prescribes corrective lenses:
   (a) *optician* (b) *oculist* (c) *optometrist*
5. The science of earthquakes:
   (a) *seismology* (b) *meteorology* (c) *anthropology*
6. The yearly return of a date:
   (a) *birthday* (b) *centenary* (c) *anniversary*
7. A child born after the death of its father:
   (a) *orphan* (b) *still-born* (c) *posthumous*
8. That which is no longer in use:
   (a) *obsolete* (b) *obscure* (c) *inviolable*
9. To atone for one's sins:
   (a) *ingratiate* (b) *propitiate* (c) *expiate*
10. A person who studies the formation of the earth:
   (a) *anthropologist* (b) *geologist* (c) *seismologist*

Answers: 1. (b) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (c) 5. (a) 6. (c) 7. (c) 8. (a) 9. (c) 10. (b)

Set VII. Commonplace Comparison

Direction: *Fill in the blanks with the right word to complete these commonplace comparisons:*

Example I. (a) as light as a ..... (b) as cheap as ..... (c) as agile as a ..... (d) as deaf as an .....

The correct form of these comparisons should be: (a) as light as a *feather* (b) as cheap as *dirt* (c) as agile as a *cat* (d) as deaf as an *adder*

Example II. As unreal as a .....
(a) *story* (b) *ghost* (c) *dream*

We say, 'as unreal as a '*dream*'. Hence the correct choice will be (c) that is, *dream*.

Exercise

1. As black as ..... 2. As white as..... 3. As proud as a ..... 4. As greedy as a ..... 5. As old as the ..... 6. As pale as ..... 7. As cunning as a ..... 8. As dumb as a ..... 9. As green as..... 10. As busy as a.....

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Answers: 1. coal 2. snow 3. peacock 4. dog 5. hills 6. death 7. fox 8. statue 9. grass 10. bee

Set VIII. Odd Man Out

Directions: One of the words does not belong to other words in the group. It is different either in quality or action. Pick the odd word (or, man) out.

Example I. Tiger, barber, doctor, teacher, lawyer, cobbler

The word 'tiger' does not belong to other words in the group. It is an animal whereas the rest of the words denote persons and the profession they belong to. Hence 'tiger' is the stranger.

Example II. Black, green, yellow, banana, violet, red

'Banana' is a fruit whereas the rest of the words denote a variety of colours. Hence 'banana' does not fit in the group.

Exercise

1. Kettle, milk, tea, hammer, sugar, cup
2. Gurudwara, temple, church, museum, mosque
3. Wheat, rice, gram, milk, pulse, corn
4. Lily, jasmine, lotus, rainbow, rose, violet
5. Shirts, trousers, ties, daisy, coats, shoes
6. Fable, parable, allegory, story, comb, novel
7. Milk, butter, curd, cheese, brinjal, cream
8. Cancer, malaria, flu, rice, diabetes, gout
9. Dutch, Swiss, Japan, Russian, Bulgarian, Chinese
10. Car, steamer, ship, boat, watch, scooter

Answers: 1. hammer 2. museum 3. milk 4. rainbow 5. daisy 6. comb 7. brinjal 8. rice 9. Japan 10. watch

Set IX. Synonyms

Directions: Choose the word nearest in meaning to the capitalized word.

Example I

1. EROTIC
   (a) lovely (b) attractive (c) sexual (d) sensuous
2. DANDY
   (a) a gallant hero (b) an overdressed man (c) ugly (d) handsome
3. AVALANCHE
   (a) gale (b) flood (c) cyclone (d) great mass of snow and ice
4. AVANT-GARDE
   (a) an art critic (b) cultural pioneer (c) guardian (d) custodian
5. BELLICOSE
   (a) warlike (b) amusing (c) benevolent (d) foolish

The words nearest in meaning to the capitalized words are as follows. 1. EROTIC: sexual 2. DANDY: an overdressed man 3. AVALANCHE: great mass of snow and ice 4. AVANT-GARDE: cultural pioneer 5. BELLICOSE: warlike.

Hence the answer should be 1. (c) 2. (b) 3. (d) 4. (b) 5. (a)

Example II.

Directions: Pick the word similar in meaning to the word italicized in each of the sentences given:

1. He has lost the *equilibrium* of his mind.
   (a) strength (b) balance (c) energy
2. You must *elucidate* your ideas a bit more.
   (a) underline (b) arrange (c) make clear
3. He is *languishing* for want of proper care and attention.
   (a) gaining strength (b) losing popularity (c) losing strength
4. He is young and *impetuous*.
   (a) sociable (b) violent (c) cultured
5. With a *flamboyant* gesture he threw off the coverings.
   (a) showy and confident (b) meek and submissive (c) gracious

The words nearest in meaning to the *italicised* words are as follows: 1. *equilibrium*: balance 2. *elucidate*: make clear 3. *languishing*: losing strength 4. *impetuous*: violent 5. *flamboyant*: showy and confident. Hence the answer should be: 1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (b) 5. (a)

Exercise

1. CLANDESTINE
   (a) honest (b) done secretly and privately (c) fair (d) above board
2. ENTICE
   (a) tempt (b) attract (c) tease (d) rebuke
3. DUBIOUS
   (a) sincere (b) doubtful (c) zigzag (d) straight
4. BUCOLIC
   (a) rustic (b) shameless (c) intoxicated (d) helpless
5. DANK
   (a) plunder (b) cajole (c) damp (d) dangerous
6. ENIGMA
   (a) praise (b) puzzle (c) clear (d) elusive
7. JUVENILE
   (a) humorous (b) tedious (c) pious (d) childish
8. FULMINATE
   (a) gather (b) oppose strongly (c) fumble (d) favour strongly

9. GARNER
(a) collect (b) spread (c) preserve (d) distribute

10. BELLIGERENT
(a) pacifist (b) aggressive (c) generous (d) reasonable

Answers: 1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (b) 4. (a) 5. (c) 6. (b) 7. (d) 8. (b) 9. (a) 10. (b)

Set X. Antonyms

Directions: Select the word which is nearly opposite in meaning to the given word.

Example I.

1. CELEBRATED
(a) unknown (b) renowned (c) learned (d) authentic

2. AUGMENT
(a) prevent (b) decrease (c) compensate (d) surpass

3. BARREN
(a) fertile (b) sterile (c) malleable (d) dry

4. CAMOUFLAGE
(a) reveal (b) evade (c) demonstrate (d) hide

5. ACCELERATION
(a) retardation (b) distribution (c) frustration (d) alienation

The words nearly opposite to the words above are as follows: 1. CELEBRATED—(a) unknown 2. AUGMENT—(b) decrease 3. BARREN—(a) fertile 4. CAMOUFLAGE—(a) demonstrate 5. ACCELERATION—(a) retardation

Example II.

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the words opposite in meaning to the italicized word in each sentence.

1. Glass is *transparent* but gold is... 2. This razor is *blunt* but that one is... 3. What is *done* cannot be ... 4. As you *sow*, so will you ... 5. *Heads* I win,... you lose.

The word opposite in meaning to the *italicized* word in each sentence will be 1. *opaque* 2. *sharp* 3. *undone* 4. *reap* 5. *tails*

Exercise

1. DILIGENT:
(a) militant (b) lazy (c) shallow (d) dubious

2. MITIGATE:
(a) obviate (b) restrict (c) aggravate (d) lessen

3. SAGACIOUS:
(a) ignorant (b) wise (c) benevolent (d) obstinate

4. INDIGENT:
(a) poor (b) needy (c) wealthy (d) genius

5. NEBULOUS:
(a) clear (b) vague (c) confused (d) bright

6. ONEROUS:
(a) irksome (b) easy (c) difficult (d) tricky

7. RAUCOUS:
(a) hoarse (b) harsh (c) sweet-sounding (d) haughty

8. SCURRILOUS:
(a) abusive (b) pleasing (c) harmful (d) refined

9. TACITURN:
(a) reticent (b) secretive (c) tactless (d) loquacious

10. TREMULOUS:
(a) quick (b) steady (c) shaky (d) quiver

Answers: 1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (a) 4. (c) 5. (a) 6. (b) 7. (c) 8. (d) 9. (d) 10. (b)

Set XI. Word Choice

Directions: Put a tick (√) by the right word.

Example I.

1. Bibliography is a list of clothes ☐ tools ☐ books ☐.
2. Pyorrhea is a disease of the eyes ☐ teeth ☐ nose ☐.
3. A chauffeur drives planes ☐ cars ☐ scooter ☐.
4. A plumber fits and repairs electricity ☐ water pipes ☐ radio ☐
5. Saliva comes out of our toes ☐ ears ☐ mouth ☐.

The correct answer to the question above is 1. books 2. teeth 3. cars 4. water pipes 5. mouth

Example II.

1. *Asthma* is a
(a) game ☐ (b) tool ☐
(c) disease ☐ (d) river ☐

2. The opposite of *war* is
(a) struggle ☐ (b) battle ☐
(c) peace ☐ (d) tranquillity ☐

3. The act of killing *one's mother* is
(a) fratricide ☐ (b) matricide ☐
(c) patricide ☐ (d) avicide ☐

4. The diminutive of *maiden* is
   (a) maid ☐ (b) manikin ☐
   (c) moped ☐ (d) maidenlet ☐
5. I must...you on your great achievements.
   (a) complement ☐ (b) compliment ☐
   (c) supplement ☐ (d) reprimand ☐

The correct answer to the questions above will be: 1. (c) 2. (c) 3. (b) 4. (a) 5. (b)

Exercise

1. I never go by vacant ☐ empty ☐ promises.
2. He wants to specialize in skin ☐ hide ☐ diseases.
3. She has written a number of historic ☐ historical ☐ novels.
4. I am ill ☐ sick ☐ of this weather.
5. He has been appointed umpire ☐ referee ☐ of this football match.
6. Columbus invented ☐ discovered ☐ America.
7. I anticipate ☐ expect ☐ him to arrive here next week.
8. A husband dominated by his wife is henpecked ☐ effeminate
9. Let me clip ☐ hew out ☐ my moustache.
10. The price of edible ☐ eatable ☐ oil has shot up.

Answers: 1. empty 2. skin 3. historical 4. sick 5. referee 6. discovered 7. expect 8. henpecked 9. clip 10. edible

---

Set XII. Proverbs and Idioms and Phrases

Direction: *Say which of these words best completes this proverb.*

Example I. The wish is... to the thought.
(a) mother (b) father (c) adjunct

The correct form of the proverb is: The wish is *father* to the thought. It means that we are likely to believe what we wish to be true. The correct word is, then, (b) father.

Direction: *Each of the following idioms is followed by alternative meanings of which one is correct. Tick (√) the correct meaning.*

Example II. *Put a person through his paces:*
(A) put him on the right track ☐
(B) make him quicken his steps ☐
(C) test his abilities ☐
(D) inspire him to work hard ☐

The correct meaning of the phrase is (C) that is, 'test his abilities'.

Exercise

Follow the Directions of Example II and solve the following:

1. *A tall order*
   (A) a big problem
   (B) a task difficult to perform
   (C) a big demand
   (D) a royal summon
2. *In double-quick time*
   (A) very quickly
   (B) much time
   (C) steadily
   (D) gradually
3. *Pull strings*
   (A) tease someone
   (B) start something
   (C) exert hidden influence
   (D) speed up
4. *Take somebody for a ride*
   (A) provide entertainment
   (B) keep company
   (C) exploit a person
   (D) deceive or humiliate him
5. *Queer somebody's pitch*
   (A) upset his plan
   (B) reprimand him
   (C) check him
   (D) work him up
6. *Push somebody to the wall*
   (A) humiliate him
   (B) defeat him
   (C) knock him down
   (D) heckle him
7. *A storm in a teacup*
   (A) great noise
   (B) a danger signal
   (C) unexpected event
   (D) much excitement over something trivial
8. *Pour oil in troubled waters*
   (A) instigate
   (B) calm a quarrel with soothing words
   (C) add to the trouble
   (D) foment trouble
9. *Take the wind out of somebody's sails*
   (A) take away his advantage suddenly
   (B) create obstruction
   (C) stop working
   (D) help somebody
10. *A square peg in a round hole*
   (A) a person unsuited to the position he fills
   (B) a scheme that never works
   (C) an impossible task
   (D) a Herculean task

Answers: 1. (B) 2. (A) 3. (C) 4. (D) 5. (A) 6. (B) 7. (D) 8. (B) 9. (A) 10. (A)

CHAPTER 2

Word Power

1. MANIAS

There is a bewildering variety of individuals, each different from the other. Some are well-adjusted, and some maladjusted. Some are honest and rational others dishonest and irrational. A probe into the complex organism called the human mind reveals how mysterious the ways of human nature are. Some develop *mania,* a compulsive or morbid preoccupation with some impulse or activity e.g., compulsive stealing is called *kleptomania.*

DO YOU KNOW?

What are the specific words for:

- ☆ a morbid compulsion to drink?
- ☆ a morbid delusion of one's grandeur?
- ☆ a morbid obsession with oneself?
- ☆ a morbid compulsion for travel?
- ☆ a morbid compulsion to steal?
- ☆ a morbid compulsion to set fire for thrill?
- ☆ a mania for talking?

You are not to lose heart. Here is a list of some of the *manias.*

1. *bibliomania*	obsession with rare books
2. *demonomania*	a morbid delusion of being under the influence of an evil spirit
3. *dipsomania*	a morbid compulsion to drink
4. *dromomania*	a morbid compulsion for travel
5. *egomania*	a morbid obsession with oneself
6. *graphomania*	a morbid mania for writing
7. *hypomania*	a mild manic excitement
8. *kleptomania*	a morbid compulsion to steal
9. *logomania*	a mania for talking
10. *macromania*	a delusion that one's body has become very big
11. *micromania*	a delusion that one's body has become very small

12. *megalomania* — a morbid delusion of one's grandeur
13. *monomania* — single fixed obsession
14. *nymphomania* — excessive sexual desire in a female
15. *pseudomania* — a mania for making false and exaggerated statement
16. *pyromania* — compulsion to set fire for thrill
17. *scribblomania* — a mania for making meaningless marks on paper
18. *theomania* — a delusion that one has become a god

Exercises

I. *Choose the number of the word which most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word:*

Example —kleptomania: (1) mania for collecting books (2) mania for stealing articles (3) mania for setting fire Ans. (2)

a. *scribblomania:* (1) mania for talking (2) longing for travel (3) making meaningless marks on paper (4) stealing articles .....

b. *logomania:* (1) mania for setting fire (2) rage for collecting books (3) longing for travel (4) mania for talking .....

c. *hypomania* (1) a mild manic excitement (2) excessive sexual desire in a female (3) a morbid compulsion to set fire (4) a mania for collecting books .....

d. *nymphomania:* (1) a mania for absorbing alcoholic beverages (2) excessive sexual desire in a female (3) a mania for talking (4) a mania for collecting books .....

e. *monomania:* (1) single fixed obsession (2) a delusion that one's body has become very small (3) a mania for talking (4) a mania for alcoholic beverages .....

Answers: a. (3) b. (4) c. (1) d. (2) e. (1)

II. *The following phrases give a brief description of compulsive or morbid preoccupation with some impulse or activity called* ***manias.*** *Can you identify them and complete the words whose initial letters are given?*

1. Mania for writing — G .....
2. Mania for talking — L .....
3. Mania for collecting books — B .....
4. Morbid obsession with oneself — E .....
5. Exaggerated longing for travel — D .....
6. Irresistible compulsion to steal — K .....

Answers: 1. Graphomania 2. Logomania 3. Bibliomania 4. Egomania 5. Dromomania 6. Kleptomania

2. WHAT ARE YOU AFRAID OF?
(Phobias)

Fear is an indispensable element in the human make up. It paralyses the spring of action. It builds its own phantoms which are more fearsome than reality itself. It tears personality to pieces.

You see how irrational fear grips very many people. The individual may realize its irrationality but is unable to dispel it. Such a fear is termed *phobia*. It is a persistent, excessive, abnormal and panic-like fear. A phobic reaction is, then, a persistent fear of some objects or situations which present no actual danger to the patient but in which the danger is magnified out of all proportions to its actual seriousness.

DO YOU KNOW?

What are the specific words for:

- ☆ fear of closed spaces?
- ☆ fear of open places?
- ☆ fear of high places?
- ☆ fear of lightning?
- ☆ fear of darkness?
- ☆ fear of crowds?
- ☆ fear of water?
- ☆ fear of snakes?

Here is a list of some *phobias* with the variety of situations and objects around which they are centred:

1. *acrophobia*	Morbid fear of high places or heights
2. *agoraphobia*	Morbid fear of wide open places
3. *algophobia*	Morbid fear of pain
4. *anglophobia*	Morbid fear of England and English things
5. *anthropophobia*	Morbid fear of mankind
6. *astraphobia*	Morbid fear of lightning, thunder and storms
7. *astrophobia*	Morbid fear of celestial space
8. *ballistophobia*	Morbid fear of missiles
9. *bibliophobia*	Morbid fear of books
10. *chirophobia*	Morbid fear of hands
11. *claustrophobia*	Morbid fear of closed, confined places
12. *dendrophobia*	Morbid fear of trees
13. *ergophobia*	Morbid fear of work
14. *gynephobia*	Morbid fear of women
15. *hematophobia*	Morbid fear of blood

16. *hippophobia*	Morbid fear of horses
17. *monophobia*	Morbid fear of being alone
18. *mysophobia*	Morbid fear of contamination or germs
19. *nyctophobia*	Morbid fear of darkness
20. *ochlophobia*	Morbid fear of crowd
21. *panophobia*	Morbid fear of everything in general
22. *pathophobia*	Morbid fear of disease
23. *pedophobia*	Morbid fear of children
24. *photophobia*	Morbid fear of light
25. *podophobia*	Morbid fear of feet
26. *pyrophobia*	Morbid fear of fire
27. *sitophobia*	Morbid fear of food
28. *syphilophobia*	Morbid fear of syphilis
29. *trichophobia*	Morbid fear of hair
30. *triskaidekaphobia*	Morbid fear of the number 13
31. *xenophobia*	Morbid fear of foreigners
32. *zoophobia*	Morbid fear of animals or some particular animal

Exercises

I. *Match the names in the left-hand column with the specific fears on the right.*

1. acrophobia	a. crowds
2. agoraphobia	b. animals
3. claustrophobia	c. fire
4. nyctophobia	d. high places
5. ochlophobia	e. open places
6. pathophobia	f. closed places
7. photophobia	g. hair
8. pyrophobia	h. light
9. trichophobia	i. darkness
10. zoophobia	j. disease

Answers: 1. d 2. e 3. f 4. i 5. a 6. j 7. h 8. c 9. g 10. b

II. *Choose the number of the word which most nearly expresses the meaning of the italicized word:*

Example—hydrophobia: (1) fear of high places (2) accident (3) fear of water (4) allergy ... (3)

a. *monophobia* (1) fear of darkness (2) decadence (3) nightmare (4) fear of being alone .....

b. *astraphobia* (1) fear of lightning, thunder and storms (2) frightened (3) fear of open places (4) insomnia .....

c. *ochlophobia* (1) fear of contamination or germs (2) fear of crowds (3) deception (4) intolerance .....

d. *nyctophobia* (1) melancholy (2) fear of darkness (3) fear of fire (4) allergy .....

e. *acrophobia* (1) fear of pain (2) fear of crowds (3) fear of disease (4) fear of high places .....

Answers: a. (4) b. (1) c. (2) d. (2) e. (4)

3. WHAT DO THE FOLLOWING KILL? (Killer-words)

You are taught to fly in the air like birds, swim in the water like fish but you do not know how to live like decent human beings. No wonder the baser elements often get the better of your noble self. You defy the canons of morality. You go berserk. The killer instinct overpowers you. And you indulge in *homicide*.

And there are telltale words to express this aberration. These killer-words end in-*cide* which means 'to kill'.

DO YOU KNOW?

What word aptly describes:

- murder of one's brother or sister?
- murder of one's own father?
- murder of one's own mother?
- murder of one's own self?
- murder of one's ruler?
- murder of human beings *en masse?*

You are not to worry about it. In the armoury of English language there are separate words for such a killing spree as—

(A)

1. *apicide*	the killing of bees
2. *avicide*	the killing of birds
3. *canicide*	the killing of dogs
4. *germicide*	the killing of germs

5. *herpeticide*	the killing of snakes
6. *insecticide*	the killing of insects
7. *pesticide*	the killing of pests

(B)

1. *filicide*	the killing of one's children
2. *fratricide*	the killing of one's brother
3. *genocide*	the killing of a race of people
4. *homicide*	the killing of human beings
5. *infanticide*	the killing of one's infant
6. *matricide*	the killing of one's mother
7. *parricide*	the killing of one's parents
8. *patricide*	the killing of one's father
9. *populicide*	the killing of populations
10. *regicide*	the killing of king
11. *sororicide*	the killing of one's sister
12. *suicide*	the killing of oneself
13. *uxoricide*	the killing of one's wife

Exercise

*Match the words in column **A** with what they kill in column **B**:*

A	**B**
1. apicide	a. wife
2. avicide	b. king
3. canicide	c. sister
4. filicide	d. bees
5. fratricide	e. father
6. genocide	f. birds
7. homicide	g. dogs
8. herpeticide	h. infant
9. infanticide	i. snakes
10. matricide	j. a race of people
11. parricide	k. children
12. patricide	l. brother
13. regicide	m. human beings
14. sororicide	n. mother
15. uxoricide	o. parents

Answers: 1. d 2. f 3. g 4. k 5. l 6. j 7. m. 8. i 9. h 10. n 11. o 12. e 13. b 14. c 15. a

4. THE ANGRY MAN

The twin sister of hatred is anger. When combined they assume a virulent form. They waste the smiling fields and kill human beings like wanton flies.

"If anger proceeds from a great cause, it turns to fury if from a small cause it is peevishness and so it is always either terrible or ridiculous". An angry man vents his spleen. His blood is up. He jumps down your throat. He is blinded by emotion, so much so that he hardly sees reason. Anger makes his blood boil; it makes him wild. Hence our saints and sages reiterate: 'Keep cool. Keep your head'.

You have, in English language, very many words to express anger in its myriad forms as—

1. *acrimony*	bitterness of temper
2. *altercation*	quarrel
3. *animosity*	active enmity
4. *antagonism*	active opposition
5. *antipathy*	constitutional aversion
6. *contentiousness*	quarrelsomeness
7. *diatribe*	piece of bitter criticism
8. *indignation*	feelings of surprised anger
9. *irascibility*	angry behaviour
10. *tantrum*	a fit of ill-temper
11. *virulence*	full of hatred
12. *wrath*	indignation great anger

Exercise

*What kind of anger do these words convey? Match **A** with **B**.*

A	**B**
1. virulence	a. full of hatred
2. wrath	b. bitterness of temper
3. altercation	c. a fit of ill-temper
4. animosity	d. indignation
5. tantrum	e. active enmity
6. acrimony	f. quarrel

Answers: 1. a 2. d 3. f 4. e 5. c 6. b

5. RULES AND FORMS OF GOVERNMENT

You know *cracy* is an element meaning *rule*. You find it in the word *democracy* which means *the rule of the people*. There have been many other types of rule such as these:

1.	*Aristocracy*	rule by the nobility
2.	*Autocracy*	rule by absolute monarch
3.	*Bureaucracy*	rule by desk officials
4.	*Gerontocracy*	rule by old men
5.	*Gynecocracy*	rule by women
6.	*Kakistocracy*	rule by the worst citizens
7.	*Mobocracy*	rule by mob
8.	*Neocracy*	rule by new, inexperienced officials
9	*Ochlocracy*	rule by mob
10	*Pantisocracy*	rule (government) by all
11	*Plutocracy*	rule by wealthy people
12.	*Theocracy*	rule by church authorities

And look at these, too:

1.	*Anarchy*	a state without government
2.	*Autarchy*	government of a country by one person with unlimited power
3.	*Biarchy*	government by two people
4.	*Endarchy*	government from an inner centre of control
5.	*Monarchy*	government by a monarch (king)
6.	*Oligarchy*	government in the hands of a few
7	*Panarchy*	government by all universal rule
8.	*Pentarchy*	government by five rulers or powers
9.	*Polyarchy*	government by many persons
10.	*Thearchy*	government by the gods

Exercise

Fit each word in Column II to its proper defining word or phrase in Column I.

Column I	*Column II*
1. Government by many persons	a. monocracy
2. Government by one ruler	b. autocracy
3. Government by two people	c. theocracy

Column I	*Column II*
4. Government by five rulers or powers	d. neocracy
5. Government in the hands of a few	e. anarchy
6. Government by new, inexperienced officials	f. autarchy
7. Government from an inner centre of control	g. polyarchy
8. A state without government	h. biarchy
9. A state governed by absolute ruler	i. endarchy
10. Absolute rule	j. oligarchy
11. Government directed by priests or clergy representing God	k. pentarchy
12. Universal rule	l. panarchy

Answers: 1. g 2. a 3. h 4. k 5. j 6. d 7. i 8. e 9. b 10. f 11. c 12. l

6. KNOW YOUR DOCTORS

In the field of medicine *-ologist* denotes a specialist in a specific type of disease. Let me introduce to you ten of these specialists with the diseases they specialize in.

1. *Cardiologist*	specializes in heart diseases
2. *Dermatologist*	specializes in skin diseases
3. *Endocrinologist*	specializes in diseases of glands of internal secretion
4. *Gerontologist*	specializes in diseases of old age
5. *Gynecologist*	specializes in female diseases
6. *Neurologist*	specializes in nerve diseases
7. *Ophthalmologist*	specializes in eye diseases
8. *Otologist*	specializes in ear diseases
9. *Pathologist*	specializes in detecting the nature and origin of diseases
10. *Rhinologist*	specializes in nose diseases

And these, too:

1. *Orthodontist*	specializes in treating persons with crooked teeth
2. *Osteopath*	specializes in treating persons with bone displacement
3. *Pediatrician*	specializes in children's diseases
4. *Podiatrist*	specializes in feet ailments
5. *Psychiatrist*	specializes in treating persons with mental aberrations

Exercise

Write the title of the doctor you would consult for each of these troubles.

1. skin diseases .....
2. eye diseases .....
3. women's diseases .....
4. ailments of feet .....
5. mental aberrations.....
6. displacement of bones .....
7. crooked teeth .....
8. heart disease .....
9. children's disease .....
10. nerve disorders .....

Answers: 1. Dermatologist 2. Oculist or Ophthalmologist 3. Gynecologist 4. Podiatrist 5. Psychiatrist 6. Osteopath 7. Orthodontist 8. Cardiologist 9. Pediatrician 10. Neurologist

7. BRANCHES OF SCIENCE AND LEARNING

Science has permeated every walk of life. No area of human activity is beyond the purview of science. It rather encompasses the whole universe. It is worthwhile to know some of the branches of science and learning, the scientists and the field they specialize in.

Here is the list of science, scientists and the subjects they deal with:

Science	***Scientist***	***Subject***
Archaeology	*Archaeologist*	prehistoric remains
Astronomy	*Astronomer*	heavenly bodies
Anthropology	*Anthropologist*	mankind
Entomology	*Entomologist*	insects
Etymology	*Etymologist*	derivation of words
Botany	*Botanist*	plant life
Biology	*Biologist*	physical life
Chromatology	*Chromatologist*	colours
Geology	*Geologist*	rocks
Graphology	*Graphologist*	handwriting
Ecology	*Ecologist*	environment
Embryology	*Embryologist*	beginning of life
Ethnology	*Ethnologist*	races of mankind
Lexicography	*Lexicographer*	dictionary compiling
Meteorology	*Meteorologist*	weather forecast
Numismatics	*Numismatist*	coins and medals
Ornithology	*Ornithologist*	lives and habits of birds

Phrenology	*Phrenologist*	skull and brain
Philology	*Philologist*	languages
Pomology	*Pomologist*	fruits
Psychology	*Psychologist*	the human mind
Radiology	*Radiologist*	radioactivity
Paleontology	*Paleontologist*	fossils and other forms of early life
Seismology	*Seismologist*	earthquakes
Speleology	*Speleologist*	caves
Sociology	*Sociologist*	societies and human behaviour in groups
Zoology	*Zoologist*	different kinds of animals
Phonology	*Phonologist*	speech sound of a language or languages
Philately	*Philatelist*	stamp collecting
Cartography	*Cartographer*	map drawing
Choreography	*Choreographer*	ballet designing
Lithography	*Lithographer*	stone engraving
Topography	*Topographer*	physical features of a place through map or chart
Demography	*Demographer*	statistics of human population

Exercise

I. *Name the science which deals with each of the following subjects. The initial letter of the correct word is given.*

1.	Ancient relics	A.....logy
2.	Birds	O.....logy
3.	Mankind	A.....logy
4.	Derivation of words	E.....logy
5.	Religions and God	T.....logy
6.	Languages	P.....logy
7.	Colours	C.....logy
8.	The human mind	P.....logy
9.	Rocks	G.....logy
10.	Disease	P.....logy

Answers: 1. Archaeology 2. Ornithology 3. Anthropology 4. Etymology 5. Theology 6. Philology 7. Chromatology 8. Psychology 9. Geology 10. Pathology

II. *Choose the word which most closely fits each definition.*

1. One who studies the science of mankind:
   (a) geologist (b) anthropologist (c) psychologist
2. Practitioner trained in Freudian techniques:
   (a) psychoanalyst (b) psychologist (c) psychiatrist
3. The scientist who covers the entire field of words and language:
   (a) philologist (b) ethnologist (c) archaeologist
4. Handwriting analyst:
   (a) phrenologist (b) graphologist (c) entomologist
5. A scientist who deals with the beginnings of life:
   (a) geologist (b) etymologist (c) embryologist

Answers: 1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (a) 4. (b) 5. (c)

8. WHAT ARE THEY?
(Professions)

In the throng of life no two persons are alike. They differ in look, temperament, belief and vocation. Some are short and stocky, others tall and lanky. Some are introvert and some extrovert. Some are theist and some atheist. Some are teetotaller and others partial to the cup that inebriates. Some are reserved and reticent and others vivacious and fun-loving. They may belong to different trades and professions. It is no easy job to categorize them.

Here is an assortment of people you would love to know:

(1)

1.	*Architect*	He draws plans for a building.
2.	*Astronaut*	A space-traveller
3.	*Bookmaker*	He takes bets especially on horse races and writes down in his notebook.
4.	*Balloonist*	He ascends in a balloon.
5.	*Chemist*	He sells medicines.
6.	*Chauffeur*	He drives a motorcar.
7.	*Collier*	He works in a coal mine.
8.	*Compositor*	He sets type in a printing press.
9.	*Curator*	An official in charge of a museum or art gallery
10.	*Custodian*	Caretaker of a public building

(2)

1. *Cobbler*	Mender or maker of shoes
2. *Dietician*	An expert in food and nutrition
3. *Draper*	He sells cloth, fabric.
4. *Druggist*	He sells medicines.
5. *Farrier*	He shoes horses.
6. *Fishmonger*	He who deals in fish
7. *Flautist*	A flute player
8. *Florist*	A person who grows or sells flowers
9. *Fruiterer*	A person who deals in fruit
10. *Glazier*	A person who sets glass in windows, doors, etc.

(3)

1. *Grazier*	A person who pastures cattle for the market
2. *Hawker*	He travels from place to place selling miscellaneous articles.
3. *Invigilator*	A person who watches over students taking an examination
4. *Ironmonger*	A person who deals in iron or hardware
5. *Jockey*	A professional horse rider in a race
6. *Lapidist*	He cuts precious stones.
7. *Librarian*	A person in charge of a library
8. *Milliner*	A person who makes and sells ladies' hats, etc.
9. *Oculist*	He is an eye-doctor.
10. *Optician*	A specialist in making eyeglasses

And look at these, too:

1. *Optometrist*	He prescribes corrective lenses.
2. *Pawnbroker*	He lends money and keeps goods as security.
3. *Physician*	He attends to sick people and prescribes medicines.
4. *Playwright*	He writes plays.
5. *Plumber*	He repairs water-pipes and cisterns.
6. *Potter*	He makes pots, cups, etc.
7. *Scavenger*	He is a refuge-collector.
8. *Sculptor*	He carves marble or stone.
9. *Surveyor*	He measures land.

10. *Technician* — He is a technical expert.
11. *Tinker* — He goes from place to place mending pots, pans, etc.
12. *Tobacconist* — He sells tobacco and cigarettes.
13. *Usurer* — He lends money at an exorbitant rate of interest.
14. *Violinist* — He plays the violin.

Exercises

I. *Check the word that fits each definition.*

1. An expert in foods and nutrition:
   (a) patrician (b) dietician (c) pediatrician
2. An expert in runnng an industry:
   (a) technician (b) industrialist (c) engineer
3. An expert at displaying fireworks:
   (a) magician (b) fireman (c) pyrotechnician
4. The creator of a design or plan for building:
   (a) cartographer (b) architect (c) bricklayer
5. One who makes maps and charts:
   (a) geologist (b) cartographer (c) geographer
6. A specialist in making eyeglasses:
   (a) optician (b) optometrist (c) oculist
7. One who has been withdrawn from a bombing zone:
   (a) refugee (b) deportee (c) evacuee
8. One who prescribes corrective lenses:
   (a) optician (b) optometrist (c) oculist
9. A person who books your ticket on a bus or tram:
   (a) ticket-collector (b) conductor (c) astronomer
10. A space-traveller:
    (a) technocrat (b) astronomer (c) astronaut

Answers: 1. (b) 2. (a) 3. (c) 4. (b) 5. (b) 6. (a) 7. (c) 8. (b) 9. (b) 10. (c)

II. *What names are given to these people? (Each word ends in -ist.)*

1. He studies and collects coins. N.....
2. He writes for newspapers. J.....
3. He specializes in the treatment of heart diseases. C.....
4. He studies plants. B.....
5. He collects postage stamps. P.....

6. He plays an instrument in support of a singer. A.....
7. He studies the lives and habits of birds. O.....
8. He studies earth and its composition. G.....
9. He studies words and languages. P.....
10. He studies social relationships, social customs, family life, etc. S.....

Answers: 1. Numismatist 2. Journalist 3. Cardiologist 4. Botanist 5. Philatelist 6. Accompanist 7. Ornithologist 8. Geologist 9. Philologist 10. Sociologist.

9. WHAT ARE THEY LIKE? (Traits)

Man, they say, is half dust, half deity, equally fit to sink or soar. The delineation of the traits of the human character is, then, no easy job. Psychologists, down the ages, have tried fairly successfully to pinpoint the plus personality points as well as the minus personality points. You would do well to meet some of them. They have certain distinct traits—traits that set them apart from others.

(1)

1. *Supercilious* — a person who is overbearing, proud and haughty
2. *Misanthrope* — a person who hates mankind
3. *Libertine* — a person without a moral
4. *Impetuous* — a person who acts suddenly and without thought
5. *Pugnacious* — a person having an inclination to fight
6. *Rapacious* — a person having a grasping nature; greedy
7. *Malicious* — a person who is full of malice and ill will
8. *Insidious* — a person who does harm secretly and craftily
9. *Petulant* — a person unreasonably impatient or irritable
10. *Hypocrite* — a person who is feigning to be what he is not

(2)

1. *Extrovert* — a person more interested in what goes on around him than in his own thoughts and feelings

2.	*Introvert*	a person more interested in his own thoughts and feelings than in things outside himself
3.	*Egoist*	a person who always thinks of himself
4.	*Egocentric*	a person who is self-centred
5.	*Gregarious*	a person who likes the company of others
6.	*Judicious*	a person who possesses a sound judgment
7.	*Boisterous*	a person who is noisy and cheerful
8.	*Taciturn*	a person who is habitually silent or reserved
9.	*Erudite*	a person who is scholarly and learned
10.	*Punctilious*	a person who is precise in the observance of forms or ceremonies

(3)

1.	*Epicurean*	a person who loves the refinements of pleasure and believes that pleasure is the chief good
2.	*Stoic*	a person who is unmoved by joy or grief
3.	*Atheist*	a person who denies the existence of God
4.	*Catholic*	a person who is broad in outlook
5.	*Philistine*	a person of materialistic taste indifferent to art and literature
6.	*Fastidious*	a person difficult to please
7.	*Connoisseur*	a person who is a critical judge in matters of taste
8.	*Antiquarian*	a person interested in the study of ancient things
9.	*Ascetic*	a person who practises self-denial and leads an austere life
10.	*Gourmet*	a person who has a good taste for food

(4)

1.	*Optimist*	He looks at the bright side of life.
2.	*Pessimist*	He looks at the dark side of life.
3.	*Martinet*	He is a stickler for discipline.
4.	*Aesthete*	He has a highly developed sense of beauty.
5.	*Pedant*	He makes a display of his learning.
6.	*Sycophant*	He is a servile flatterer of the rich and powerful.

7. *Hedonist* — He leads his life purely for pleasure, especially physical pleasure.
8. *Infidel* — He has no belief in a specific religion.
9. *Suave* — He is polished in manner.
10. *Docile* — He is quiet and easily controlled, managed or influenced.
11. *Conservative* — He is opposed to great or sudden change.
12. *Misogynist* — He hates women.
13. *Philanthropist* — He is kind and helpful to those who are poor or in trouble.
14. *Pornographer* — He treats of sexual subjects in pictures or writing in a way that is meant to cause sexual excitement.
15. *Eccentric* — He is a person who is peculiar, not normal in behaviour.
16. *Misogamist* — He hates the institution of marriage.
17. *Misologist* — He hates learning and knowledge.
18. *Gullible* — He is easily tricked and persuaded to believe something.
19. *Recluse* — He lives in complete seclusion.
20. *Termagant* — She is a noisy, quarrelsome woman.

(5)

1. *Imperious* — He is commanding, haughty and arrogant.
2. *Impertinent* — He is impudent, saucy and he does not show respect.
3. *Henpecked* — He is ruled by his wife.
4. *Garrulous* — He talks too much about unimportant things.
5. *Egalitarian* — He favours the doctrine of equal rights and opportunities for all citizens.
6. *Plagiarist* — He takes and uses somebody else's ideas, words, etc. as if they were his own.
7. *Chauvinist* — He is a person with unreasoning partiality to his place or group.
8. *Debonair* — He is suave and light-hearted.
9. *Amiable* — He is easy and pleasant to talk to.
10. *Dilettante* — He studies something but not seriously and not with real understanding: a dabbler in art, science or literature.

Exercises

I. *Fit each word in Column II to its proper defining word or phrase in Column I.*

Column I	*Column II*
1. gluttonous, greedy in eating	a. audacious
2. full of life, spirited, merry	b. capricious
3. fond of fighting, quarrelsome	c. gracious
4. having grasping nature, greedy	d. loquacious
5. wise in a keen and practical way	e. malicious
6. holding fast, refusing to let go	f. officious
7. daring, foolishly bold	g. pugnacious
8. talkative, fond of talking	h. rapacious
9. too eager to help, use authority	i. sagacious
10. full of malice, ill-willed	j. tenacious
11. whimsical, often changing	k. vivacious
12. full of kindness	l. voracious

Answers: 1. l 2. k 3. g 4. h 5. i 6. j 7. a 8. d 9. f 10. e 11. b 12. c

II. *Match words and definitions.*

Words	*Definitions*
1. assiduous	a. full of envy, wanting what others have
2. boisterous	b. too ready to believe things
3. callous	c. talking too much about unimportant things
4. chivalrous	d. acting on impulse, without thought or care
5. covetous	e. extremely careful in attending to details
6. credulous	f. frank, open, naive
7. dexterous	g. diligent, persevering
8. garrulous	h. noisy and cheerful
9. impetuous	i. skilful with hands
10. magnanimous	j. honourable, courteous
11. meticulous	k. hardened, unfeeling
12. ingenuous	l. great-hearted, generous

Answers: 1. g 2. h 3. k 4. j 5. a 6. b 7. i 8. c 9. d 10. l 11. e 12. f

III. *Pick the correct answer in each of the following:*

1. A *misanthrope* hates
   (a) games (b) mankind (c) democratic form of government
2. The *egocentric* is
   (a) self-effacing (b) pleasure-loving (c) self-centred
3. The interests of a *philistine* are
   (a) confined to his self (b) mercenary (c) material and commonplace

4. A *libertine* is a person

(a) without a moral (b) of moral stature (c) believing in the liberty of the press

5. *Hypocrite* is one who falsely

(a) implicates his friends (b) puts an appearance of virtue (c) drags one into a controversy

6. The *conservative* is

(a) opposed to great or sudden change (b) a person who suffers for his beliefs (c) well-versed in the science of the industrial arts

---

Answers: 1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (c) 4. (a) 5. (b) 6. (a)

---

10. ANIMAL TRAITS

There are thousand and one species of birds and animals. Each is different from the other in look, habit and trait.

Certain animals have a marked trait which distinguishes them from others. There are adjectives denoting animal traits. They are often used to great effect to pinpoint even human features. As for example, *acquiline* nose (hooked like an eagle's beak) *canine* teeth (pointed teeth like those of dogs). He walked with *feline* (catlike) grace.

It is worthwhile to know these adjectives with the animal traits that they signify.

Adjectives	*Description*
acquiline	eaglelike
asinine	asslike
bovine	oxlike or cowlike
canine	doglike
elephantine	elephantlike
equine	horselike
feline	catlike
leonine	lionlike
ovine	sheeplike
porcine	piglike
serpentine	serpentlike
ursine	bearlike
vulpine	wolflike

Exercises

I. *Match the adjective in column* **A** *with the animal trait it signifies in column* **B**.

A (Adjectives)	*B (Description)*
1. acquiline	a. catlike
2. asinine	b. sheeplike
3. canine	c. lionlike
4. equine	d. eaglelike
5. feline	e. doglike
6. leonine	f. horselike
7. suine	g. wolflike
8. ursine	h. piglike
9. ovine	i. bearlike
10. vulpine	j. asslike

Answers: 1. d 2. j 3. e 4. f 5. a 6. c 7. h 8. i 9. b 10. g

II. *Check in each case (a, b or c) the correct definition or synonym for each italicized word.*

1. *bovine*
   a. sheeplike b. oxlike c. sycophant .....
2. *leonine*
   a. lionlike b. wolflike c. elephantlike .....
3. *feline*
   a. eaglelike b. piglike c. catlike .....
4. *canine*
   a. cannonlike b. serpentlike c. doglike .....
5. *vulpine*
   a. wolflike b. asslike c. horselike .....

Answers: 1. b 2. a 3. c 4. c 5. a

11. MAN'S ATTITUDE TO GOD

You marvel at the phenomena of this universe. You sometimes quite innocently ask what keeps this world going, and who is the moving spirit behind all that goes on day in, day out, year in, year out. The faithful aver that the starry sky, the babbling brooks, the meandering rivers, and the snow-capped mountains, nay, all are the handiwork of an artist infinite in capacity, dexterous in execution. But the atheists spurn all such assump-

tions. They contend that seeing is believing. And since God cannot be seen in the material form, they foolishly believe that there is neither God nor any other deity.

You are no slavish imitator in matters of belief. You challenge the age-old assumptions about God and this universe. You give something new to the world. And thus various creeds and beliefs spring up. The question, then, is:

DO YOU KNOW THE SPECIFIC MEANING OF:

☆ atheism? ☆ agnosticism? ☆ monotheism? ☆ deism?
☆ pantheism? ☆ polytheism? ☆ henotheism? ☆ theism?

You will do well to remember these:

1.	*Atheism*	disbelief in God
2.	*Agnosticism*	skepticism about God
3.	*Deism*	belief in the existence of a Divine Being, but without acceptance of revelation or religious dogma
4.	*Henotheism*	belief in one of a group of gods, without asserting that he is the only God
5.	*Monotheism*	belief in one God
6.	*Pantheism*	belief that God is nature
7.	*Polytheism*	belief in many gods
8.	*Theism*	belief in the existence of one God, Creator and Ruler of the universe, but without the denial of revelation

Exercises

I. *Name the type of philosophy that is defined by each of the following words or phrases:*

1. Pleasure is the chief good. .....
2. War should and could be abolished. .....
3. There is no God. .....
4. You can't change the future. It is predestined and predetermined. .....
5. There is one and only one God. .....
6. Eat, drink and be merry. .....
7. Life is a ringing stream of silvery laughter. .....
8. Life is a painful drag. .....
9. Do all the good you can, to all the people you can. .....
10. No one knows if God exists. .....

Answers: 1. hedonism 2. pacifism 3. atheism 4. fatalism 5. monotheism 6. epicureanism 7. optimism 8. pessimism 9. philanthropism 10. agnosticism

II. *Match the two columns by placing the appropriate letter of column* ***B*** *next to each word in column* ***A.***

A		B
1. hedonism	.....	a. belief that there is no God
2. agnosticism	.....	b. doctrine of the denial of the moral and spiritual objectives of man
3. monotheism	.....	c. belief that pleasure is the chief good
4. pacifism	.....	d. belief that there is one and only one God
5. pantheism	.....	e. belief that God is unknowable
6. sophism	.....	f. principle that war should and could be abolished
7. nihilism	.....	g. a doctrine that equates God with the forces and laws of the universe
8. atheism	.....	h. false reasoning intended to deceive
9. Hellenism	.....	i. conformity to or imitation of ancient Greek thought, customs, or styles
10. communalism	.....	j. strong loyalty and adherence to one's community and its values to excess

Answers 1. c 2. e 3. d 4. f 5. g 6. h 7. b 8. a 9. i 10. j

12. APPROPRIATE VERBS

Suit the action to the word, the word to the action.

— SHAKESPEARE: HAMLET

Right word in the right place, they say, is a key to exactitude of expression. There are specific verbs for particular shades of thought. You cannot exchange one for the other:

☆ We *allay* excitement, *appease* a tumult, *calm* agitation, *compose* our feelings, *pacify* the quarrelsome, *quiet* the boisterous or clamorous, *soothe* grief or distress.

☆ We *abhor* the traitor, *despise* a coward, *detest* a liar, *dislike* an uncivil person. We *abhor* cruelty, *hate* tyranny, *loathe* a flatterer.

☆ We *abate* a fever, *moderate* passions or desires, *lessen* anxiety, *lighten* burdens: *mitigate* or *alleviate* pain: *reduce* inflammation.

☆ We *blow out* the candle, *extinguish* the fire, *switch off* the light, *turn* the radio *off*, *quench* our thirst, *satiate* our hunger.

☆ We *pare* the nails, *clip* or *trim* the moustache, *reap* the corns, *mow* the grass, *prune* the hedge, *fell* the tree, *hew out* the stones, *slash* the marks, *book* the ticket, *pick* someone's pocket, *curtail* our expenses, and *snap* electric connections.

☆ We *admire* beauty in nature and art, *delight* in the innocent happiness of children, *enjoy* books or society, a walk or dinner. We *approve* what is excellent, *applaud* heroic deeds, *esteem* the good, *love* our friends.

☆ We *honour* and *respect* noble character. We *revere* and *venerate* it in the aged. We *extol* the goodness and *adore* the majesty and power of God.

How tricky these verbs are! They are at home in their habitats. And out of it? Gaping fools! Blinking idiots ! Remember, then, that a ship *sails* or *floats*, but men and animals *swim*, a doctor *sees* the patient and *prescribes* for him, but a lawyer *advises* a client and *pleads* for him. You *scrub* the floor, but you *polish* the car. These are, then, building blocks of thought that need very deft and careful handling.

to *foment* trouble
to *explode* crackers
to *apprehend* danger
to *scotch* the rumour (*put an end to*)
to *vitiate* the atmosphere (*spoil*)
to *sling* mud at someone
to *fling* remarks
to *tarnish* somebody's image
to *pry* into somebody' affairs
to *nab* the criminal (*arrest*)
to *remand* one to jail custody
to *amass* wealth
to *hoard* grains
to *pool* one's resources
to *court* danger

to *grab* the land
to *comb* the whole area
to *waste* time
to *squander* money
to *fritter* away one's energy
to *exact* an exorbitant rate of interest
to *flex* the muscle (*bend and move*)
to *mollify* one's anger
to *stoop* low
to *foil* an attempt
to *pacify* the angry mob
to *gnash* one's teeth
to *apportion* blame (*to divide and share out*)

to *ascertain* the fact
to *curry* somebody's favour (*win*)
to *lull* a baby to sleep
to *sing* a lullaby
to *refurbish* the image (*to make bright and fresh again*)
to *tilt* the balance
to *nurse* a grudge
to *harbour* ill will
to *rectify* a mistake (*put right*)
to *strike* terror
to *defy* authority (*disobey*)
to *struggle* against odds
to *climb* stairs
to *scale* the wall
to *mop* the floor
to *dust* the books
to *twirl* the moustache
to *box* the ears
to *acknowledge* someone's claim
to *concede* the demand (*admit as true*)
to *assign* reason
to *cite* precedent
to *concoct* a story
to *offer* pleas
to *confirm* an appointment
to *ratify* a treaty
to *inflict* a wound
to *dress* the wound
to *feel* the pulse
to *administer* oxygen
to *transfuse* blood
to *graft* the skin
transplant the heart

to *set* the bones
to *amputate* an arm (*cut off*)
to *extract* the tooth
to *convene* a meeting
to *deliver* a fiery speech
to *stage* a demonstration
to *take* out a procession
to *break* the police cordon
to *pelt* stones
to *fast* unto death
to *go on* strike
to *call off* the strike
to *control* the unruly mob
to *cast* vote
to *unfurl* or *hoist* the flag
to *bare* one's bosom
to *expunge* an objectionable remark
to *cast* aspersion on someone
to *lob* the ball
to *spoon* a catch
to *choose* a career
to *embark* on an adventure
to *draw up* a plan
to *execute* a plan
to *toss* the coin
to *spill* every ounce of one's energy
to *flash* a news
to *leap* with joy
to *bask* in the sunshine
to *commit* a crime
to *commit* to memory
to *stitch* clothes
to *sew on* the buttons
to *play* the violin

to *draw* an inference
to *play* the host
to *lay* the table
to *roast* meat
to *fry* fish
to *bake* bread
to *cook* rice
to *whet* one's appetite
to *satiate* one's hunger
to *quench* one's thirst
to *deploy* troops
to *demolish* an unauthorised structure
to *desecrate* a place of worship (*to use in an unworthy way*)
to *extort* money
to *grease* somebody's palm
to *flaunt* one's riches (*show off*)
to *eradicate* crime, poverty
to *walk* the distance
to *discard* a worn garment
to *revoke* a will
to *abjure* one's religion
to *suppress* a rebellion
to *restrain* an action
to *fulfil* a promise
to *oppose* a measure
to *resist* an attack
to *forge* new friendship
to *renew* old contact
to *bury* the dead
to *encourage* the timid
to *succour* the endangered
to *support* the weak
to *repulse* an attack
to *invoke* the gods
to *address* the chair
to *set* fire to something
to *set* something *on fire*
to *kindle* a fire
to *propound* a theory
to *promulgate* an ordinance
to *communicate* news
to *channelize* one's energy
to *wring* wet clothes
to *distort* facts
to *disfigure* one's face
to *sever* connections
to *disrupt* a meeting
to *lynch* a rapist
to *launch* a rocket
to *torment* a person
to *oppress* the poor
to *malign* an innocent person
to *respond* to kindness
to *rivet* one's attention (*to attract and hold strongly*)
to *extort* a confession from someone
to *generate* heat, electricity
to *unfold* a plan
to *air* one's grievances
to *peel off* an orange
to *weave* threads together
to *foretell* the future events
to *propitiate* the gods (*win the favour of*)
to *spit* blood, venom
to *delineate* a character
to *brag* about something

Exercise

Which of the verbs given in brackets best completes each of the given sentences?

1. It is no easy job to... the anger of this hot-headed fellow. (*satiate, heighten, mollify*)
2. He...the audience with his spicy anecdotes. (*regaled, rebuffed, glorified*)
3. The thief was caught and...to jail custody. (*lodged, thrown, remanded*)
4. Shylock... a high rate of interest. (*exacted, extricated, amassed*)
5. Don't ...the blood of the innocent. (*flow, spill, waste*)
6. He drank glasses of water to ... his thirst. (*satiate, extinguish, slake*)
7. A new film has been ... (*screened, sighted, put up*)
8. He ... into a rage at the slightest provocation. (*provokes, flies, jumps*)

Answers: 1. *mollify* 2. *regaled* 3. *remanded* 4. *exacted* 5. *spill* 6. *slake* 7. *screened* 8 *flies*

13. COMMONLY USED VERBS

A particular noun needs a particular verb to express what is done to it. As for example.

do research, *take* an exam., *give* a talk, *play* a game, *make* an effort, *perform* a task. *have* a rest

The verbs commonly used with particular nouns are plentiful. You will do well to know them in their right combinations Here are a few common expressions:

You can *have*

breakfast	a walk	a good time
lunch	a ride	a nice evening
tea	a game of cards	a bad day
dinner	a rest	a thought
coffee	a lie-down	an idea
a meal	a sleep	a talk
a drink	a dream	a chat
a glass of juice	a headache	a conversation

You can *have*

a party	an illness	a row
a shave	a fit	a quarrel
a bath	an accident	a fight
a wash	an operation	a word with somebody
a shower	a holiday	a baby (*give birth*)
a swim	a day off	a nervous breakdown
a try	a go	a setback

You can *make*

an accusation	a journey
an arrangement	love
an attempt	a meal (*prepare a meal*)
a boat	a mistake
a cake	money
a change	a movement
a comment	a noise
a decision	an offer
a demand	peace
an effort	a plan
an estimation	progress
an exception	a profit
an excuse	a promise
a fuss	a recommendation
a gesture	a request
a guess	a statement
an impression (on someone)	war

You can *take*

action	a liking to
advantage (of something or someone)	a look
a bath	medical/legal advice
care	my word for it (*Believe me*)
charge (of)	notice (of something)
a chance (on something)	an objection to

You can *take*

courage	offence (at something)
a deep breath	(great) pains over something
a degree (*obtain*)	a pill
driving lessons	a quick look round
an exception to	responsibility (for)
a fancy to	risks
fright (at something)	a seat
heart	something to heart
hold (of something)	a taxi
a holiday	things easy
liberties with	your time over something (*not hurry*)

You can *do*

your best	(someone) a good turn/harm
business (with someone)	your homework
a course (of study)	the housework
some damage	a job
a dance	research
the washing-up	the shopping
your duty	(some) work
(someone) a favour	your hair
the gardening	us the honour
good	

You can *give*

(someone) a chance	a performance
a chase to	permission
a command	an opinion
details	an order
evidence	(somebody) a ring (*telephone him*)
a groan	a talk/lecture
information	way
a party	

You can *play*	You can *perform*	A person or something can *go*
cards	a duty	bald
fair (fairly)	a function	blind
a game	an operation	crazy
the game *(observe the rules of the game)*	a piece of music	grey
the man *(act like a man)*	a play	mad
a musical instrument	tricks	rusty (iron)
(some) music		sour (milk)
a part		stale (bread)
prank (on someone)		wrong (machine)
a record (cassette, tape, etc.)		
a role		
a trick (on somebody)		
a tune		

Different Verbs for Different Actions

A train *moves off* from the platform.		A boat *puts off* from the shore.
A tree *sheds* its leaves.		A bird *casts off* its feathers.
You *scrub* the floor.		You *polish* the car.
You *shake* your head.		You *shrug* your shoulders.
You *waste* time.	But	You *squander* money.
You *sharpen* the knife.		You *quicken* your steps.
You *unravel* a secret.		You *unearth* a buried treasure.
You *cook* rice.		You *bake* bread.
You *sit for/take* an exa...		You *mark/set* an exam.
(if you're a student)		(if you're a teacher)
You *pare* the nails.		You *clip* the moustache.
Trains *rumble*.		Wheels *rattle*.

14. IDIOMATIC NOUN PHRASES

There are words which mean a large number of persons, or animals, or a large quantity of things. We use expressions like 'a *multitude* of people', 'an *army* of soldiers', 'a *flock* of sheep' and 'a *bunch* of grapes'. The words *multitude, army, flock* and *bunch* stand for a collection of people, soldiers, sheep and grapes respectively. Such words are called *collective nouns.*

We have different collective nouns for collection of people. As for example: a *crowd/throng/concourse/ gathering/multitude* of people. There is, then, one collective noun for different sets of people, as for example, a **gang** of *prisoners/robbers/thieves/convicts/workmen.*

The following is a list of some of the commonly used idiomatic or collective noun phrases:

(a) Collection of people

an *army* of soldiers

an *assembly* of representatives

a *band* of musicians, followers

a *batch* of pupils, candidates

a *battalion* of soldiers

a *bench* of judges

a *bevy* of girls, ladies

a *board* of directors, trustees, examiners

a *body* of men, soldiers, police, laws, etc.

a *brigade* of cavalry, infantry, artillery

a *caravan* of pilgrims, merchants

a *choir* of singers

a *circle* of friends, acquaintances

a *class* of persons, students

a *clique* of schemers

a *colony* of people

a *company* of actors, merchants

a *concourse* of people

a *conference* of preachers, delegates

a *congregation* of pilgrims, worshippers

a *congress* of representatives, delegates

a *contingent* of army personnels, boy scouts

a *corporation* of people

a *corps* of volunteers, soldiers

a *council* of ministers, advisers

a *crew* of sailors

a *crowd* of people

a *flurry* of attentive callers

a *gang* of robbers, thieves, convicts, prisoners

a *gathering* of people

a *guild* of tradesmen, artisans

a *horde* of barbarians, savages

a *host* of people

a *mob* of rioters

a *multitude* of people

a *muster* of troops

a *panel* of judges, jurymen

a *pack* of fools, knaves

a *party* of musicians, people

a *platoon* of soldiers, musketeers

a *posse* of policemen

a *procession* of people
a *queue* of people
a *regiment* of soldiers
a *senate* of councillors, university members
a *squad* of soldiers drilling
a *squadron* of soldiers, ships
a *staff* of teachers, officials, servants
a *stream* of people, visitors
a *string* of coolies
a *school* of thinkers, learned men
a *syndicate* of merchants, businessmen
a *team* of players
a *throng* of people
a *train* of followers
a *tribe* of aborigines
a *troop* of soldiers
a *troupe* of dancers, artists
a *union* of workers, tradesmen

(b) Collection of animals, birds and insects

an *army* of ants
a *bevy* of swans
a *brood* of chickens
a *colony* of termites
a *column* of ants
a *covey* of partridges (flying together)
a *drove* of cattle (when driven)
a *flight* of birds, locusts, insects
a *flock* of sheep, geese, chickens
a *gaggle* of geese
a *haul* of fishes (taken in a net)
a *herd* of deer, swine, cattle (when pasturing or driven together)
a *hive* of bees
a *leash* of hares, hounds
a *litter* of puppies, kittens, piglings (brought forth at one birth)
a *muster* of peacocks
a *nest* of ants
a *pack* of asses, hounds, wolves
a *school* of whales, porpoises
a *shoal* of herrings, fishes
a *string* of camels
a *stud* of ponies, horses
a *swarm* of flies, ants, bees, locusts
a *team* of horses, oxen
a *train* of donkeys
a *troop* of lions, monkeys

(c) Collection of things

an *album* of photos, snap-shots, stamps
an *alliance* of states, powers, etc.
an *anthology* of poems
an *archive* of public records
an *assortment* of jobs
a *bale* of cotton, wool
a *barrage* of questions
a *basket* of fruits
a *batch* of loaves (baked together)
a *battery* of guns, lights, cameras
a *beam* of rays
a *block* of flats, houses
a *bouquet* of flowers

a *bout* of illness
a *budget* of letters, news
a *bunch* of flowers, grapes, plantains, keys
a *cache* of arms
a *catalogue* of books (i.e., their names)
a *cargo* of wheat
a *carillon* of bells
a *catch* of fishes (taken in a net)
a *cavalcade* of memories
a *cellar* of wine
a *chain* of mountains, events
a *chest* of drawers
a *cloud* of dust
a *clump* of trees
a *cluster* of stars, islands, nuts
a *clutch* of eggs
a *code* of laws
a *column* of smoke
a *commission* of enquiry
a *commonwealth* of nations
a *confederation* of states, powers
a *consignment* of goods
a *constellation* of stars
a *convoy* of helicopters, lorries
a *course* of lectures, events
a *crop* of weeds, hair
a *curriculum* of studies
a *faggot* of twigs, sticks
a *fall* of leaves, snow, rain
a *family* of plants, languages
a *fleet* of cars, ships
a *flight* of steps, stairs
a *flotilla* of boats, ships
a *forest* of trees
a *galaxy* of stars
a *gallery* of pictures
a *garland* of flowers
a *glut* of injuries
a *group* of islands
a *grove* of trees
a *heap* of stones, ruins, sand
a *hoard* of jewels, gold
a *host* of subjects
a *jumble* of things (put together without any order)
a *league* of powers, states, nations
a *library* of books
a *lump* of mud, coal, lead
a *mass* of cloud, ruins
a *maze* of tanglewood, worldly affairs
a *miscellany* of composition (on various subjects)
a *mop* of grey hair
a *mine* of information
a *museum* of art
a *nosegay* of flowers
an *outfit* of clothes
a *pack* of playing-cards
a *packet* of cigarettes
a *peal* of thunder, bells
a *pencil* of rays
a *pile* of arms, woods, books
a *pool* of blood
a *quiver* of arrows
a *range* of mountains, hills
a *riot* of colours
a *roll* of names

a *rosary* of beads

a *round* of shots, duties, applause

a *row* of chairs, trees

a *sea* of troubles

a *series* of events, lectures

a *set* of rules, tools

a *sheaf* of arrows, cornstalks

a *shock* of hair

a *shower* of arrows, abuses, rains, bullets

a *species* of animals, plants

a *stack* of arms, hay, wood (piled together)

a *stock* of goods

a *stockpile* of nuclear arms, gunpowder

a *storm* of protest

a *stretch* of wheat field

a *string* of pearls, beads

a *suite* of rooms, apartments, furniture

a *syllabus* of studies

a *tissue* of lies

a *train* of waggons

a *treasure trove* of sunken ships

a *tuft* of grass, hair, feathers

a *volley* of questions, abuses, shots

a *whirlpool* of misery

Exercises

I. *What people would you expect to find in these groups?*

(a) a board of ..... (b) a panel of .....

(c) a band of ..... (d) a crew of .....

(e) a bench of ..... (f) a posse of .....

(g) a mob of ..... (h) a troupe of .....

(i) a conclave of ..... (j) a throng of .....

Answers: (a) directors (b) jurymen (c) musicians (d) sailors (e) judges (f) policemen (g) rioters (h) dancers (i) cardinals (j) people

II. *Can you give the group names (or nouns of multitude) for these birds and animals?*

(a) a ..... of pups (b) a ..... of sheep

(c) a ..... of ponies (d) a ..... of hounds

(e) a ..... of chickens (f) a ..... of cattle

(g) a ..... of partridges (h) a ..... of geese

Answers: (a) litter (b) flock (c) stud (d) pack (e) brood (f) herd (g) covey (h) gaggle

III. *Complete the following:*

1. a clump of .....
2. a chain of .....
3. a constellation of .....
4. a bouquet of

5. a bevy of.....
6. a library of .....
7. a heap of .....
8. a fleet of .....
9. a column of .....
10. a pencil of .....
11. a packet of .....
12. a panel of .....
13. a stockpile of .....
14. a quiver of .....
15. a peal of .....
16. a gang of .....
17. a group of .....
18. a galaxy of .....
19. a block of .....
20. a clutch of .....

Answers: 1. trees 2. mountains or events 3. stars 4. flowers 5. girls or ladies 6. books 7. stones or ruins 8. cars or ships 9. ants or smoke 10. rays 11. cigarettes 12. jurymen or judges 13. weapons 14. arrows 15. bells 16. robbers or thieves 17. islands or people 18. stars 19. flats 20. eggs

IV. *Complete the nouns of multitude in group (a) by choosing words from group (b):*

1

(a)	flight.	crew	swarm	pile	chest
	litter	band	fleet	clutch	suite
(b)	arms	bees	sailors	ships	musicians
	drawers	pups	rooms	eggs	steps

2

(a)	beam	horde	galaxy	library	bunch
	caravan	herd	clump	shoal	code
(b)	robbers	stars	cattle	herrings	rays
	laws	pilgrims	trees	keys	books

Answers: 1. flight of steps, crew of sailors, swarm of bees, pile of arms, chest of drawers, litter of pups, band of musicians, fleet of ships, clutch of eggs, suite of rooms

2. beam of rays, horde of robbers, galaxy of stars. library of books, bunch of keys, caravan of pilgrims, herd of cattle. clump of trees, shoal of herrings, code of laws

15. MASCULINE AND FEMININE

When all other distinctions are fast disappearing, sex distinction persists. The taboo of 'weaker sex' is almost gone. Nor is there much talk about 'male chauvinism'. On the contrary there are places where the supposedly 'weaker sex' calls the tune. The male and female species are in

fact, so alike in look, dress and manners that it is rather difficult to tell them apart. Much of it is also true of birds and animals.

In English you have one set of words for persons, birds and animals of one sex and another for their opposite sex.

1. People

Masculine	*Feminine*	*Masculine*	*Feminine*
actor	actress	king	queen
author	authoress	landlord	landlady
bachelor	spinster	lord	lady
boy	girl	male	female
bridegroom	bride	man	woman
brother	sister	manservant	maidservant
brother-in-law	sister-in-law	master	mistress
conductor	conductress	monk	nun
count	countess	negro	negress
duke	duchess	nephew	niece
earl	countess	poet	poetess
emperor	empress	priest	priestess
father	mother	prince	princess
father-in-law	mother-in-law	proprietor	proprietress
fiance	fiancee	salesman	salesgirl
friar	nun	shepherd	shepherdess
gentleman	lady	sir	madam
god	goddess	son	daughter
godfather	godmother	son-in-law	daughter-in-law
grandfather	grandmother	stepfather	stepmother
headmaster	headmistress	steward	stewardess
heir	heiress	tutor	governess
hero	heroine	waitor	waitress
host	hostess	widower	widow
husband	wife	wizard	witch
instructor	instructress		

2. Animals

bear	she-bear	bullock	heifer
billy-goat	nanny-goat	cock	hen
boar	sow	cock-sparrow	hen-sparrow
buck	doe	colt	filly
bull	cow	dog	bitch

Masculine	*Feminine*	*Masculine*	*Feminine*
drake	duck	peacock	peahen
fox	vixen	ram	ewe
gander	goose	stallion	mare
he-goat	she-goat	steer	heifer
leopard	leopardess	tiger	tigress
lion	lioness	tom-cat	tabby-cat

Exercise

Examples:	actor	M	actress
	bride	F	bridegroom
	widow	F	widower
	horse	M	mare

Follow the pattern given above. If the masculine is given, write M and give the feminine form. If the feminine is given, write F and give its masculine form.

1. colt ____ _____
2. boar ____ _____
3. nephew ____ _____
4. baron ____ _____
5. witch ____ _____
6. duck ____ _____
7. bee ____ _____
8. vixen ____ _____
9. lass ____ _____
10. bachelor ____ _____
11. heifer ____ _____
12. earl ____ _____
13. friar ____ _____
14. gander ____ _____
15. executor ____ _____
16. duke ____ _____
17. administrator ____ _____
18. prosecutor ____ _____
19. dairy-man ____ _____
20. doe ____ _____

Answers: 1. (M): filly 2. (M): sow 3. (M): niece 4. (M): baroness 5. (F): wizard 6. (F): drake 7. (F): drone 8. (F): fox 9. (F):lad 10. (M): spinster 11. (F): bullock 12. (M): countess 13.(M): nun 14. (M): goose 15. (M): executrix 16. (M): duchess 17. (M): administratix 18. (M): prosecutrix 19. (M): dairy-maid 20. (F): buck

16. YOUNG ONES

The young ones, the babes are the ones every married couple yearns for. No wonder, 50000 babies (hold your breath) are born each minute in India alone. A staggering figure! Birds, insects and animals, too, do not lag behind.

You have, in English, separate words for the young ones of human beings, birds, insects, fish and animals.

1. Animals

Adult	*Young one*	*Adult*	*Young one*
bear	cub	hen	chicken, chick
cat	kitten	horse	colt, filly, foal
cow	calf	leopard	cub
deer	fawn	lion	whelp
dog	puppy	ram	lamb
fox	cub	sheep	lamb
frog	tadpole	stag	fawn
goat	kid	tiger	cub
hare	leveret	wolf	cub

2. Birds, Fish and Insects

ant	grub	housefly	maggot
bee	grub	mosquito	wriggler, larva
butterfly	caterpillar	moth	caterpillar
cockroach	nymph	owl	owlet
duck	duckling	salmon	parr
eagle	eaglet	swan	cygnet
goose	gosling	trout	fry

17. WORDS DENOTING MOVEMENT, PLACES AND HOMES

Human beings keep on moving at varying paces, each in accordance with his or her physical condition, natural abilities and environmental congeniality. Some jog along; others come prancing; and yet others evince heedless hurry.

Whether it is a farmer *plodding* his weary way homeward, or a king *striding* on majestically, or a queen *treading* a stately measure, or a happy-go-lucky guy *strolling* on the beach, or a straggling drunkard *staggering*, or an old man *tottering* his way or a swell-head *strutting*—they all weave a pattern that adds colour and beauty to life.

Different birds and animals have also developed their own manner of movement. There are more specific and descriptive verbs signifying their particular way of movement. Thus a bird *flies* but an owl *flit* horses *gallop* but donkeys *trot*.

But birds, animals and human beings can't keep on moving all the time. There is such a thing as driving wind and rain, fierce storm and cyclone. All manifestations of Nature's wrath. Their natural instinct for preservation makes these birds, animals and human beings hunt for a shelter and, if possible, a cosy bed for bodily comfort. And thus the bees live in a *hive*, birds in a *nest*, sheep in a *pen*, and tigers in a *lair*. And men? The answer comes pat: a hermit lives in a *hermitage*, a monk in a *monastry*, a convict in a *prison*, and a lunatic in an *asylum*. And so on.

There are, then, places—all handiwork of Man—where things are made where persons, things or animals, etc., are kept, grown, exhibited and stored.

Here is a list of words denoting movement, places and homes.

1. Movement

(a) *Birds*

A bird *flies*.
A cock *struts*.
A crow *flies*.
A duck *waddles*.
An eagle *swoops*.
A lark *soars*.
An owl *flits*.
A sparrow *flits*.
A turkey *struts*.
A vulture *flaps*, *rises* or *hobbles*.

(b) *Animals*

A bear *lumbers*.
A deer *bounds*.
A donkey *trots*.
An elephant *ambles*.
A horse *gallops*, *trots*.
A hound *bounds*.
A lamb *frisks*.
A lion *prowls*.
A mouse *scampers*.
A rabbit *leaps*.
A wolf *lopes*.

(c) *Persons*

A person

hobbles, dawdles, limps, lumbers, meanders, marches, plods, shuffles, paces, slouches, staggers, strides, strolls, waddles, walks.

Walking Verbs

We are not tagged to the calendar, tethered to the post, stuck up at just one place. Every single moment, all the time, we rather step out of our house to s[illegible] what the world is like. We do move from place to place. In search of job. In pursuit of an ideal. In quest of peace.

We walk at varying paces and in a variety of ways. As for example, a baby *toddles*, an idler *slouches*, a soldier *marches*, and a farmer, after day's toil, *plods* his weary way home. And so on.

You will find here two sets of verbs: walking verbs and verbs of movement.

Walking Verb	*Definition*
1. To *toddle*	to walk with short tottering steps (as does a baby)
2. To *limp*	to walk as if lame
3. To *strut*	to walk in an affected manner/proudly
4. To *stride*	to walk with long steps
5. To *stroll*	to walk in a quiet, unhurried way
6. To *slouch*	to walk in a lazy, tired way
7. To *stagger*	to walk or move unsteadily (from weakness, a heavy burden, drunkenness, etc.)
8. To *plod*	to walk slowly and wearily
9. To *dawdle*	to walk slowly, wasting time
10. To *lumber*	to move in a heavy, clumsy, noisy way
11. To *march*	to walk smartly in steps
12. To *meander*	to follow a winding path, moving slowly and gently (e.g., *meandering* river)

Now look at these words of movement.

1. *Sweep*	come down with a rush (like the bird of prey)
2. *Skim*	glide over with an occasional touch
3. *Scamper*	run quickly like a frightened animal
4. *Sprint*	run a short distance with speed
5. *Bolt*	run away quickly, dart off
6. *Bound*	move or run in jumping movements
7. *Flash*	move so swiftly as to be visible for a short time
8. *Flit*	fly or move lightly and quickly (Bees flit from flower to flower.)
9. *Hasten*	move with speed
10. *Run*	move with quick steps (faster than walking)
11. *Rush*	go with speed

Look at these, too.

1.	*Tremor*	shaking movement of the ground
2.	*Shiver*	movement of body due to cold
3.	*Vibrate*	regular movement backwards and forwards
4.	*Oscillate*	regular movement of a suspended thing from one point to another
5.	*Flicker*	movement of the flame

(e) *Specific movement words*

A baby *toddles.*
A king *strides* on.
A drunkard *staggers.*
A tired traveller *plods.*
A lame person *limps* or *hobbles.*
A conceited fellow *struts.*

(f) *Miscellaneous*

The nose *blows.*
The earth *rotates.*
The watch *ticks.*
The wound *bleeds.*
The train *runs.*
The wind *blows.*
Water *flows.*
The fan *whirls.*
Arrows *shoot.*
The machine *works.*

Exercise

1. *A bird FLIES. What do the following do?*

(a) A lark	.....	(f) A lion	.....
(b) A duck	.....	(g) A deer	.....
(c) A mouse	.....	(h) An eagle	.....
(d) A horse	.....	(i) An elephant	.....
(e) A lamb	.....	(j) A sparrow	.....

Answers: (a) soars (b) waddles (c) scampers (d) gallops (e) frisks (f) prowls (g) bounds (h) swoops (i) ambles (i) flits

2. Places

(a) *Where things are made*

Beer in a *brewery*
Films in a *studio*
Goods of all kinds in a *factory*
Leather in a *tannery*
Money (coins) in a *mint*
Alcoholic drinks in a *distillery*
Bread, cakes in a *bakery*
Flour or paper in a *mill*
Iron implements in a *smithy*
Milk products in a *dairy*
Ships in a *dockyard*

(b) *Where games are played*

Badminton on a *court*
Billiards on a cloth-covered table (a *billiard table*)
Cricket on a *pitch*
Football on a *ground, field*
Running on a *track, course*
Tennis on a *court*
Wrestling in an *arena*
Boxing in a *ring*
Chess on a *chessboard*
Hockey on a *ground, field, astroturf*
Skating in a *rink*
Water polo in a *swimming pool*

(c) *Where persons, things, animals etc., are kept, grown, exhibited, stored*

Aeroplanes are kept in a *hangar*.
Athletic competitions are held in a *stadium*.
Athletic exercises are performed in a *gymnasium*.
Astronomical observations are made in an *observatory*.
Bees are kept in an *apiary*.
Birds are kept in a cage, an *aviary*.
Birds and animals are exhibited in a *zoo*.
Clothes are kept in a *wardrobe*.
Clothes or linen are washed and ironed in a *laundry*.
Dead bodies are buried in a *cemetery*.
Dead bodies are cremated in a *crematorium*.
Fishes are kept in an *aquarium*.
Fruit trees are grown in an *orchard*.
Gas is stored in a *cylinder*.
Goods are stored in a *depot*.
Grains are stored in a *granary*.
Grapes are grown in a *vineyard*.
Guns are kept in an *armoury*.
Historical relics or curios are kept in a *museum*.
Luggage at a railway station is kept in a *cloak-room*.
Medicines are compounded in a *dispensary*.
Motor cars are kept in a *garage*.
Plates, dishes, pots and other cooking utensils are washed in a *scullery*.
Scientific experiments are conducted in a *laboratory*.
Sick people are treated in a *hospital*.
Ships are built or repaired in a *dock*.
Ships are loaded or unloaded in a *quay*.
Water is collected and stored in a *reservoir*.
Wild animals are kept in a *menagerie, zoo*.
Wine and other provisions are stored (underground) in a *cellar*.
Young plants grow in a *nursery*.

3. Homes

(a) *Persons*

An Arab in a *dowar*
A convict in a *prison*
An Eskimo in an *igloo*
A gypsy in a *caravan*
A hermit in a *hermitage*
A king or a queen in a *palace*
A knight in a *mansion*
A lumberman in a *log cabin*
A lunatic in an *asylum*
A monk in a *monastery*
A nobleman in a *castle*
A nun in a *convent, nunnery*
A parson in a *parsonage*
A peasant in a *cottage*
A priest in a *presbytery*
A prisoner in a *cell, jail*
A Red Indian in a *wigwam, tepee*
A soldier in *barracks, camp*
A Swiss in a *chalet*
A vagrant on the *pavement*
A Zulu in a *kraal*

(b) *Creatures*

Bees in a *hive*
A bird in a *nest*
A cow in a *byre, pen*
A dog in a *kennel*
An eagle in an *eyrie*
A fox in a *hole*
A fowl in a *coop*
A hare in a *burrow*
A horse in a *stable*
A lion in a *den*
A mouse in a *hole*
An owl in a *barn*, on a *tree*
A pig in a *sty*
A pigeon in a *dove-cote*
A rabbit (tame) in a *hutch*
A rabbit (wild) in a *burrow, warren*
A sheep in a *pen, fold*
A spider in a *web*
A squirrel in a *drey*
A tiger in a *lair*
A wasp in a *nest*
Wild animals in *den, lair*

Exercise

I. ***Complete the following after the model sentence:***

Model sentence: **A peasant lives in a *cottage*.**

1. A nun lives in a .....
2. A lunatic lives in an .....
3. A hermit lives in a .....
4. A parson lives in a .....
5. A convict lives in a .....
6. A mouse lives in a .....
7. A dog lives in a .....
8. A horse lives in a .....
9. A pigeon lives in a .....
10. A pig lives in a .....

Answers: 1. convent 2. asylum 3. hermitage 4. parsonage 5. prison 6. hole 7. kennel 8. stable 9. dove-cote 10. sty

II. *Complete the following table:*

Bird/Animal	*Movement*	*Cry*	*Home*
1. Horse	gallops	neighs	stable
2. Lion	prowls	.....	.....
3. Dog	.....	barks	.....
4. Cow	ambles	lows	.....
5. Eagle	.....	screams	eyrie

Answers: 2. roars, den 3. runs, kennel 4. pen 5. swoops

III. *Choose the number of the word which best expresses the italicized word.*

Example: Auditorium
(1) workshop (2) assembly room (2)
(3) pantry (4) hallway .....

a. *Reformatory*
(1) a place where books are bound
(2) a place where valuables can be deposited
(3) a place where the wrongdoer is reformed
(4) a place where idols are kept .....

b. *Dormitory*
(1) a bungalow
(2) a building in a college where students sleep
(3) a place where grains are stored
(4) a workshop .....

c. *Laundry*
(1) a wardrobe
(2) an underground room for storing wine
(3) a place where washing is done
(4) a burial ground .....

d. *Quarry*
(1) a room where one can wash hands and face
(2) a large room for social dancing
(3) a public house where travellers may stay
(4) a place where stone, slate etc. is obtained for building, road-making etc. .....

e. *Reservoir*
(1) a reservicing plant
(2) a place where water is stored
(3) a seaport
(4) a place where whisky is distilled .....

f. *Stadium*
(1) enclosed area of land for games, athletic competitions etc.
(2) a place where books are bound
(3) a bungalow
(4) a reading room .....

g. *Bindery*
(1) a place where books are bound
(2) a burial ground
(3) public house where travellers may stay
(4) a place where workers are employed to make goods .....

Answ a. (3) b. (2) c. (3) d. (4) e. (2) f. (1) g. (1)

18. WORDS DENOTING VARIOUS SOUNDS

Man has the unique distinction of being the only animal capable of producing articulate sounds to convey ideas in the form of speech. But many animals can produce characteristic sounds to signify a mood or convey a purpose. The so called "dumb" animals are, therefore, not really dumb, tongue-tied, but have a language of their own ! Most of the animals produce various kinds of sounds, expressing varied moods. Then there are the birds noted for their melodious voices. The world would definitely be a poorer place to live in, without the sweet and sonorous songs of the cuckoo and the nightingale.

Your ears are surely attuned to the *cawing* of rooks, *mewing* of cats, *croaking* of frogs, *cackling* of geese, *pattering* of rain, *lapping* of water, and *jingling* of coins.

A careful study of the words denoting different sounds will help you, in no small measure, in exactitude of expression, descriptive composition, and will be a positive help in making the sound echo the sense.

1. *Cries of Animals, Birds and Insects*

(a) *Animals*

Apes *gibber*
Asses *bray*
Bulls (Oxen) *bellow*
Calves *low*
Camels *grunt*
Cats *mew*, *purr*, *caterwaul* (when they quarrel)
Cattle *low*
Cows *low*, *moo*
Crocodiles *grunt*
Dogs *bark* (at somebody), *yelp* or *whine*, (in pain), *snarl* or *growl* (in anger), *bay* (at the moon), *howl* (in distress)
Donkeys *bray*
Elephants *trumpet*
Foxes *yelp*, *bark*
Frogs *croak*
Goats *bleat*
Hogs *grunt*

Horses *neigh, snort, whinny*
Hounds *bay*
Hyenas *laugh*
Jackals *howl*
Kittens *mew*
Lambs *bleat*
Lions *roar*
Mice *squeak*
Monkeys *chatter, gibber*
Oxen *low, bellow*
Pigs *grunt, squeak*
Puppies *yelp*
Rabbits *squeak*
Serpents *hiss*
Sheep *bleat*
Snakes *hiss*
Tigers *growl, roar*
Wolves *howl, yelp*

(b) *Birds*

Birds *twitter, chirp, carol, sing, warble, chirrup*
Cocks *crow*
Crows *caw*
Cuckoos *coo*
Doves *coo*
Ducks *quack*
Eagles *scream*
Geese *cackle, gobble, hiss* (in anger)
Hawks *scream*
Hens *cackle, cluck, chuckle*
Kites *scream*
Larks *sing, warble*
Magpies *chatter*
Nightingales *sing, warble*
Owls *hoot, screech, scream*
Parrots *screech, chatter, talk*
Pea-fowls *scream*
Pigeons *coo*
Ravens *croak*
Rooks *caw*
Sea-gulls *scream*
Sparrows *chirp, twitter*
Squirrels *squeak*
Swallows *twitter*
Swans *cry*
Thrushes *whistle*
Turkeys *gobble*
Vultures *scream*

(c) *Insects*

Bees *hum, buzz, murmur*
Beetles *drone*
Crickets *chirp*
Flies *buzz*

2. Miscellaneous Sounds

(A)

the *babbling* of a brook
the *beat* of a drum
the *blaring* of loudspeaker, trumpet
the *booming* of cannons, guns
the *buzz* of a telephone, conversation
the *chiming* of bells, clock
the *churning* of sea water
the *clanging* of arms
the *clangour* of a bell, a hammer, a trumpet
the *clanking* of chains
the *clatter* of hoofs, plates, spoons, knives
the *clicking* of knitting needles

the *clinking* of coins, sword
the *crack* of a whip
the *crackling* of fire, dry leaves, wood
the *crash* of shells
the *crinkling* of paper
the *gnashing* of teeth
the *gong* of bells
the *grating* of machines
the *gurgling* of water
the *hissing* of steam
the *jingling* of coins
the *lapping* of water, waves
the *pattering* of rain
the *peal* of church bells, thunder, laughter
the *popping* of corks
the *prattling* of a brook
the *purring* of motor cars
the *rattling* of wheels, cart, carriage
the *rippling* of water, rain
the *roaring* of thunder, cannon, waves, laughter
the *rumbling* of heavy vehicles, cloud
the *rustling* of leaves, clothes, wind, paper
the *shuffling* of feet
the *sighing* of breeze
the *slam* of a door
the *splashing* of water, oars
the *swishing* of cane, ladies' skirts
the *tapping* at the bolted door
the *thudding* of cannons, coconuts
the *thundering* of clouds
the *tick* of a clock
the *tinkling* of bracelets, glasses
the *tolling* of bells
the *tooting* of a horn
the *twanging* of bowstrings
the *whirring* of an aeroplane, wings, computers
the *whistling* of wind
the *whizzing* of arrows, motor cars
the *zooming* of aeroplanes

(B)

Arms *clang*
Babies *lisp*
Bells *ring, chime, peal, jingle, tinkle, toll*
Brakes *screech, rasp*
Bugles *blow*
Bullets *whizz*
Chains *clank*
Coins *jingle, tinkle*
Doors *creak*
Drums *beat*
Footsteps *sound*
Guns *boom, explode, roar*
Hoofs *clatter*
Keys *jingle*
Leaves *rustle*
Railway engines *hoot, whistle, roar*
Rain *patters*
Reeds *whisper*
Shoes *creak*
Silk *rustles*
Steel *clinks*
Streams *babble*
Teeth *chatter*
Thunder *roars, rumbles, rolls*
Trumpets *blare*
Water *ripples*
Wind *whistles, sighs*

Exercises

I. *Write appropriate verbs denoting sound that go with these nouns:*

1. Drums	.....	6. Chains	.....
2. Teeth	.....	7. Coins	.....
3. Steel	.....	8. Guns	.....
4. Rain	.....	9. Doors	.....
5. Leaves	.....	10. Silk	.....

KEY: 1. beat 2. chatter 3. clinks 4. patters 5. rustle 6. clank 7. jingle 8. boom 9. creak 10. rustles

II. *Select the appropriate verbs that go with these nouns:*

1. The loudspeaker .....
   (a) *whistles* (b) *blares* (c) *coos*
2. The bell .....
   (a) *tolls* (b) *creaks* (c) *jingles*
3. The wheels .....
   (a) *chime* (b) *tinkle* (c) *rattle*
4. The leaves .....
   (a) *rustle* (b) *clink* (c) *ripple*
5. The bracelets .....
   (a) *clatter* (b) *tinkle* (c) *creak*

Answers: 1-(b) 2-(a) 3-(c) 4-(a) 5-(b)

III. ***Match the words in group (A) with the correct sound given in group (B)***

A	B
1. leaves	a. rumbles
2. plates	b. rustle
3. steam	c. ticks
4. clock	d. hisses
5. thunder	e. clatter
6. bells	f. tinkle

Answers: 1. b 2. e 3. d 4. c 5. a 6. f

19. NATION AND NATIONALITY
(Nationality Words)

The world we live in is no single entity. It is a group of countries, an amalgam of various races and climes. Each country has its own cultural and social ethos, historical background and geographical boundaries.

Some of these countries are independent and some dependent. Notwithstanding their political state and physical distance, they are now closer to one another than ever before.

There are specific words, in English, for each country, its inhabitants and its language. We have to study such words under the following heads:

(a) the name of the country : *France, India, Spain*
(b) person from the country : *a Frenchman, an Indian, a Spaniard*
(c) nation (plural expression): *the French, the Indians, the Spanish*
(d) adjective : *French* costume, *Scottish* beer, *Spanish* armada

If and when you study *nationality words*, you must bear in mind the following points

- All nationality words—adjectives and nouns—begin with capital letters.
- The name of the language is usually the same as the adjective e.g.,

  Do you speak *Spanish*? Have you heard about the *Spanish* armada ?

- Words for the *person* ending in *–ese*, and *Swiss*, remain unchanged in the plural.

  The *Swiss* have won the battle.
  I know many *Chinese*.

- Some countries have different words for the *adjective* and the *person* as for example, *Swedish* (Adjective) and *Swede* (Person)

  Have you seen *Swedish* architecture?
  Your father is a *Swede*, isn't he?

Here are some examples of nationality words.

(1)

Country	*Person*	*Nation*	*Adjective*
Belgium	a Belgian	the Belgians	Belgian
Bulgaria	a Bulgarian	the Bulgarians	Bulgarian
Germany	a German	the Germans	German
Italy	an Italian	the Italians	Italian
Mexico	a Mexican	the Mexicans	Mexican
Morocco	a Moroccan	the Moroccans	Moroccan
Nigeria	a Nigerian	the Nigerians	Nigerian
Norway	a Norwegian	the Norwegians	Norwegian
Russia	a Russian	the Russians	Russian
USA	an American	the Americans	American
Czechoslovakia	a Czech	the Czechs	Czech
Greece	a Greek	the Greeks	Greek
Thailand	a Thai	the Thais	Thai

Country	*Person*	*Nation*	*Adjective*
Burma	a Burmese	the Burmese	Burmese
China	a Chinese	the Chinese	Chinese
Guyana	a Guyanese	the Guyanese	Guyanese
Japan	a Japanese	the Japanese	Japanese
Lebanon	a Lebanese	the Lebanese	Lebanese
Portugal	a Portuguese	the Portuguese	Portuguese
Switzerland	a Swiss	the Swiss	Swiss

(2)

Britain	a Briton/Britisher	the British	British
Denmark	a Dane	the Danes	Danish
England	an Englishman/ Englishwoman	the English	English
Finland	a Finn	the Finns	Finnish
France	a Frenchman/ Frenchwoman	the French	French
Holland/the Netherlands	a Dutchman/ Dutchwoman	the Dutch	Dutch
Ireland	an Irishman/ Irishwoman	the Irish	Irish
Poland	a Pole	the Poles	Polish
Scotland	a Scot	the Scots	Scottish
Spain	a Spaniard	the Spanish	Spanish
Sweden	a Swede	the Swede	Swedish
Turkey	a Turk	the Turks	Turkish
Wales	a Welshman/ Welshwoman	the Welsh	Welsh

Exercise

Fill in the blanks under each heading. The first one has been done for you to act as a model.

country	*adjective*	*person*	*nation*
Poland	Polish	a Pole	the Poles
Sweden	.....	.....	.....
Finland	.....	.....	.....
Holland	.....	.....	.....
Spain	.....	.....	.....
Greece	.....	.....	.....
France	.....	.....	.....
Italy	.....	.....	.....

20. PLURAL FORMS OF CERTAIN NOUNS

When you speak of *one* thing, the noun is singular. And when you refer to *two* or more things, the noun is plural.

• Most nouns form their plural by adding *-s*.

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
boy	boys	chair	chairs
hand	hands	face	faces
packet	packets		

• If the singular noun ends in *s*, *ch*, *sh*, *x*, *or z*, add *-es*.

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
bus	buses	box	boxes
torch	torches	buzz	buzzes
brush	brushes		

• Some singular nouns ending in *y* make plurals by changing the *y* into *-ies*.

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
baby	babies	party	parties
lady	ladies	story	stories

• If the singular noun ends in *f* or *fe*, we generally change the *f* or *fe* into *ves*.

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
calf	calves	life	lives
leaf	leaves	self	selves
loaf	loaves	shelf	shelves
thief	thieves	sheaf	sheaves
wife	wives	wolf	wolves

But we say roof—roofs; chief—chiefs; safe—safes; belief—beliefs, handkerchief—handkerchiefs; cliff—cliffs.

• Some nouns ending in *o* have plurals in *-es*.

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
echo	echoes	potato	potatoes
hero	heroes	tomato	tomatoes
mosquito	mosquitoes		

• Some plurals are irregular.

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
foot	feet	goose	geese
child	children	tooth	teeth
mouse	mice		

- Some nouns do not change in the plural.

  deer, grouse, sheep, swine, shad

The following is the list of the plural form of some of the problem words:

Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
addendum	addenda	forum	forums, fora
alga	algae	fresco	frescoes
alumnus	alumni	fulcrum	fulcrums, fulcra
analysis	analyses	fungus	fungi
antenna	antennae	genesis	geneses
apex	apexes, apices	genius	geniuses
appendix	appendices (books, theses, etc.)	genus	genera
	appendixes (in anatomy)	half	halves
		hoof	hooves, hoofs
		hypothesis	hypotheses
aquarium	aquaria, aquariums	impetus	impetuses
axis	axes	index	indexes (to books, theses, etc.) indices (in Math.)
bacillus	bacilli		
bacterium	bacteria		
bamboo	bamboos	kilo	kilos
basis	bases	knife	knives
beau	beaux	lacuna	lacunae, lacunas
bonus	bonuses	larva	larvae
cactus	cacti	maestro	maestros, maestri
corps	corps	matrix	matrices
corrigendum	corrigenda	maximum	maxima
crematorium	crematoria	medium	media
crisis	crises	memorandum	memoranda
criterion	criteria	menu	menus
crux	cruces	minimum	minima
curio	curios	momentum	momenta, momentums
datum	data		
desideratum	desiderata	mother-in-law	mothers-in-law
dictum	dicta	narcissus	narcissi, narcissuses
dynamo	dynamos		
emporium	emporia	nebula	nebulae
erratum	errata	nucleus	nuclei
facsimile	facsimiles	oasis	oases
focus	focuses, foci (in scientific context)	phenomenon	phenomena
		plateau	plateaux, plateaus
formula	formulae, formulas	prospectus	prospectuses

Singular	*Plural*
quiz	quizzes
quorum	quorums
quota	quotas
radio	radios
radius	radii
sanatorium	sanatoria, sanatoriums
serf	serfs
series	series
serum	sera
sheaf	sheaves
solo	solos
species	species
spectrum	spectra
sphinx	sphinxes
stadium	stadiums, stadia
stimulus	stimuli
stratum	strata
substratum	substrata

Singular	*Plural*
syllabus	syllabuses, syllabi
symposium	symposia
tableau	tableaux
terminus	termini, terminuses
thesis	theses
tornado	tornadoes
torpedo	torpedoes
trauma	traumata, traumas
ultimatum	ultimatums, ultimata
vacuum	vacuums, vacua (in scientific context)
vertebra	vertebrae
veto	vetoes
virtuoso	virtuosi
virus	viruses
vista	vistas
volcano	volcanoes
vortex	vortices, vortexes

Exercise

Singular or Plural?

Examples:	data	P	datum
	bacteria	P	bacterium
	analysis	S	analyses
	appendix	S	appendices
	criteria	P	criterion.

In the light of the above examples you are to write P if the word given is plural, and then write its singular. If the singular is given, write S and give the plural.

1. axis — _____
2. crisis — _____
3. bacilli — _____
4. erratum — _____
5. species — _____
6. thesis — _____
7. alumni — _____
8. dictum — _____
9. focus — _____

10. formula — _____
11. genius — _____
12. media — _____
13. strata — _____
14. memoranda — _____
15. agenda — _____

Answers: 1. (S) axes 2. (S): crises 3. (P) bacillus 4. (S) errata 5. (S): species 6. (S): theses 7. (P): alumnus 8. (S): dicta 9.(S): foci 10. (S): formulae 11. (S): genii 12. (P): medium 13. (P): stratum 14. (P): memorandum 15. (P): agendum

21. THEY GO IN PAIRS

In idiomatic phrases there are certain words that always go in pairs, as for example, ***kith and kin, root and branch***. The right words are to be placed in the right order. You just can't alter the order of words. It will be silly of you if you say, ***kin and kith***, or *branch and root*.

Here is a list of words that generally go in pairs:

bag and baggage
black and white
black and blue
boys and girls
bread and butter
carrots and radishes
cats and dogs
cups and saucers
dark and dreary
doctors and nurses
doors and windows
duke and duchess
dull and drab
East and West
fair and square
far and wide
fat and flabby
friends and foes
gods and goddesses
gold and silver
hale and hearty
heart and soul
hearth and home
here and there
high and low
horse and carriage
hot and cold
hue and cry
ins and outs
joys and sorrows
knives and forks
ladies and gentlemen
law and order
lean and thin
loaves and fishes
lock and key
men and women
part and parcel
prince and princess
questions and answers
root and branch
rack and ruin
slow and steady
sons and daughters
spick and span
stout and strong
sum and substance
tooth and nail
up and down
ups and downs
weal and woe

Exercise

These words make a pair: ***doors and windows****. Now fill in the gaps in each of the following to make suitable pairs.*

1 ..... and night
2. ..... and soul
3. ..... and ruin
4. ..... and ends
5. ..... and blue
6. The sun and the .....
7. Flesh and .....
8. Bread and .....
9. Bag and .....
10. Ups and .....

Answers: 1. Day 2. Heart 3. Rack 4. Odds 5. Black 6. moon 7. blood 8. butter 9. baggage 10. downs

22. BITS AND PIECES OF THINGS

In English there are many words to talk about a piece of something. The substance may be solid (a *piece* of wood), may not be solid (a *drop* of wine), may be solid but quite thin (a *slice* of bread), or solid but small (a *grain* of salt), or solid but not so small (a *block* of stone).

Here is a list of such words. It will let you know what substances these words refer to.

a *bar* of chocolate/soap
a *bit* of bread/paper/clay/wood, etc.
a *block* of stone/wood
a *chip/flake/splinter/sliver* of stone/wood
a *chunk/hunk* of bread/meat
a *clod* of earth
a *clot* of blood
a *crumb* of bread/cake
a *dash/squirt/squeeze* of lemon juice/oil
a *drip* of water
a *drop* of water/wine/oil
an *ear* of corn
a *flake* of snow
a *fragment* of matter
a *grain/pinch* of salt
a *grain* of sand
a *lump* of coal/earth/clay
a *patch* of cloud/grass
a *piece* of bread/paper/wood/clay, etc.
a *puff/wisp* of smoke
a *rasher* of bacon
a *ray* of light
a *scrap* of cloth/paper
a *scrap/shred* of paper/cloth
a *segment* of orange
a *shred* of cloth/paper
a *slab* of stone/cheese
a *slice* of bread/cake
a *splinter/sliver* of glass
a *square* of chocolate
a *strip* of land/lawn/sandy beach
a *tablet* of stone
a *tract* of land
a *wad* of cotton

Exercise

Complete the following:

Example: a *scrap* of paper; a *ray* of hope

1. a ..... of wood
2. a ..... of cloud
3. a ..... of stone
4. a ..... of blood
5. a ..... of water
6. a ..... of sand
7. a ..... of matter
8. a ..... of snow
9. a ..... of cotton
10. an ..... of corn

Answers: 1. block 2. patch or speck 3. tablet or block 4. clot 5. drop 6. grain 7. fragment 8. flake 9. wad 10. ear

23. DIMINUTIVES

Diminutives are such words that denote small specimen of big things. They are 'nouns that express smallness, either actual or imputed, in token of affection or contempt'. The chief suffixes forming *diminutives* are: *et* (coron*et*) *let* (stream*let*) *en* (chick*en*) *ock* (hill*ock*) *ling* (sap*ling*) *ing* (far-th*ing*).

The list of commonly used *diminutives* given below will be of immense help to you in the choice of right words.

Word	*Diminutives*	*Word*	*Diminutives*
animal	*animalcule*	man	*manikin*
ankle	*anklet*	mouth	*muzzle*
ball	*ballot*	nave	*navel*
bird	*birdie*	nest	*nestling*
book	*booklet*	nose	*nozzle*
brook	*brooklet*	part	*particle*
car	*chariot*	pill	*pillow*
cigar	*cigarette*	poet	*poetaster*
city	*citadel*	puss	*pussy*
corn	*kernel*	ring	*ringlet*
crown	*coronet*	river	*rivulet*
dame	*damsel*	room	*roomette*
dear	*darling*	rose	*rosette*
drop	*droplet*	sack	*satchel*
eye	*eyelet*	scythe	*sickle*
flower	*floweret, floret*	seed	*seedling*
globe	*globule*	shade	*shadow*
hill	*hillock*	star	*asterisk*
home	*hamlet*	statue	*statuette*
lance	*lancet*	stream	*streamlet*
lock	*locket*	table	*tablet*

Word	*Diminutives*	*Word*	*Diminutives*
top	*tip*	village	*hamlet*
tower	*turret*	wagon	*wagonette*
umbrella	*parasol*	weak	*weakling*

Look at these words, too:

reticule	a small net hand bag
ridicule	small, mocking laughter
molecule	a tiny particle of matter
funicle	a small cord
fledgling	a baby bird; an inexperienced person
gosling	a baby goose
princeling	a prince of a small country
sapling	a very young tree; youth
morsel	a very small piece of food
globule	a small drop of a liquid or melted solid
infinitesimal	so small that it cannot be measured

Exercise

Write the diminutives of the following:

	Word	*Diminutive*		*Word*	*Diminutive*
1.	book	.....	6.	lamb	.....
2.	bull	.....	7.	river	.....
3.	star	.....	8.	tower	.....
4.	home	.....	9.	crown	.....
5.	man	.....	10.	ring	.....

Answers: 1. booklet 2. bullock 3. asterisk 4. hamlet 5. manikin 6. lambkin 7. rivulet 8. turret 9. coronet 10. ringlet

24. ANNIVERSARY

Anniversary, you know, is the yearly return of a date. It is an occasion to remember events or persons whose memory we cherish. It is a day which is an exact year or number of years after a particular event. When we say, the fortieth anniversary of our country's independence, we mean exactly forty years since it became independent.

Here are a few anniversary-words you would do well to remember:

semicentennial	50th anniversary
centennial	100th anniversary
sesquicentennial	150th anniversary
bicentennial	200th anniversary
tricentennial	300th anniversary
tetracentennial	400th anniversary

pentacentennial	500th anniversary
hexacentennial	600th anniversary

Look at these words, too. They denote the varying periodic recurrence of an event.

biennial	occurring once in two years
triennial	occurring once in three years
quadrennial	occurring once in four years
quinquennial	occurring once in five years
sexennial	occurring once in six years
septennial	occurring once in seven years
octennial	occurring once in eight years
decennial	occurring once in ten years

25. HOW OLD ARE YOU?

How time flies! It moves on and on like an overflowing river. Seconds turn into minute, minutes into hour, hours into day, days into week, weeks into month, months into year. And so on.

As years roll by, you show signs of the advancing age. You gradually step out of the period of childhood, enter into that of youth, adolescence, manhood and then old age. Yes, age begins to tell.

Look! how you tell your age.

I'm 15 years old.	I'm an *adolescent*.
I'm 60 to 69 years old,	I'm a *sexagenarian*.
I'm 70 to 79 years old.	I'm a *septuagenarian*.
I'm 80 to 89 years old.	I'm an *octogenarian*.
I'm 90 to 99 years old.	I'm a *nonagenarian*.
I'm 100 years old.	I'm a *centenarian*.

Exercise

Write the correct word next to its definition. The initial letter of the correct word is given.

1. **Occurring once in two years** B. .....
2. **Occurring once in three years** T. .....
3. **Occurring once in four years** Q. .....
4. **Occurring once in five years** Q. .....
5. **Occurring once in six years** S. .....
6. **Occurring once in seven years** S. .....
7. **Occurring once in eight years** O. .....
8. **Occurring once in ten years** D. .....

Answers: 1. Biennial 2. Triennial 3. Quadrennial 4. Quinquennial 5. Sexennial 6. Septennial 7. Octennial 8. Decennial

26. COMMONPLACE COMPARISONS

The English language abounds in striking similes in which one thing is likened to another in such a way as to clarify and enhance an image. As for example, *as* dead *as* a doornail, *as* blind *as* a bat and *as* cool *as* cucumber. The apt use of such comparative phrases imparts clarity and vividness to our expressions.

Here is a comprehensive list of comparative phrases of *as* .....*as* pattern:

(A)

As active as quicksilver
As ageless as the sun
As agile as a monkey, as a cat
As alike as two beans, as two peas
As ambitious as the devil, as Lady Macbeth
As arid as the sands of the Sahara
As bald as a billiard ball, as a coot, as an egg, as a badger
As bashful as a schoolgirl
As beautiful as a rainbow, as the sunset
As big as an elephant, as a whale
As black as a crow, as coal, as ebony, as jet, as pitch, as midnight, as a raven, as soot, as ink
As blind as a bat, as a mole, as a beetle
As blue as the indigo, as the sky
As boundless as the ocean
As bounteous as nature
As brave as Achilles, as a lion
As brief as a dream, as time, as a candle
As bright as a button, as day, as light, as a new pin, as silver
As brittle as glass
As busy as a bee
As cheap as dirt
As cheerful as a lark
As clear as crystal, as daylight, as noonday
As cold as charity, as a frog, as stone, as marble, as ice
As cool as a cucumber
As cosy as a bird's nest
As countless as the desert sands, as the stars
As crisp as new bank notes
As crooked as a corkscrew
As cross as two sticks
As cruel as death, as winter
As cunning as a fox
As dark as midnight, as a dungeon, as pitch
As dead as a doornail, as a herring, as mutton, as a dodo
As deaf as an adder, as a beetle, as a post
As dear as life
As deep as the ocean, as a well
As desolate as a tomb
As devoted as a faithful dog
As different as chalk from cheese
As dirty as ditch-water
As distant as the horizon
As dry as as a bone, as dust, as a mummy, as a stick
As dumb as a statue
As easy as ABC, as lying

As eloquent as Cicero
As elusive as quicksilver
As empty as space
As faithful as a dog
As fast as a hare, as light
As fickle as the weather
As ferocious as a lion
As fierce as a tiger
As firm as a rock, as steel, as faith
As fit as a fiddle
As flat as a billiard table, as a board, as a pancake
As free as the air, as a bird
As fresh as a daisy, as a rose, as dew
As gay as a lark
As gentle as a dove, as a lamb, as a fawn
As gloomy as night
As glorious as the sun
As good as gold
As graceful as a swan
As greedy as a dog, as a hog, as a wolf
As green as grass
As grey as smoke
As grim as death, as hell
As hard as flint, as marble, as granite, as nails
As harmless as a babe, as a dove
As heavy as lead, as sand
As helpless as a babe
As high as heaven, as the stars
As honest as the day
As hungry as a church mouse, as a wolf
As impatient as a lover
As industrious as an ant
As inevitable as death
As innocent as a babe, as a dove, as a lamp
As large as life
As light as a feather, as a butterfly, as air
As lively as a cricket
As mad as a hatter, as a March hare
As mean as a miser
As meek as a dove, as lamb
As mischievous as a kitten, as a monkey
As natural as life
As new as day
As obstinate as a mule
As old as the hills
As pale as death, as a ghost
As peaceful as sleep
As piercing as light
As plain as a pikestaff
As pretty as a picture
As progressive as time
As proud as a peacock
As punctual as clockwork
As pure as a lily
As red as blood, as crimson, as a rose, as fire, as scarlet
As regular as clockwork
As sacred as a shrine
As sharp as a needle, as a razor
As simple as ABC
As slippery as an eel, as a serpent
As slow as a snail
As sly as a fox
As smooth as butter, as oil, as velvet
As snug as a bug in a rug
As soft as butter, as fur, as silk, as wax, as wool
As solid as a rock
As solitary as a tomb

As sound as a bell
As spineless as a jelly fish
As spotless as snow
As steadfast as the sun
As steady as a rock
As stealthy as a cat
As straight as an arrow, as a lance
As stubborn as a mule
As superstitious as sailors
As sure as death, as fate
As sweet as honey, as sugar
As swift as an arrow, as thought, as lightning, as the wind
As talkative as a magpie
As tall as a maypole, as a steeple
As tender as a bud, as a lamb, as a chicken
As tough as leather, as nails
As transparent as glass
As ugly as a scarecrow
As uncertain as the weather
As unchangeable as the past
As vain as a peacock
As variable as the weather
As venomous as a snake
As wary as a fox
As watchful as a hawk, as a sentinel
As white as snow, as wool
As wily as a fox
As wise as Solomon

Exercise

1. *As hard as nails*
2. *As dry as dust*
3. *As fair as a rose*
4. *As green as grass*
5. *As sharp as razor*

That is the writer's way of telling us how something is. How would you complete the following?

a. As white as .....
b. As old as .....
c. As sweet as .....
d. As loud as.....
e. As light as .....
f. As dumb as a .....
g. As pure as a .....
h. As black as .....
i. As soft as.....
j. As red as .....

Answers: a-snow b-hills c-honey d-thunder e-feather f-statue g-lily h-coal i-wax j-blood

27. BRIEF INTERMISSION : PHOBIAS

is morbid dislike or an unreasonable dread or fear. The individual may realise its irrationality but nevertheless be unable to dispel it. When President Roosevelt in his First Inaugural Address said, "The only thing we have to fear is fear itself", there was a word for that–phobophobia.

Look at these morbid fears of various objects or things:

Acrophobia morbid fear of high places
Agorophobia morbid fear of large, open spaces

Anglophobia	morbid fear of Britain
Astrophobia	morbid fear of lightning, thunder, and storm
Bibliophobia	morbid fear of books
Chirophobia	morbid fear of hands
Claustrophobia	morbid fear of small, narrow, or enclosed place
Ergophobia	morbid fear (dislike) of work
Demophobia	morbid fear of crowds
Dendrophobia	morbid fear of trees
Francophobia	morbid fear of the French
Gynephobia	morbid fear of women
Hemophobia or Hematophobia or Hemeratophobia	morbid fear of the sight of blood
Hydrophobia	morbid fear of water
Lalophobia	morbid fear of speaking
Mysophobia	morbid fear of germs or contamination
Nyctophobia	morbid fear of darkness
Ochlophobia	morbid fear of crowds
Panophobia	morbid fear of everything in general
Photophobia	morbid fear of strong light
Podophobia	morbid fear of feet
Pedophobia	morbid fear of children
Hippophobia	morbid fear of horses
Peccatophobia	morbid fear of sinning or having sinned
Pathophobia	morbid fear of suffering or disease
Phonophobia	morbid fear of speaking aloud
Pyrophobia	morbid fear of fire
Russophobia	morbid fear of the Russians
Sitophobia	morbid fear of food
Syphilophobia	morbid fear of syphilis
Thanatophobia	morbid fear of death
Toxophobia	morbid fear of being poisoned
Trichophobia	morbid fear of hair
Xenophobia	morbid fear of strangers
Zoophobia	morbid fear of animals

28. LOVE ALL

It is easy to hate but healthy to love.

1. Lover of books	*Bibliophile*
2. Lover of children	*Paedophile*
3. Lover of animals	*Zoophile / Zoophilist*
4. Lover of trees	*Dendrophile*
5. Lover of hands	*Cheirophile*
6. Lover of feet	*Podophile*
7. Lover of horses	*Hippophile*
8. Lover of knowledge	*Bibliologist*
9. Lover of words	*Philologist*

10. Lover of nomadic life	*Nomads*
11. Lover of vegetables	*Vegetarian*
12. Lover of meat	*Carnivore*
13. Lover of human flesh	*Cannibal*
14. Lover of grandeur	*Megalomaniac*
15. Lover of war	*Warmonger*
16. Lover of peace	*Pacifist, Peace-loving*
17. Lover of democracy	*Democrat*
18. Lover of dictatorship	*Dictator*
19. Lover of mobocracy	*Mobocrat*
20. Lover of one's country	*Patriot*
21. Lover of good food	*Gourmet*
22. Lover of good taste in art, painting, etc.	*Connoiseur*
23. Lover of travelling round the world	*Globe-trotter*
24. Lover of God and religion	*Theist*
25. Lover of alcoholic drink	*Drunkard*
26. Lover of society	*Sociable*
27. Lover of money	*Mercenary*
28. Lover of sports and games	*Sports fan, Sportsman*
29. Lover of mankind	*Humanitarian, Philanthropist*
30. Lover of material things	*Materialist*
31. Lover of self	*Narcissist*

29. THE HYMN OF HATE

We are taught to fly in the air like a bird, and swim in the water like fish but how to like men we do not know.

1. Hater of women	*Misogynist*
2. Hater of mankind	*Misanthrope*
3. Hater of knowledge	*Misologist*
4. Hater of alcoholic drinks	*Teetotaller*
5. Hater of war	*Pacifist*
6. Hater of idol worship	*Iconoclast*
7. Hater of pomp and show	*Austere*
8. Hater of marriage	*Celebate, Misogamist*
9. Hater of worldly life	*Recluse*

30. GRAPHY WORDS

There are a number of words with the suffix 'graphy' tagged to them. They, by and large, refer to one or other kind of science or art. Here are a few you would love to know:

Autobiography	story of a person's life written by himself
Biography	story of a person's life written by someone else
Calligraphy	elegant handwriting
Chronography	a record of past time; history
Demography	study of births, deaths, diseases, etc., to show the condition of a community
Epistolography	the art of letter-writing
Geography	science of the earth's surface, physical features, divisions, climate, products, population etc.
Homography	method of spelling a word which is like another but with a different meaning
Lithography	process of printing from parts of a flat stone or sheet of zinc or aluminium that are prepared to receive a greasy ink
Microcosmography	a description of man as a microcosm
Orthography	writing with correct penmanship and spelling
Polygraphy	literary productiveness; writing a variety of subjects
Seismography	the study of earthquakes
Photography	art or process of taking photographs
Topography	description of the features, e.g., rivers, valleys, roads, of a place or district
Telegraphy	the technique of sending message by electrical signals
Videography	the recording of sound and vision, e.g., of television programmes by magnetic tape
Zeroxography	a scientific method of photostating

CHAPTER 3

Antonyms

Antonyms are words opposite in meaning. As for example, *hot* is the opposite of *cold*. At times there is more than one antonym of a word. It all depends on the shade of meaning it conveys in the given context. As for example there can be five different antonyms of ***light*** as:

1. Light (*pale-coloured*)	deep
2. Light (*below the correct weight*)	heavy
3. Light (*of books primarily for entertainment*)	serious
4. Light (*that which makes things visible*)	dark/ darkness
5. Light (*to light, to ignite*)	extinguish

There are three different ways of forming the negative of a word; as—

(a) By adding the prefix *dis, im, in, ir, un, il,* etc.

dis+belief = *dis*belief; *dis*+courage = *dis*courage; *im*+perfect = *im*perfect; *im*+mortal = *im*mortal; *in*+justice = *in*justice; *in*+audible = *in*audible; *ir*+regular = *ir*regular; *ir*+rational = *ir*rational; *un*+official = *un*official; *un*+moved = *un*moved; *il*+logical = *ill*ogical; *il*+literate= *ill*iterate.

Note: The words formed in this way are not always EXACT opposites. They may have a slightly different meaning.

(b) By interchanging the suffix *ful* and *less* of some words; as—

hope*ful*—hope*less*; care*less*—care*ful*; use*ful*—use*less*; thought*ful*—thought*less*; fruit*ful*—fruit*less*; cheer*ful*—cheer*less*; harm*ful*—harm*less*;taste*ful*—taste*less*; faith*less*—faith*ful*; power*less*—power*ful*; rest*ful*—rest*less*.

(c) By using a new word; as—

tragedy—comedy; smile—frown; beautiful—ugly; attraction— repulsion; rise—fall; illuminate—darken; nocturnal—diurnal; guest—host; ebb—flow.

There are quite a few idiomatic expressions having words opposite in meaning such as—*black* and *white*; *friends* and *foes*; *high* and *low*; *rich* and *poor*; *here* and *there*; *joys* and *sorrows*.

It would help you a lot if you have in your armoury, a good stock of words opposite in meaning.

Prefix	*Word*	*Antonym*
in	ability	= *in*ability
in	active	= *in*active
in	accurate	= *in*accurate
in	adequate	= *in*adequate
in	appropriate	= *in*appropriate
in	articulate	= *in*articulate
in	attentive	= *in*attentive
in	auspicious	= *in*auspicious
in	capable	= *in*capable
in	complete	= *in*complete
in	correct	= *in*correct
in	credible	= *in*credible
in	curable	= *in*curable
in	definite	= *in*definite
in	dependent	= *in*dependent
in	direct	= *in*direct
in	efficient	= *in*efficient
in	finite	= *in*finite
in	firm	= *in*firm
in	flexible	= *in*flexible
in	formal	= *in*formal
in	gratitude	= *in*gratitude
in	hospitable	= *in*hospitable
in	human	= *in*human
in	secure	= *in*secure
in	significance	= *in*significance
in	sincerity	= *in*sincerity
in	sufficient	= *in*sufficient
in	tangible	= *in*tangible
in	temperate	= *in*temperate
in	tolerable	= *in*tolerable
in	visible	= *in*visible
im	balance	= *im*balance
im	material	= *im*material
im	mature	= *im*mature
im	mobile	= *im*mobile
im	mobilize	= *im*mobilize
im	moderate	= *im*moderate

Prefix	*Word*	*Antonym*
im	modest	= *im*modest
im	moral	= *im*moral
im	movable	= *im*movable
im	pertinent	= *im*pertinent
im	polite	= *im*polite
im	possible	= *im*possible
im	practicable	= *im*practicable
im	probable	= *im*probable
im	proper	= *im*proper
dis	advantage	= *dis*advantage
dis	agree	= *dis*agree
dis	appear	= *dis*appear
dis	approve	= *dis*approve
dis	arm	= *dis*arm
dis	continue	= *dis*continue
dis	credit	= *dis*credit
dis	favour	= *dis*favour
dis	honour	= *dis*honour
dis	inherit	= *dis*inherit
dis	loyal	= *dis*loyal
dis	obedient	= *dis*obedient
dis	order	= *dis*order
dis	orderly	= *dis*orderly
dis	place	= *dis*place
dis	please	= *dis*please
dis	proportionate	= *dis*proportionate
dis	qualify	= *dis*qualify
dis	respect	= *dis*respect
dis	taste	= *dis*taste
dis	trust	= *dis*trust
un	able	= *un*able
un	accustomed	= *un*accustomed
un	affected	= *un*affected
un	armed	= *un*armed
un	avoidable	= *un*avoidable
un	certain	= *un*certain
un	chartered	= *un*chartered
un	common	= *un*common

Prefix	*Word*	*Antonym*
un	conventional	= *un*conventional
un	cover	= *un*cover
un	cultured	= *un*cultured
un	do	= *un*do
un	dress	= *un*dress
un	equal	= *un*equal
un	equivocal	= *un*equivocal
un	expected	= *un*expected
un	familiar	= *un*familiar
un	happy	= *un*happy
un	healthy	= *un*healthy
un	imaginative	= *un*imaginative
un	intentional	= *un*intentional
un	interesting	= *un*interesting
un	just	= *un*just
un	kind	= *un*kind
un	known	= *un*known
un	lawful	= *un*lawful
un	manly	= *un*manly
un	married	= *un*married
un	mask	= *un*mask
un	natural	= *un*natural
un	orthodox	= *un*orthodox
un	pack	= *un*pack
un	planned	= *un*planned
un	pleasant	= *un*pleasant
un	popular	= *un*popular
un	real	= *un*real
un	reliable	= *un*reliable
un	scrupulous	= *un*scrupulous
un	skilled	= *un*skilled
un	spoken	= *un*spoken
un	tie	= *un*tie
un	tutored	= *un*tutored
un	usual	= *un*usual
un	wholesome	= *un*wholesome
un	wind	= *un*wind
ir	refutable	= *ir*refutable
ir	relevant	= *ir*relevant

Prefix	*Word*	*Antonym*
ir	religious	= *ir*religious
ir	remediable	= *ir*remediable
ir	reparable	= *ir*reparable
ir	resolute	= *ir*resolute
ir	responsible	= *ir*responsible
ir	resistible	= *ir*resistible
ir	reverent	= *ir*reverent
ir	revocable	= *ir*revocable
il	legal	= *il*legal
il	legible	= *il*legible
il	legimitate	= *il*legitimate
il	literate	= *il*literate
il	literacy	= *il*literacy
il	liberal	= *il*liberal
de	centralize	= *de*centralize
de	increase	= *de*crease
de	inflate	= *de*flate
de	ascend	= *de*scend
non	aggression	= *non*aggression
non	aligned	= *non*aligned
non	cooperate	= *non*cooperate
non	commissioned (officer)	= *non*commissioned (officer)
non	conformist	= *non*conformist
non	contentious	= *non*contentious
non	flammable	= *non*flammable
non	interference	= *non*interference
non	payment	= *non*payment
non	poisonous	= *non*poisonous
non	political	= *non*political
non	resident	= *non*resident
non	religious	= *non*religious
non	sense	= *non*sense
non	smoker	= *non*smoker
non	taxable	= *non*taxable
non	vegetarian	= *non*vegetarian
non	violence	= *non*violence

Word	*Antonym*
above	below
abridge	amplify
absence	presence
absolute	conditional
absurd	rational
abundance	scarcity
accelerate	retard
accept	reject
accord	discord
acquit (v)	convict
active	passive, idle
adamant	yielding
addicted	averse
adopt	reject
adorn	disfigure, mar
advance (v)	retreat
adversity	prosperity
affluence	destitution
affirm	deny
afraid	unafraid, bold
agree	differ
alike	different
alive	dead
all	none
alleviate	aggravate
amateur	professional
ambiguous	clear
analysis	synthesis
ancient	modern
anger	forbearance
ancestor	descendant
appetite	distaste
appreciate	depreciate
arrest	release
arrogant	humble
arrival	departure
artificial	natural
ascend	descend
ascent	descent

Word	*Antonym*
assent	dissent
assemble	disperse
associate	avoid, separate
attack (v)	defend
attack (n)	defence
attract	repel
attraction	repulsion
augment	decrease
authentic	spurious
auspicious	inauspicious
awake	asleep
awkward	graceful
backward	progressive, forward
barbarous	civilized
baroque	plain
barren	fertile
barrier	link
base	summit, noble
batty	sane
bawdy	decent
beauty	ugliness
beautiful	ugly
befogged	clear-headed
beginning	end
beneficial	harmful, injurious
benevolent	malevolent
belie	justify
believe	doubt
benign	malignant, cruel
best	worst
bind	release
birth	death
bitter	sweet
blame	praise
bleak	bright, cheerful
blunt	keen, sharp
boisterous	placid

Word	*Antonym*
bold	timid
borrow	lend
bottom	top
brave	coward
bright	dull
broad	narrow
build	destroy
busy	idle, lazy
calculate	guess
calculating	artless
calm	stormy
callous	kind
camouflage	reveal
candid	evasive
captivate	repel
care	neglect
carnal	spiritual
casual	formal
catholic	narrow-minded
celebrated	unknown
cement	disintegrate
censure	praise
cheap	dear
clandestine	open
classic	romantic
clever	stupid
coarse	fine
comic	tragic
common	rare, uncommon
compact	diffuse
compare	contrast
compress	expand
conceal	reveal
conceit	modesty
concord	discord
condemn	approve
confess	deny
confidence	diffidence
confident	diffident

Word	*Antonym*
consolidate	weaken
contempt	esteem
continue	terminate
contract	expand
country	town
courtesy	rudeness
create	destroy
creation	destruction
credit	cash
credulous	sceptical
crude	refined
cruel	kind
cunning	naive
danger	safety
deep	shallow
defendant	plaintiff
deficit	surplus
delay	haste
delete	insert
demolish	construct
demote	promote
denounce	defend
dense	sparse
derogatory	laudatory
despair	hope
destructive	constructive
devil	god
diabolic	kind
difference	resemblance
difficulty	ease
diligent	lazy
divide	multiply
docile	headstrong
domestic	foreign
doubt	trust
dwarf	giant
eager	indifferent, apathetic
early	late

Word	*Antonym*
ease	disquiet
eclipse	shine
economy	extravagance
effect	cause
effeminate	manly
effete	strong
egalitarian	elitist
egocentric	altruist
elation	depression
eligible	ineligible
emiancipate	enslave
emerge	disappear
emigrant	native
employee	employer
empty	full
encourage	discourage
enlarge	diminish
enrich	impoverish
enthrone	depose
entrance	exit
erase	engrave
eternal	transient
explicit	implicit
export	import
external	internal
exterior	interior
excess	dearth
extravagant	frugal, economical
fact	fiction
fail	succeed
failure	success
fair	foul
familiar	strange
famous	obscure
ferocious	mild, gentle
fickle	constant
final	initial
firm	loose
flexible	rigid

Word	*Antonym*
foreign	native
former	latter
frank	reticent
frankness	reserve
free	bound
freedom	slavery
frequent	occasional
fresh	stale
friend	foe, enemy
friendly	hostile
front	back
fruitful	futile
funny	serious
gain (n)	loss
gain (v)	lose
gap	continuous
gather	disperse
general	particular
generosity	stinginess
gentle	rude
genuine	spurious
gloomy	gay, bright
glory	shame, disgrace
gorgeous	simple
grant	refuse
grief	solace
grotesque	congruous
growth	decay
habitual	infrequent
hamper	expedite
hamstrung	strengthen
happy	miserable
happiness	misery
hard	soft
harm	benefit
harmony	discord
harsh	melodious
hasty	leisurely
head	tail

Word	*Antonym*
healthy	diseased
hear	ignore
heaven	hell
help	hinder
hide	divulge
high	low
height	depth
hollow	solid
honour	shame
humble	proud
humility	pride
hurry	delay
hurt	heal
hypocrisy	sincerity
impenitent	repentant
impulsive	cautious
indifferent	partial
indigent	rich
infernal	heavenly
inhale	exhale
innocent	guilty
insipid	tasty
insult	esteem, honour
interesting	dull, uninteresting
jest	earnest
join	sever
jolly	gloomy, sad
joy	sorrow
just	unfair
keep	discard
knowledge	ignorance
labour	rest, repose
languid	energetic
law	anarchy
lead	follow
leader	follower
lenient	strict
let	hinder, stop

Word	*Antonym*
lethargic	energetic
liberty	slavery
limit	stretch
liquid	solid
loose	tight
love (n)	hatred
love (v)	hate
lovely	hideous
loud	soft
make	mar
malice	goodwill
male	female
major	minor
majority	minority
mandatory	optional
mark	erase
masculine	feminine
master	servant
material	spiritual
maximum	minimum
meagre	plentiful
meek	arrogant
merit	demerit
mighty	weak
mild	stern
miserly	generous
mix	separate
mobile	stationary
moderate	excessive
moderate (n)	extremist
modest	conceited
moist	dry, arid
morbid	healthy
motion	rest
native	alien
neat	filthy
nimble	lazy
noble	ignoble, base
noise	quiet

Word	*Antonym*	*Word*	*Antonym*
normal	abnormal	prose	poetry
novel	commonplace	positive	negative
novice	veteran	profit	loss
now	then	progress	retrogress
obey	defy, disobey	prohibit	permit
obliging	mulish, obstinate	prompt	slow
obscure	prominent	prudence	indiscretion
observe	miss, disregard	public	private
obstinate	pliable, flexible	punish	reward, forgive
obstruct	assist	pursue	avoid
obtain	forfeit	pure	adulterated, mixed
odd	even	raid	retreat
offensive	pleasing	raise	lower
offer	withdraw, refuse	rapidity	inertia
ominous	auspicious	rare	common
omit	include	rash	steady
optimist	pessimist	real	fictitious, imaginary
optional	compulsory	rear	front
oral	written	reason	folly
ordinary	rare, unique	rebellious	submissive
pacify	irritate	rebuke	praise
painful	soothing	reciprocal	unilateral
pardon	chastise	recovery	relapse
part	whole	rectify	falsify
particular	general	refund	withhold
partner	competitor	refute	confirm
passionate	dispassionate	reluctant	eager
permanent	temporary	remember	forget
permission	refusal	reputation	notoriety
persuade	dissuade	restrain	incite
perturbed	calm	right	left, wrong
pleasure	pain	rough	smooth
pompous	humble	round	flat
praise	defame	rude	polite
precious	cheap	sacred	profane
prologue	epilogue	sad	cheerful
prolong	shorten	safe	risky, dangerous
propagate	suppress		

Word	*Antonym*
savage	civilized
save	spend
saviour	destroyer
severe	mild, lenient
shy	impudent
simple	complex
sin	virtue
sink	float
smile	frown
startled	relaxed
steadily	waveringly
steep	flat
straight	curved
stranger	acquaintance
sublime	ridiculous
superficial	profound
superior	inferior
supernatural	natural
sweet	sour
swift	slow
sympathy	antipathy
synonym	antonym
system	chaos
tame	wild
teacher	student
terse	diffuse
thankful	thankless
theory	practice
thick	thin
thrifty	extravagant
tragedy	comedy
tranquil	agitated
transparent	opaque
treacherous	loyal, faithful
trust	doubt, distrust
truth	falsehood
uniform	variable

Word	*Antonym*
unite	separate
union	discord
use	abuse
vacant	occupied
vague	definite, exact, clear
vain	modest
victory	defeat
violent	gentle, peaceful
virtue	vice
vision	blindness
vivid	dull, dim
voluntary	compulsory
vulgar	cultured
war	peace
warmth	coldness
waste	save, hoard
wax	wane
weak	strong
weal	woe
wealth	poverty
wed	divorce
wet	dry
whiten	darken
wicked	virtuous
wide	narrow
win	lose
wise	foolish
wit	stupidity
wisdom	folly
wonderful	ordinary
work	rest, repose
yield	resist
young	old
youthful	mature
zenith	nadir

Exercises

I. *Form the negative of these words by adding the prefix in, im, un, dis,*

coherent, conscious, mature, skilled, integrate. formal, connect, partial, relevant, responsible

II. *Form five pairs, each pair having words opposite in meaning:*

1. spurious	a. opaque
2. transparent	b. nocturnal
3. verbal	c. genuine
4. diurnal	d. deficit
5. surplus	e. written

III. *Fill in the blanks with words opposite in meaning to the words italicized in each of these sentences:*

1. United we *stand*, divided we.....
2. Better to *reign* in hell than to..... in heaven.
3. Glass is *transparent* but brass is.....
4. This tract of land is *fertile* but that one is.....
5. We have to depend on society from the *cradle* to the.....

IV. *Choose the opposite of the* CAPITALIZED *word:*

1. SENILE: (a) bright (b) old (c) youthful (d) intelligent
2. DWINDLE: (a) diminish (b) develop (c) decay (d) increase
3. CLAMOUR: (a) din (b) contentment (c) slow (d) silence
4. PERILOUS: (a) safe (b) easy (c) comfortable (d) risky
5. OBSCURE: (a) paramount (b) unimpaired (c) salient (d) prominent

---

Answers:

I. incoherent, unconscious, immature, unskilled, disintegrate, informal, disconnect, impartial, irrelevant, irresponsible

II. 1-c 2-a 3-e 4-b 5-d

III. 1-*fall* 2-*serve* 3-*opaque* 4-*barren* 5-*grave*

IV. 1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (d) 4. (a) 5. (d)

CHAPTER 4

Synonyms

Synonym is a word with the same meaning or nearly the same meaning in the same language. It has often different implications and associations.

The meanings of synonymous words are not exactly the same. Take for example, *smell* and *stink*; *steal* and *rob*. A *smell* can be good or bad but a *stink* is always a bad or foul smell; as–

How sweet is the *smell* of the roses!
I can't stand the *stink* of burning rubber.

One *steals* things but *robs* people (of things); as–

He has *stolen* my watch.
He has *robbed* me of all my belongings.

The English language abounds in synonymous words, delicately differentiated to make possible the expression of all shades of human thought. You will be tickled to know that there are fifteen synonyms for *beautiful*, twenty for *friendly*, twenty-one for *beginning*, and thirty-seven for *pure*.

Here is a list of synonyms with antonyms of some of the head-words:

Abandon: leave, forsake, resign, relinquish. (Ant. *retain*)
Abase: humiliate, humble, disgrace. (Ant. *exalt, honour, uplift*)
Abash: confound, confuse, shame. (Ant. *encourage*)
Abate: subside, lessen, diminish, decline, reduce. (Ant. *raise, rise, increase*)
Abbreviate: shorten, condense, reduce. (Ant. *expand, lengthen*)
Abet: assist, encourage, help. (Ant. *hinder, discourage*)
Abhor: detest, hate, loathe. (Ant. *like, approve*)
Abject: mean, degraded, servile. (Ant. *proud, independent*)
Abjure: repudiate, disclaim, disavow. (Ant. *claim, accept*)
Aboriginal: indigenous, native. (Ant. *immigrant*)
Abortive: fruitless, futile, unsuccessful. (Ant. *effective, successful*)
Abscond: bolt, decamp, run off. (Ant. *stay*)
Abstruse: obscure, hidden, deep, profound. (Ant. *open, simple*)

Accelerate: hasten, quicken, expedite. (Ant. *retard*)
Acclivity: incline, ascent. (Ant. *declivity*)
Accoutrement (s), Accoutrement: dress, outfit, equipment.
Accredited: authorized, entrusted. (Ant. *unauthorized*)
Acerbity: acrimony, bitterness, harshness. (Ant. *sweetness, mildness*)
Actuate: impel, instigate. (Ant. *stop, arrest*)
Addicted: devoted, accustomed to. (Ant. *free*)
Adjacent: near, contiguous, close to. (Ant. *distant*)
Adjourn: defer, delay, postpone. (Ant. *advance*)
Admonish: chide, rebuke, warn. (Ant. *praise, commend*)
Adroit: clever, skilful, expert. (Ant. *unskilled*)
Adversity: misfortune, hardship, calamity. (Ant. *prosperity*)
Affable: polite, courteous, civil, accessible. (Ant. *impolite, uncivil*)
Affliction: trouble, distress, grief, sorrow. (Ant. *comfort, ease*)
Affluence: opulence, wealth, riches. (Ant. *poverty*)
Affright: alarm, confound, terrify, intimidate. (Ant. *encourage*)
Aggravate: intensify, heighten. (Ant. *lighten*)
Alacrity: alertness, readiness, promptitude, activity. (Ant. *inactivity*)
Alienate: transfer, estrange. (Ant. *reconcile*)
Allay: soothe, calm, alleviate, assuage. (Ant. *excite*)
Allure: attract, entice, ensnare. (Ant. *repel*)
Altercation: wrangle, quarrel, dispute. (Ant. *agreement*)
Ambiguous: doubtful, uncertain, equivocal. (Ant. *obvious, clear*)
Ameliorate: improve, amend, make better. (Ant. *worsen*)
Amenable: responsive, responsible, accountable. (Ant. *surly*)
Amiable: charming, lovable, winning. (Ant. *unlovable*)
Amicable: friendly, sociable, cordial. (Ant. *unfriendly*)
Anguish: agony, pain, suffering. (Ant. *ease, comfort*)
Annex: add, join, append. (Ant. *detach*)
Annihilate: destroy, ruin, annul. (Ant. *preserve*)
Annul: abrogate, cancel, quash, rescind. (Ant. *ratify, confirm*)
Appease: pacify, quiet, assuage, soothe. (Ant. *provoke*)
Appraise: estimate, price.
Apprise: acquaint, inform, notify.
Approbation: authority, praise, approval, sanction. (Ant. *disapproval*)
Arduous: laborious, difficult, trying. (Ant. *easy*)
Arrogant: haughty, imperious, overbearing. (Ant. *humble*)
Aspiration: longing, ambition, yearning. (Ant. *apathy*)
Assail: assault, attack, invade. (Ant. *defend*)

Astute: crafty, cunning, sharp. (Ant. *stupid*)
Atrocious: heinous, monstrous, flagrant. (Ant. *decent*)
Attire: dress, garment, apparel. (Ant. *nakedness*)
Audacious: impudent, bold, daring. (Ant. *timid*)
Augment: extend, enlarge, increase. (Ant. *lessen*)
August: dignified, stately, imposing, majestic. (Ant. *humble, lowly*)
Auspicious: fortunate, lucky, propitious. (Ant. *inauspicious*)
Austere: severe, rigorous, stern. (Ant. *mild*)
Authentic: trustworthy, true, genuine. (Ant. *spurious*)
Baleful: hurtful, injurious, noxious. (Ant. *harmless*)
Barbarous. savage, wild, rude. (Ant. *civilized*)
Beguile: cheat, deceive, amuse, divert.
Behest: order, command, charge.
Benevolent: charitable, benign. (Ant. *malevolent*)
Beseech: beg, pray, entreat.
Bitter: sharp, severe, acrid, harsh. (Ant. *sweet*)
Bland: gentle, mild, courteous. (Ant. *discourteous*)
Blasphemy: impiety, profanity. (Ant. *reverence*)
Bleak: cold, chilly. (Ant. *sunny, warm*)
Bliss: rapture, felicity, delight. (Ant. *unhappiness*)
Blithe: happy, merry, joyous. (Ant. *sad, sorrowful*)
Boisterous: clamorous, noisy,rowdy. (Ant. *quiet*)
Bondage: servitude, subjection. (Ant. *liberty*)
Boorish: rude, rustic, uncivilized. (Ant. *civilized*)
Brawl: altercation, fight, squabble. (Ant. *harmony*)
Brittle: fragile, breakable.
Broach: utter, tap, open. (Ant. *close, stop*)
Burlesque: farcical, comical. (Ant. *serious*)
Cabal: faction, clique, coterie, party, plot.
Cadaverous: pale, ghastly, pallid, wan.
Cajole: coax, entice, flatter. (Ant. *repel*)
Calumny: slander, aspersion. (Ant. *praise*)
Candid: just, frank, fair. (Ant. *unfair*)
Caprice: whim, freak, vagary. (Ant. *steadfastness*)
Cardinal: primary, principal, main, chief.
Caress: pet, fondle, cuddle, kiss. (Ant. *repel*)
Carnal: sensuous, fleshy, lascivious, animal. (Ant. *spiritual*)
Castigate: punish, chastise. (Ant. *praise*)
Catholic: tolerant, whole, universal. (Ant. *limited, exclusive*)

Cavil: censure, criticize, carp. (Ant. *approve*)

Chagrin: mortification, disappointment, dissatisfaction. (Ant. *satisfaction*)

Chary: wary, cautious, careful. (Ant. *reckless*)

Childish: juvenile, puerile, silly, weak. (Ant. *grave, sensible*)

Chivalrous: heroic, brave, gallant. (Ant. *cowardly*)

Choleric: angry, irascible, hasty. (Ant. *calm*)

Churlish: uncivil, sullen, rude. (Ant. *civil*)

Circumspect: prudent, careful, cautious. (Ant. *incautious*)

Circumvent: outwit, overreach, ensnare.

Clandestine: sly, underhand, secret. (Ant. *open*)

Coalesce: join, blend, mingle.

Coalition: alliance, combination, league. (Ant. *split*)

Colossal: huge, enormous, gigantic. (Ant. *puny*)

Comely: fair, good-looking, pretty. (Ant. *ugly*)

Communion: fellowship, intercourse, agreement.

Compatible: suitable, consistent, consonant. (Ant. *incompatible*)

Compunction: remorse, regret. (Ant. *recklessness*)

Concord: accord, agreement, harmony. (Ant. *discord*)

Confound: confuse, perplex, embarrass. (Ant. *enlighten*)

Congruous: fit, consistent, appropriate. (Ant. *discordant, unfit*)

Conjecture: guess, surmise, hypothesis. (Ant. *certainty*)

Connive: overlook, conspire, intrigue. (Ant. *oppose*)

Conscientious: exact, scrupulous, honourable. (Ant. *unscrupulous*)

Consecrate: sanctify, hallow, devote. (Ant. *desecrate*)

Conspicuous: manifest, remarkable, noticeable. (Ant. *obscure, unknown*)

Consummate: perfect, complete, finished. (Ant. *imperfect*)

Contaminate: pollute, infect, defile, taint. (Ant. *purify*)

Contemptuous: disdainful, scornful, haughty. (Ant. *laudatory*)

Contentious: quarrelsome, litigious, captious. (Ant. *peaceful*)

Contravene: oppose, interfere, contradict. (Ant. *assist*)

Convivial: merry, joyous, festive, hilarious. (Ant. *unsocial*)

Corporeal: physical, bodily. (Ant. *spiritual*)

Corpulent: fleshy, fat, portly. (Ant. *thin*)

Corroborate: confirm, establish, strengthen. (Ant. *disprove*)

Counterfeit: false, forged. (Ant. *genuine*)

Covert: secret, hidden, clandestine, disguised. (Ant. *overt*)

Coy: bashful, shy, modest, reserved. (Ant. *pert, saucy*)

Crafty: cunning, wily, artful. (Ant. *ingenuous*)

Credulous: simple, gullible. (Ant. *sceptical*)
Culpable: faulty, blameworthy, guilty. (Ant. *innocent*)
Cursory: superficial, transient, rapid. (Ant. *thorough*)
Dainty: palatable, delicious, delicate, nice. (Ant. *unpalatable*)
Dearth: want, scarcity, lack. (Ant. *plenty*)
Debase: humiliate, degrade. (Ant. *exalt*)
Debility: weakness, infirmity. (Ant. *invigoration*)
Decay: decompose, putrefy, rot, spoil.
Deception: guile, deceit, cunning, delusion.
Decorum: decency, propriety. (Ant. *impropriety*)
Decree: edict, ordinance, law, mandate.
Defer: postpone, suspend, adjourn.
Deference: reverence, honour, respect. (Ant. *disrespect*)
Defile: corrupt, stain, spoil, contaminate. (Ant. *purify*)
Delectable: pleasant, delightful. (Ant. *displeasing*)
Delicious: dainty, exquisite, luscious, savoury. (Ant. *unpalatable*)
Demeanour: conduct, behaviour, bearing.
Demolish: destroy, raze, ruin. (Ant. *build*)
Desecrate: pollute, profane. (Ant. *consecrate*)
Design: outline, sketch, plan, purpose, intention.
Designate: nominate, appoint, name.
Desolate: lonely, deserted, ruined. (Ant. *populous*)
Despicable: mean, worthless, contemptible. (Ant. *commendable*)
Despot: oppressor, tyrant, autocrat.
Destitute: poor, indigent, needy. (Ant. *well-off*)
Desultory: casual, rambling. (Ant. *steady*)
Deviate: digress, wander, diverge.
Diffident: hesitating, doubtful, bashful. (Ant. *confident*)
Diligence: industry, perseverance, care. (Ant. *idleness*)
Discern: behold, observe, perceive, judge. (Ant. *confuse*)
Discursive: erratic, rambling. (Ant. *coherent*)
Disparage: discredit, undervalue, decry, belittle. (Ant. *applaud*)
Docile: pliant, amenable, submissive. (Ant. *stubborn, inflexible*)
Dubious: doubtful, uncertain. (Ant. *certain*)
Eager: earnest, keen, enthusiastic. (Ant. *apathetic*)
Ecstasy: rapture, trance, transport.
Effete: exhausted, barren, effeminate. (Ant. *vigorous*)
Egotism: vanity, conceit, self-esteem. (Ant. *modesty*)
Elegant: refined, graceful. (Ant. *inelegant*)

Elucidate: explain, interpret, illuminate. (Ant. *obfuscate*)
Embellish: adorn, beautify, grace. (Ant. *spoil)*
Emolument: pay, remuneration, gain, reward.
Encomium: praise, eulogy. (Ant. *censure*)
Encroach: trespass, intrude, invade.
Enervated: debilitated, enfeebled, unnerved.
Enlighten: edify, illuminate, instruct. (Ant. *darken*)
Equanimity: coolness, calmness, composure.
Equivocate: evade, shuffle, prevaricate. (Ant. *admit, confess*)
Eradicate: extirpate, root out. (Ant. *spare*)
Eruption: explosion, outburst, outbreak.
Ethereal: airy, rare, celestial. (Ant. *earthly)*
Evanescent: transitory, fleeting, vanishing. (Ant. *permanent*)
Exacerbate: vex, embitter, exasperate. (Ant. *soothe*)
Excerpt: extract, quotation.
Excruciate: torment, torture, agonize. (Ant. *alleviate*)
Exculpate: acquit, pardon, absolve. (Ant. *accuse*)
Expatriate: exile, banish, expel. (Ant. *repatriate*)
Exquisite: delicate, refined, perfect. (Ant. *unrefined*)
Extenuate: reduce, lessen, qualify. (Ant. *intensify*)
Extravagant: lavish, wild, excessive. (Ant. *economical*)
Exult: rejoice, delight. (Ant. *grieve*)
Fabricate: forge, invent, coin, produce.
Fabulous: fictitious, marvellous, mythical. (Ant. *true*)
Facetious: funny, humorous, merry, jesting. (Ant. *dull, serious*)
Faction: clique, discord, cabal.
Fallible: uncertain, erring. (Ant. *infallible*)
Fastidious: dainty, meticulous, over-nice.
Fatigue: tiredness, exhaustion, weariness.
Fatuous: silly, imbecile, idiotic, weak (Ant. *sensible*)
Fervour: warmth, ardour. (Ant. *coolness*)
Filibuster: pirate, buccaneer, freebooter.
Flaccid: weak, loose, soft. (Ant. *firm*)
Flavour: relish, taste, savour.
Fleece: rob, clip, despoil.
Flexible: pliable, yielding. (Ant. *inflexible*)
Flinch: wince, recoil.
Flippant: saucy, irreverent, pert.
Flock: pack, herd, group, brood, litter, set.

Florid: ornate, flowery. (Ant. *plain*)
Fluctuate: vacillate, waver, hesitate, vary. (Ant. *stick*)
Foray: raid, inroad, incursion, invasion.
Fortitude: courage, strength, grit.
Frigid: unfeeling, cool, chilling. (Ant. *warm*)
Frugal: economical, thrifty. (Ant. *extravagant*)
Furbish: burnish, brighten, polish.
Garrulous: chattering, loquacious, talkative. (Ant. *silent*)
Gaunt: lean, emaciated, thin. (Ant. *corpulent*)
Glut: surfeit, satiate, cloy, gorge.
Grotesque: odd, bizarre, whimsical.
Hackneyed: stale, trite, common. (Ant. *novel*)
Hallucination: illusion, delusion.
Hapless: unfortunate, unlucky. (Ant. *lucky*)
Headstrong: stubborn, obstinate, strong-willed. (Ant. *docile*)
Hirsute: hairy, bearded, shaggy. (Ant. *smooth*)
Homogeneous: akin, uniform, similar. (Ant. *heterogeneous*)
Hubbub: uproar, tumult, din.
Ignominious: shameful, humiliating, disgraceful. (Ant. *honourable*)
Imbecile: silly, idiotic, feeble feeble-minded. (Ant. *sane*)
Immaculate: faultless, spotless, unblemished. (Ant. *blemished*)
Immunity: exception, freedom, protection.
Imperious: arrogant, authoritative, dictatorial. (Ant. *servile*)
Imposter: rogue, cheat, knave, charlatan.
Incisive: trenchant, sharp, biting. (Ant. *mild*)
Indefatigable: untiring, unwearied, assiduous. (Ant. *weary*)
Indite: frame, write, dictate, compose.
Industrious: laborious, active, hard-working. (Ant. *indolent*)
Inexorable: relentless, unyielding. (Ant. *lenient*)
Infernal: hellish, fiendish, diabolical.
Infringe: transgress, violate, break, encroach.
Ingenuous: sincere, frank, candid. (Ant. *disingenuous*)
Iniquitous: unjust, vicious, wicked. (Ant. *fair*)
Irascible: irritable, touchy. (Ant. *good-natured*)
Itinerant: roving, wandering, nomadic.
Jaundiced: biased, prejudiced. (Ant. *unbiased*)
Jocose: humorous, playful. (Ant. *grave*)
Knack: art, feat, dexterity. (Ant. *clumsiness*)
Labyrinthine: intricate, mazy, confused. (Ant. *straightforward*)

Laconic: terse, brief, short. (Ant. *verbose*)
Laggard: sluggish, tardy, loitering.
Languid: listless, weak, faint. (Ant. *vigorous*)
Lascivious: lewd, wanton. (Ant. *chaste*)
Lethal: deadly, fatal, mortal. (Ant. *harmless*)
Lucrative: paying, profitable. (Ant. *unprofitable*)
Lucre: gain, profit. (Ant. *loss*)
Ludicrous: ridiculous, absurd, comic. (Ant. *grave*)
Lugubrious: sad, doleful, mournful. (Ant. *gay, cheerful*)
Lurid: gruesome, dismal, murky. (Ant. *bright*)
Magnanimous: generous, unselfish, forgiving. (Ant. *ungenerous, selfish*)
Magniloquent: inflated, bombastic.
Mandate: command, edict, authorization.
Maudlin: emotional, sentimental.
Maxim: proverb, adage, precept.
Meddlesome: officious, interfering, intrusive. (Ant. *non-interfering*)
Mendacious: false, untruthful, lying. (Ant. *veracious*)
Mercenary: avaricious, mean, venal.
Meticulous: precise, scrupulous. (Ant. *sloppy*)
Mollify: soften, pacify, assuage, appease.
Mundane: worldly, earthly. (Ant. *heavenly*)
Nebulous: confused, hazy, cloudy. (Ant. *clear*)
Niggardly: stingy, miserly. (Ant. *generous*)
Noxious: harmful, poisonous, dangerous. (Ant. *harmless*)
Obdurate: stubborn, unyielding, obstinate.
Obviate: counteract, prevent, preclude. (Ant. *help*)
Offal: garbage, refuse.
Opulent: wealthy, rich, affluent.
Ostentation: pomp, parade, display, boasting. (Ant. *modesty*)
Paltry: little, mean, despicable, beggarly.
Pallid: pale, colourless. (Ant. *colourful*)
Pandemonium: uproar, racket.
Paramount: supreme, eminent. (Ant. *trivial*)
Pellucid: clear, limpid, transparent.
Picturesque: vivid, graphic, picture-like.
Pillage: plunder, loot, rob.
Poltroon: coward, dastard. (Ant. *hero*)
Ponderous: heavy, weighty, bulky. (Ant. *light*)
Precipitate: hurry, hasten, expedite.

Laconic: terse, brief, short. (Ant. *verbose*)
Laggard: sluggish, tardy, loitering.
Languid: listless, weak, faint. (Ant. *vigorous*)
Lascivious: lewd, wanton. (Ant. *chaste*)
Lethal: deadly, fatal, mortal. (Ant. *harmless*)
Lucrative: paying, profitable. (Ant. *unprofitable*)
Lucre: gain, profit. (Ant. *loss*)
Ludicrous: ridiculous, absurd, comic. (Ant. *grave*)
Lugubrious: sad, doleful, mournful. (Ant. *gay, cheerful*)
Lurid: gruesome, dismal, murky. (Ant. *bright*)
Magnanimous: generous, unselfish, forgiving. (Ant. *ungenerous, selfish*)
Magniloquent: inflated, bombastic.
Mandate: command, edict, authorization.
Maudlin: emotional, sentimental.
Maxim: proverb, adage, precept.
Meddlesome: officious, interfering, intrusive. (Ant. *non-interfering*)
Mendacious: false, untruthful, lying. (Ant. *veracious*)
Mercenary: avaricious, mean, venal.
Meticulous: precise, scrupulous. (Ant. *sloppy*)
Mollify: soften, pacify, assuage, appease.
Mundane: worldly, earthly. (Ant. *heavenly*)
Nebulous: confused, hazy, cloudy. (Ant. *clear*)
Niggardly: stingy, miserly. (Ant. *generous*)
Noxious: harmful, poisonous, dangerous. (Ant. *harmless*)
Obdurate: stubborn, unyielding, obstinate.
Obviate: counteract, prevent, preclude. (Ant. *help*)
Offal: garbage, refuge.
Opulent: wealthy, rich, affluent.
Ostentation: pomp, parade, display, boasting. (Ant. *modesty*)
Paltry: little, mean, despicable, beggarly.
Pallid: pale, colourless. (Ant. *colourful*)
Pandemonium: uproar, racket.
Paramount: supreme, eminent. (Ant. *trivial*)
Pellucid: clear, limpid, transparent.
Picturesque: vivid, graphic, picture-like.
Pillage: plunder, loot, rob.
Poltroon: coward, dastard. (Ant. *hero*)
Ponderous: heavy, weighty, bulky. (Ant. *light*)
Precipitate: hurry, hasten, expedite.

Preclude: stop, hinder, prevent. (Ant. *help*)
Predicament: plight, dilemma, state.
Predilection: prejudice, fondness, preference.
Preposterous: unbelievable, nonsensical. (Ant. *reasonable*)
Prevaricate: shuffle, equivocate, lie.
Proclivity: aptitude, leaning, disposition, bias.
Progeny: offspring, descendant. (Ant. *antecedents*)
Propitious: pleasing, favourable. (Ant. *antagonistic*)
Puerile: trivial, childish, silly. (Ant. *sensible*)
Punctilious: precise, careful, scrupulous. (Ant. *careless*)
Quell: crush, stop, put down. (Ant. *promote*)
Quiescent: inactive, latent, resting. (Ant. *dynamic*)
Quixotic: imaginary, impractical. (Ant. *realistic*)
Rancour: hatred, malice, spite. (Ant. *affection*)
Rapacious: greedy, covetous, avaricious. (Ant. *generous*)
Raucous: harsh, hoarse, loud. (Ant. *quiet*)
Realm: state, kingdom, sphere.
Recapitulate: repeat, summarize, enumerate.
Recompense: reward, compensation.
Rectitude: integrity, honesty, virtue.
Redundant: excessive, superfluous, exuberant. (Ant. *concise*)
Refulgent: shining, glittering, splendid. (Ant. *dull, dark*)
Replete: stuffed, full. (Ant. *starved, empty*)
Replica: copy, reproduction.
Reprimand: rebuke, censure, blame.
Repudiate: reject, disown, renounce. (Ant. *adopt*)
Repugnant: hostile, distasteful. (Ant. *pleasing*)
Resplendent: bright, shining, glittering.
Rife: common, widespread, prevalent, abundant. (Ant. *insufficient*)
Rubicund: reddish, ruddy, florid.
Rueful: sorrowful, unhappy. (Ant. *cheerful*)
Saucy: rude, impudent, impertinent. (Ant. *polite*)
Savoury: nice, tasty, palatable.
Scurrilous: abusive, vulgar. (Ant. *refined*)
Sedulous: busy, industrious, diligent. (Ant. *inactive*)
Servitude: slavery, bondage. (Ant. *freedom*)
Simulate: imitate, pretend, resemble.
Slovenly: untidy, disorderly. (Ant. *tidy*)
Sombre: dark, gloom, dismal, dull.

Somnolent: drowsy, sleepy. (Ant. *alert*)
Sorcery: witchcraft, magic, necromancy
Spurious: counterfeit, fake, illegitimate. (Ant. *genuine*)
Squalid: filthy, dirty. (Ant. *clean*)
Stolid: impassive, unemotional. (Ant. *sensitive*)
Stratagem: trick, ruse, artifice.
Subjugate: overthrow, conquer, subdue.
Succinct: terse, concise. (Ant. *wordy*)
Surmise: conjecture, guess.
Swarthy: black, dark, dusky.
Sycophant: flatterer, hanger-on, parasite.
Taciturn: silent, uncommunicative, reserved. (Ant. *garrulous*)
Tangible: solid, real, material. (Ant. *unreal*)
Tarnish: stain, taint, blemish.
Temerity: recklessness, rashness, audacity. (Ant. *caution*)
Thrifty: prudent, economical, saving. (Ant. *spendthrift*)
Thwart: defeat, frustrate, oppose. (Ant. *further*)
Torpor: sluggishness, inertness, dullness. (Ant. *vivacity*)
Torrid: scorching, hot, passionate. (Ant. *cool*)
Tortuous: winding, circuitous. (Ant. *straight*)
Tranquil: calm, serene, quiet (Ant. *noisy*)
Transgress: violate, exceed, trespass.
Transient: fleeting, brief. (Ant. *permanent*)
Tremulous: trembling, shivering, quaking.
Truculent: savage, ferocious, belligerent.
Tumid: turgid, distended, swollen. (Ant. *flaccid*)
Umbrage: displeasure, offence, resentment.
Unkempt: neglected, untidy. (Ant. *neat*)
Urbane: suave, refined. (Ant. *uncouth*)
Verdant: green, unripe, growing.
Vestige: trace, sign, remnant.
Victuals: food, bread, meat, provisions.
Vivacious: lively, gay, merry. (Ant. *depressed*)
Voluble: garrulous, glib, loquacious. (Ant. *curt*)
Wanton: reckless, unruly. (Ant. *restrained*)
Wastrel: profligate, vagabond
Whet: stimulate, sharpen.
Wistful: yearning, pensive, thoughtful.
Wonted: usual, customary, accustomed. (Ant. *unwonted*)

Exercises

I. *Each of the CAPITALIZED words is followed by four likely synonyms. One of them is not the correct synonym. Pick that out.*

1. STERILE
   (a) barren (b) unproductive (c) alluvial (d) unfruitful
2. SORCERY
   (a) astronomy (b) magic (c) witchcraft (d) necromancy
3. SEGMENT
   (a) portion (b) amount (c) section (d) part
4. PRESAGE
   (a) foreknowledge (b) anticipate
   (c) omen (d) prognostic
5. NEBULOUS
   (a) misty (b) confused (c) hazy (d) nimble
6. DECREPIT
   (a) old (b) garrulous (c) weak (d) decayed

II. *Choose the correct synonym for each of the CAPITALIZED words.*

1. NUGATORY
   (a) migratory (b) trifling (c) mobile (d) novel
2. METTLE
   (a) stony (b) venal (c) courage (d) iron
3. INNOCUOUS
   (a) harmless (b) hapless (c) fruitless (d) studious
4. FRAGILE
   (a) strong (b) brittle (c) florid (d) juicy
5. EXACERBATE
   (a) aggravate (b) exaggerate (c) enlighten (d) irritate
6. SUBTERFUGE
   (a) pretext (b) sublime (c) awesome (d) over-indulgence

Answers: I. 1-(c) 2-(a) 3-(b) 4-(b) 5-(d) 6-(b)
II. 1-(b) 2-(c) 3-(a) 4-(b) 5-(d) 6-(a)

CHAPTER 5

Paronyms or Pairs of Words

There is a lot of confusion in young minds about words, similar in form or in sound but different in meaning. Thus, *statue*, 'a sculptured figure' is confused with *statute*, 'a law', and both of them are confused with *stature*, 'height'. Such words are called *Paronyms* or *Pairs of Words*.

Sometimes there are such pairs of words as contain one noun and one verb—both similar in sound but different in meaning. As for example, *Lead* (Noun) and *Led* (Past Tense of the Verb'lead'), *Lid* (Noun) and *Lead*(Verb).

Examples: Lead : Led

This casket is made of *lead*. (Noun)
He *led* a happy married life. (Verb 'बिताया')
He *led* the procession of workers. (Verb 'नेतृत्व किया')

Lid : Lead

Who raised the *lid* of this pot? (Noun)
They *lead* a life of luxury. (Verb 'बिताते हैं')
The youths *lead* the nation today. (Verb 'नेतृत्व करते हैं')

Here is a comprehensive list of PARONYMS, the study of which will certainly enrich your knowledge and add to your stock of words.

(1)

Abate (*to grow less*; कम होना)—The fury of the storm has *abated*.
Abet (*to help, encourage*; उकसाना)—It is an offence to *abet* a crime.
Abject (*mean*; घृणित)—They are leading a life of *abject* misery.
Object (*aim*; उद्देश्य)—What is the aim and *object* of education?
Abstain (*from a thing*; परहेज करना)—You should *abstain* from alcoholic drinks.
Refrain (*from an action*; दूर रहना)—Please *refrain* from spitting in public.
Accede (*to agree*; मान लेना)—He did not *accede* to my request.
Concede (*to admit*; मान लेना)—You must *concede* that I have tried hard.
Exceed (*to surpass*; अधिक होना)—Her success *exceeded* all expectations.
Accept (*to agree to*; स्वीकार करना)—They *accepted* my invitation.

Except (*not including*; सिवाय)—Nobody *except* Ravi was late.

Expect (*to hope*; आशा करना)—I *expect* no help from my neighbour.

Access (*means of reaching*; पहुँच)—I have no *access* to the Chief Minister.

Excess (*to an extreme degree*; आधिक्य)—Don't carry your grief to *excess*.

Accomplice (*an associate in crime*; सह अपराधी)—He is an *accomplice* of Phulan Devi.

Accomplish (*to finish successfully*; पूरा करना)—He has *accomplished* the task given to him.

Adapt (*to adjust*; अनुकूल बनना)—Man can *adapt* himself to any situation.

Adept (*expert*; निपुण)—He is *adept* in the art of singing.

Adopt (*to take, accept*; ग्रहण करना)—Let us *adopt* the policy of non-violence.

Adverse (*unfavourable*; प्रतिकूल)—The ship sailed in *adverse* weather condition.

Averse (*opposed, disinclined*; अरुचि)—He is *averse* to hard work.

Advice (*counsel*; सलाह)—You must follow the *advice* of your teachers.

Advise (*to give advice to*; सलाह देना)—He *advised* me to work hard.

Affect (*to act upon*; प्रभाव डालना)—The climate of this place has *affected* my health.

Effect (*result*; परिणाम)—Did the medicine have any *effect*?

Affirm (*assert*; जोर देकर कहना; मान्यता देना)—They *affirmed* their faith in democracy.

Confirm (*prove*; पुष्ट करना)—What you tell me *confirms* my suspicion.

Afflict (*cause bodily or mental trouble*; पीड़ित)—He is *afflicted* with gout.

Inflict (*cause to suffer*; प्रहार करना)—He *inflicted* a severe wound upon his enemy.

Affection (*love*; प्यार)—She has no *affection* for her step-son.

Affectation (*unnatural behaviour*; बनावटी व्यवहार)—Her little *affectations* annoyed me.

Ail (*pain*; कष्ट)—What *ails* these people?

Ale (*wine*; जौ की शराब)—He is addicted to drinking *ale*.

Allude (*to refer to*; हवाला देना)—He *alluded* to the story of the Mahabharata.

Elude (*to evade*; बच निकलना)—The thieves *eluded* the police and made good their escape.

Allusion (*indirect reference*; हवाला)—This story is full of *allusions* to the Ramayana.

Illusion (*false idea or belief*; भ्रम)—Life is nothing but an *illusion*.

Aloud (*in an audible manner*; जोर से)—Do not talk *aloud*.

Allowed (*permitted*; आज्ञा देना)—My father *allowed* me to go there.

Alter (*change*; परिवर्तन करना)—You cannot *alter* my programme.

Altar (*place where offerings are made*; वेदी)—He sacrificed his life on the *altar* of God.

Alternate (*by turns*; एक के बाद एक)—He goes to his village on *alternate* Sundays.

Alternative (*in place of something*; विकल्प)—There is no *alternative* course left for us.

Angel (*a messenger from God*; देवदूत)—Gandhiji was an *angel* of peace.

Angle (*a point where two lines meet*; कोण)—It is an *angle* of 90 degrees.

Antic (*odd, queer behaviour*; ठिठोली)—Nobody likes your *antics*.

Antique (*belonging to the distant past*; पुरातन)—It is an *antique* coin.

Apposite (*appropriate*; उचित)—He passed an *apposite* remark on that occasion.

Opposite (*contrary*; विपरीत)—He moved in the *opposite* direction.

Arc (*part of a circle*; चाप)—Draw the *arc* of a circle having a radius of six inches.

Ark (*vessel*; बड़ी नाव)—You must have heard about Noah's *ark*.

Artisan (*one who practises some handicraft*; कारीगर)—The Bengali carpenters are good *artisans*.

Artiste (*a skilful public performer*)—KL Sahgal was a great *artiste*.

Artist (*one who practises one of the fine arts*; कलाकार)—Rabindranath Tagore was an *artist* of repute.

Ascent (*way up*; चढ़ाई)—The *ascent* of this mountain was not difficult.

Assent (*official agreement*; सहमति प्रकट करना)—The President gave his *assent* to the bill.

Assay (*to test*; कसौटी पर कसना)—He *assayed* to know the purity of that metal.

Essay (*written composition*; लेख)—Write an *essay* on *beggars*.

Auger (*carpenter's tool*; बरमा)—The carpenter bored a hole with his *auger*.

Augur (*be a sign of*; शकुन होना)—The success of our new Prime Minister *augurs* well for the country.

Bad (*not good*; बुरी)—You should give up your *bad* habits.

Bade (*offered, gave*; विदा कहा)—We *bade* him good-bye.

Bail (*security*; जमानत)—All the accused were released on *bail*.

Bale (*bundle*; गठरी)—He is carrying a *bale* of cotton.

Bare (*uncovered*; नंगा)—They are running around with *bare* feet.

Bear (*to put up with*; सहना)—I cannot *bear* this insult.

Beer (*the drink*; जौ की शराब)—He quite often drinks *beer*.

Bath (*washing of the body*; स्नान)—He takes a cold *bath* every morning.

Bathe (*be/made wet*; नहाना)—He was *bathed* in sweat.

Beach (*shore covered with sand*; बलुआ सागरतट)—They are walking alon the Juhu *beach*.

Beech (*forest tree*; जंगली वृक्ष)—There are *beech* trees in the Hazaribagh National Park.

Bitch (*female dog*; कुत्ती)—This *bitch* has given birth to four puppies.

Beat (*to strike*; पीटना)—Why do you *beat* your servant?

Beet (*plant with a sweet root*; चुकंदर)—White *beets* are used for making sugar.

Bit (*cut into with the teeth*; काटना)—The dog *bit* him in the leg.

Berth (*sleeping place in a train, etc.*; गाड़ी में सोने की जगह)—I got a *berth* reserved in the Delhi Express.

Birth (*being born*; जन्म)—What is the date of your *birth*?

Berry (*small seedy fruit*; रसभरी)—Have you seen *blackberry*?

Bury (*put in the grave*; गाड़ना)—They *buried* the dead.

Beside (*by the side of*; बगल में)—He is sitting *beside* his mother.

Besides (*in addition to*; अलावा)—He gave me a watch *besides* a pen.

Bloc (*group*; राजनीतिक दलों का संघ)—Our country does not belong to any power *bloc*.

Block (*large, solid piece of wood*; लकड़ी का टुकड़ा)—He cut up the meat on a large *block* of wood.

Boar (*the male swine*; सुअर)—We saw a wild *boar* in this forest.

Bore (*to put up with; to make a hole*; सहन करना; छिद्र करना)—He *bore* all the hardships. He has *bored* a hole in the wall.

Boarder (*a student who lives in a hostel*; छात्रावास में रहनेवाला)—During the holidays all the *boarders* leave for their home.

Border (*margin*; किनारा)—The *border* of her *sari* is blue.

Born (*to come into existence*; पैदा होना)—He was *born* on August 15, 1950.

Borne (*endured*; सहना)—This trouble cannot be *borne* by me.

Borrow (*to take loan*; कर्ज लेना)—I *borrowed* money from my friend.

Burrow (*a hole in earth*; खरहे की माँद)—A rabbit lives in a *burrow*.

Bough (*branch of a tree*; डाली)—A parrot is sitting on the *bough* of this tree.

Bow (*to bend*; झुकना, झुकाना)—They *bowed* their heads in prayer.

Boy (*male child*; लड़का)—I found two *boys* and one girl in the class.

Buoy (*keep up hope*; उद्भासित होना)—He is *buoyed* up with new hope.

Brake (*device for reducing speed*; ब्रेक)—The *brake* failed and the car dashed against a tree.

Break (*fracture*; तोड़ना)—He *broke* the glass into pieces.

Breath (*respiration*; साँस)—The old man took a deep *breath*.

Breathe (*to draw in and expel the air*; साँस लेना)—Let's *breathe* fresh air.

Breadth (*width*; चौड़ाई)—What is the *breadth* of this room?

Bread (*an item of food*; रोटी)—I have eaten two slices of *bread*.

Bred (*brought up*; पाला गया)—He was *bred* and brought up by his uncle.

Bridal (*wedding*; वैवाहिक)—I attended her *bridal* ceremony.

Bridle (*a horse's harness*; लगाम)—The rider took the *bridle* in his hands.

But (लेकिन)—He is poor *but* honest.

Butt (*a target*; निशाना)—He is the *butt* of jokes of the whole class.

Calendar (*a table showing months, days*; पंचांग, कलैंडर)—There is no list of holidays in this *calendar*.

Calender (*roller-machine for pressing cloth or paper*)—He has bought a *calender* for pressing clothes and papers.

Canon (*principle*; सिद्धांत)—Do not break the *canons* of morality.

Cannon (*heavy gun*; तोप)—Have you ever heard the booming of a *cannon*?

Canvas (*coarse cloth*; मोटा कपड़ा)—He has purchased a pair of *canvas* shoes.

Canvass (*ask for votes*)—They are *canvassing* for votes.

Career (*progress through life*; जीवन-क्रम)—You can learn a lot by reading about the *careers* of great men.

Carrier (*one that carries*; फैलानेवाला)—These living germs are the *carrier* of various diseases.

Cast (*throw*; फेंकना, डालना)—The fisherman *cast* his net into the water.

Caste (*social class*; जाति)—Hindu society is divided into *castes*.

Casual (*accidental, arising from chance*; आकस्मिक)—I am on *casual* leave today.

Causal (*pertaining to a cause*; कारणात्मक)—There is *causal* relationship between betel chewing and mouth cancer.

Cease (*to stop*; बंद होना)—This factory has *ceased* making bicycles.

Seize (*confiscate*; जब्त करना)—All the foreign goods have been *seized*.

Siege (*surround and blockade*; घेरा डालना)—The army laid *siege* to that town.

Ceiling (*under-surface of a roof*; छत)—The *ceiling* of this room is being repaired.

Sealing (*fastening with wax*; मोहर लगाना)—They are *sealing* a packet of answerbooks.

Cell (*a small room of a prison*; छोटी कोठरी)—All criminals are kept in separate *cells*.

Sail (*to begin a voyage*; जलयात्रा करना)—He *sailed* for England.

Cellar (*underground room for storing wine*; तहखाना)—He took out five bottles of wine from the *cellar*.

Seller (*one who sells*; विक्रेता)—He is a *bookseller*.

Sailor (*a seaman*; मल्लाह)—A *sailor* is out on the sea for days together.

Cemetery (*a burial place*; कब्रिस्तान)—They carried the dead soldiers to the *cemetery*.

Symmetry (*due proportion*; सुडौलपन)—True beauty consists in *symmetry* and proportion.

Censer (*vessel in which incense is burnt*; धूपदानी)—The priest placed the *censer* near the prayer table.

Censor (*an inspector of manners and morals*; गुण-दोष जाँचनेवाला)—The *censor* board objected to the screening of that film.

Cereal (*grains used for food*; अन्न)—The price of *cereals* has shot up.

Serial (*in or forming a series*; क्रमानुसार)—Please arrange these applications in *serial* order.

Chair (कुर्सी)—He has no *chair* to sit on.

Cheer (*to encourage*; आनंदित करना)—The speaker was loudly *cheered*.

Chaste (*simple, without ornament*; सादा)—He spoke in *chaste* English.

Chest (सीना, छाती)—Let me measure your *chest*.

Cheat (*to deceive*; धोखा देना)—You cannot *cheat* everybody.

Chit (*short note or letter*; पर्ची)—Don't carry *chits* into the examination hall.

Check (*to control*; रोकना)—He *checked* the speed of his car.

Cheque (*a written order for money to a bank*; हुंडी)—I gave him a *cheque* for Rs. 1000.

Childish (*foolish*; बचकाना)—You must give up your *childish* behaviour.

Childlike (*innocent*; शिशु-सुलभ)—Gandhiji was known for his *childlike* simplicity.

Cite (*to quote*; उद्धृत करना)—He *cited* the poems of Wordsworth.

Sight (*scene*; दृश्य)—What a lovely *sight* it is!

Site (*place*; किसी काम के लिए चुनी हुई जगह)—This *site* is reserved for the Science Block of our college.

Cloth (*woven or felted material*; कपड़ा)—He purchased three yards of *cloth*.

Clothes (*garment*; पोशाक)—He put his *clothes* on.

Coarse (*rough*; मोटा)—*Coarse* rice is cheaper than fine rice.

Course (*the way*; मार्ग, रास्ता)—Follow the right *course*.

Collision (*dashing together, conflict*; टक्कर)—There was a head-on *collision* between the two buses.

Collusion (*fraudulent, secret agreement*; साँठगाँठ)—The thieves acted in *collusion* with the police.

Coma (*deep unconsciousness*; सम्मूर्छा)—That patient is in a *coma*.

Comma (*a punctuation mark*; अल्पविराम)—A *comma* indicates a slight pause.

Complement (*that which makes something complete*; पूरक)—This angle is the *complement* of that angle.

Compliment (*to express admiration*; अभिनंदन)—I *complimented* him on his new achievements.

Confidant (विश्वासी)—Each lover has his own *confidant*.

Confident *(to have confidence*; विश्वास होना)—He is *confident* of his success.

Confirm *(to put the seal of approval*; पुष्टि करना)—Please *confirm* your telephone message by letter.

Conform *(to comply with*; अनुरूप होना)—You must *conform* to the moral standard.

Conscious *(aware*; जागरूक, एहसास)—I am *conscious* of my responsibilities.

Consensus *(unanimity, agreement*; एकमतता)—The *consensus* on the issue of leadership was reached after much discussion.

Considerable *(of some importance, large*; बहुत अधिक)—Our country has made *considerable* progress in space research.

Considerate *(thoughtful of the needs of others*; विवेकशील)—He will not hurt your feelings since he is kind and *considerate*.

Contagious *(that which spreads by contact*; छूत से लगनेवाली)—Cholera is a *contagious* disease.

Contiguous *(near*; समीप)—My bedroom is *contiguous* to my drawing room.

Continuous *(uninterrupted*; लगातार)—There was a *continuous* rainfall for three hours.

Continual *(going on with short breaks*; लगातार, पर रुक-रुककर)—The *continual* demands of these workers cannot be met.

Convey *(to make known to others*; व्यक्त करना, पहुँचाना)—Words fail to *convey* my feelings.

Convoy *(ship under escort)*—The *convoy* was attacked by submarines.

Cord *(twisted strand*; मोटी रस्सी)—The bundle was tied with a *cord*.

Chord *(straight line that joins two points on the circumference of a circle*; चाप)—The *chord* of this circle is two inches in length.

Corporal *(of the human body*; शारीरिक)—*Corporal* punishment should be abolished.

Corporeal *(physical*;शरीर-संबंधी)—Angels are no *corporeal* beings.

Corps *(branch of the army*; सेना की टुकड़ी)—He is a member of the National Cadet *Corps*.

Corpse *(dead body*; मुर्दा)—A *corpse* was lying in the field.

Council *(assembly*; सभा)—He is a member of the municipal *council*.

Counsel *(advice*; राय)—You must follow my *counsel*.

Councillor *(a member of the council*; सभासद)—The Mayor and the *councillors* quarrelled among themselves.

Counsellor *(lawyer*; सलाहदाता)—Our *counsellor* defended our case in the court.

Credible *(fit to be believed*; विश्वसनीय)—Your story is not at all *credible*.

Credulous *(one who believes easily*; आसानी से विश्वास कर लेनेवाला)—Illiterate villagers are generally *credulous.*

Currant *(a kind of grape*; मुनक्का)—*Currants* are used in cakes in order to make them tasty.

Current *(generally accepted*; प्रचलित)—These beliefs are no longer *current.*

Cymbal *(a musical instrument*; झाँझ)—The folk singers sang to the accompaniment of *cymbals.*

Symbol *(sign*; प्रतीक)—He is a *symbol* of strength and unity.

Dairy (दुग्धशाला)—There is no *dairy*-farm in my village.

Diary *(notebook*; डायरी)—He took down my address in the *diary.*

Descent *(going down*; गिरावट)—That hill had a steep *descent.*

Dissent *(refusal to agree*; विरुद्ध मत)—The proposal was approved with little *dissent.*

Decent (सुशील, भद्र)—He is a *decent* young man.

Defer *(to postpone*; स्थगित करना)—He has *deferred* his departure for a week.

Differ *(to disagree*; असहमत होना)—I *differ* with you on this point.

Deference *(respect*; आदर)—With due *deference* I beg to say this.

Difference (अंतर)—There is no *difference* between you and me.

Defy *(to challenge*; अवज्ञा करना)—Don't *defy* the authority of God.

Deify *(worship*; देवतातुल्य मानना)—People in the South *deify* T Rama Rao.

Dependant (*Noun;* आश्रित व्यक्ति)—Ramu has many *dependants.*

Dependent (*Adj.;* आश्रित)—He wanted to earn more money for his dependent children.

Deprecate *(express disapproval*; निंदा करना)—Hasty action is to be *deprecated.*

Depreciate *(undervalue*; तुच्छ समझना)—Don't *depreciate* my efforts to help.

Desert (मरुभूमि)—The camel is the ship of the *desert.*

Dessert *(anything sweet served after the meal)*—*Dessert* was served after the meal.

Destiny *(fate*; भाग्य)—We can shape the *destiny* of our country.

Destination (मंजिल)—He reached his *destination* in time.

Device *(a contrivance,*; विधि)—It is a labour-saving *device.*

Devise *(to contrive*; उपाय करना)—He has *devised* a novel method of solving this problem.

Dew (ओस)—There are *dewdrops* on these leaves.

Due (कारण)—Crops have failed *due* to scanty rainfall.

Die (मरना)—Everybody has to *die* sooner or later.

Dye *(to colour*; रंगना)—Let me *dye* my hair.

Disease (रोग)—He is suffering from a serious *disease.*

Decease *(dead;* दिवंगत)—The *deceased* was an honest man.
Disposal *(control;* अधिकार)—These jobs are at his *disposal*.
Disposition *(temperament;* स्वभाव)—He is a man of sweet *disposition*.
Divers (गोता लगानेवाले)—*Divers* can remain under water for hours.
Diverse *(different;* भिन्न-भिन्न)—There are *diverse* ways of helping him.
Dose (खुराक)—Only one *dose* of that medicine controlled my cough.
Doze *(a short sleep;* ऊँघना)—I found the boys *dozing* in the class.
Draught (घूँट)—He drank a *draught* of wine.
Drought (सूखा, अकाल)—Crops failed due to *drought*.
Duel (कुश्ती)—I challenged him to a *duel*.
Dual *(double;* दोहरा)—Dilip Kumar has played a *dual* role in this film.
Economic (आर्थिक)—There is *economic* crisis in the world.
Economical *(frugal;* मितव्ययी)—You should be *economical* in the use of words.
Elicit *(to draw out;* बाहर निकालना)—He could not *elicit* any information from him.
Illicit *(unlawful;* नाजायज)—He deals in *illicit* liquor.
Eligible *(fit to be chosen;* योग्य)—You are *eligible* for this post.
Illegible (अपठनीय)—Your handwriting is *illegible*.
Elusive (दुर्ग्राह्य)—Despite all our efforts, success remained *elusive*..
Illusive *(deceptive;* कपटपूर्ण, भ्रामक)—His manners are *illusive*.
Emigrant (प्रवासी)—The number of *emigrants* to Canada is fairly large.
Immigrant (अप्रवासी)—The European *immigrants* in Australia are well off.
Eminent *(famous;* प्रसिद्ध)—Sir CV Raman was an *eminent* scientist.
Imminent *(likely to happen soon;* सिर पर आनेवाला, संभावित)—He was faced with *imminent* death.
Ensure *(to make certain;* सुनिश्चित करना)—Hard work alone can *ensure* our success.
Insure (बीमा कराना)—This car has been *insured* for Rs 50,000.
Envelop *(cover up;* ढँका हुआ)—Look at the hills *enveloped* in mist.
Envelope (लिफाफा)—Write his address on the *envelope*.
Eruption *(a bursting out;* विस्फोट)—Many people were killed in that volcanic *eruption*.
Irruption *(sudden and violent invasion;* हमला)—The Chinese *irruption* took everybody by surprise.
Esteem *(regard;* श्रद्धा दिखाना)—I hold him in high *esteem*.
Steam (वाष्प)—Who invented the *steam* engine?
Estimate *(calculation;* आकलन)—What is the *estimate* of expenditure?
Estimation *(regard;* आदर)—He has fallen in the *estimation* of many people.

Excite *(to rouse*; उत्तेजित करना)—He is easily *excited*.

Incite *(to move to anger*; भड़काना)—Her rude behaviour *incited* me much.

Insight *(a clear perception*; भीतरी निगाह)—He has a deep *insight* into human nature.

Excursion *(a trip*; सैर-सपाटा)—The students of my class have gone on an *excursion*.

Incursion *(sudden attack*; हमला, धावा)—The Pakistani *incursion* on Kashmir was repulsed.

Extract *(to take out*; निकालना)—One of his teeth has been *extracted*.

Extricate *(set free*; मुक्त करना)—He *extricated* himself from a very difficult situation.

Faction *(small united group*; विरोधी दल)—Your party has split into petty *factions*.

Fiction (कल्पित कहानी)—Truth is often stranger than *fiction*.

Factitious *(unnatural, artificial*; कृत्रिम, बनावटी)—Mark the *factitious* enthusiasm of those people.

Fictitious *(not real*; कल्पित, बनावटी)—The account of his adventure is quite *fictitious*.

Fad *(fanciful fashion*; धुन)—Collecting foreign stamps is a passing *fad*.

Fade *(lose colour or freshness*; मुर्झाना)—Flowers *fade* away all too soon.

Fain *(willingly*; खुशी से)—I would *fain* go there to cheer him up.

Feign *(to pretend*; बहाना करना, स्वांग करना)—He *feigned* friendship with everybody.

Faint *(not clear*; धीमा)—That old man called for help in a *faint* voice.

Feint *(pretence*; बनावटी, कृत्रिम रूप)—He made a *feint* of doing this work.

Fair (सुंदर, मेला)—She is a *fair* lady. Let us go to the Sonepur *fair*.

Fare (भाड़ा)—He has not paid the bus *fare*.

Farther (दूरतर)—The more he ran after fame, the *farther* it receded.

Further (आगे, और आगे)—He *further* said that he would help me with money.

Fatal *(deadly*; घातक)—Cancer is a *fatal* disease.

Fettle *(in good physical condition*; आरोग्य)—He is in fine *fettle*.

Feat (वीरता का काम)—What a wonderful *feat* it is!

Feet (पैर, फीट/फुट)—His hands and *feet* were chopped off. The length of this table is two *feet*.

Fit (योग्य)—He is *fit* for this job.

Feel (अनुभव करना)—You will *feel* better after a night's sleep.

Fill (भरना)—*Fill* in the blanks with prepositions.

Find (पाना)—He did not *find* her anywhere.

Fined (जुर्माना किया गया)—He has been *fined* Rs 50/- by the Magistrate.

Fleet (*quick moving*; तेज, जहाजी बेड़ा)—He is *fleet* of foot. I saw a *fleet* of ship moving.

Flit (*fly or move quickly*; इधर-उधर फिरना)—Bees are *flitting* from flower t flower.

Flew (उड़ गया)—All the birds *flew* away.

Flu (*an abbreviation of influenza*; शीतज्वर)—*Flu* is a disease all too commo these days.

Flour (आटा)—He has set up a *flour* mill.

Flower (फूल)—What a beautiful *flower* it is!

Fond (शौकीन)—He is *fond* of the Indian classical songs.

Found (स्थापित करना, पाना)—I want to *found* a college. He has *found* his los watch.

Forego (*to precede*; पूर्व निर्धारित)—His dismissal is a *foregone* conclusion.

Forgo (त्याग देना)—Let the rich *forgo* their comforts.

Forth (*forward*; आगे रखना)—He brought *forth* new arguments.

Fourth (चौथा)—He is the *fourth* son of Ratnesh.

Foul (*unclean*; खराब, गंदा)—The weather is *foul* today.

Fowl (*a bird*; पक्षी)—He has caught hold of a *fowl*.

Four (चार)—Two plus two is equal to *four*.

Fore (सामने)—He brought to the *fore* many new facts.

Freeze (जमना)—If you go to the polar regions, you will *freeze* to death.

Fridge (*refrigerator*; फ्रिज)—He has purchased a new *fridge*.

Freight (माल का भाड़ा)—Have you paid the *freight* for these goods?

Fret (*worry*; चिढ़ना)—Don't fume and *fret* over trifles.

Gap (खुला स्थान)—The sheep got out of the field through a *gap* in the hedge

Gape (*stare open-mouthed*; आश्चर्यचकित देखना)—These villagers are *gaping* at the supersonic jet planes.

Gate (फाटक)—He is standing at the *gate* of his college.

Gait (*manner of walking*; चाल)—She has a charming *gait*.

Genius (प्रतिभाशाली व्यक्ति)—Newton was a *genius*.

Genus (*a group containing species*; वर्ग)—Dogs belong to the *genus* canis

Ghastly (*shocking, terrible*; भयानक)—The *ghastly* murder of Mrs Indira Gandhi shocked people all the world over.

Ghostly (*pertaining to a ghost*; प्रेत जैसा)—He is looking *ghostly* in the darkness.

Gild (मंडित)—He was lured by the *gilded* bait of vice.

Guild (*society for mutual aid*; मंडली)—All the members of the *guild* met the Prime Minister.

Gilt *(covered with a thin layer of gold*; सोने का पानी चढ़ा हुआ)—It is a *gilt*-edged weapon.

Guilt *(fault*; दोष)—He confessed his *guilt*.

Goal *(aim*, लक्ष्य)—What is the *goal* of your life?

Gaol *(jail*; जेलखाना)—He spent three years in *gaol*.

God (भगवान)—*God* is all-powerful and all-merciful.

Goad *(urge, drive forward*; उकसाना)—I *goaded* him into taking the lead.

Graceful *(handsome*; सुंदर)—He has a *graceful* personality.

Gracious *(merciful kind*; दयालु)—It was *gracious* of him to come to my help.

Grate *(rub into small pieces*; रगड़कर चूर करना)—Let me *grate* these stones a little more.

Great (महान, बड़ा)—He is every inch a *great* man.

Greet (स्वागत करना)—He *greeted* us with a smiling face.

Grit *(resolution*; साहस)—He is a man of rare *grit* and determination.

Green *(a colour*; हरा)—The colour of these shirts is *green*.

Grin *(to show the teeth in amusement*; मुस्कराना)—He *grinned* at the joke.

Groan *(cry of pain*; पीड़ा से चीखना)—Most of us *groaned* under injustice.

Grown (बढना, होना)—Your son has *grown* into a fine young man.

Hail *(welcome*; स्वागत करना)—His victory was *hailed* by all.

Hale *(healthy*; तंदुरुस्त)—I am quite *hale* and hearty.

Hall *(big room*; बड़ा कमरा)—The meeting was held in the Victoria *Hall*.

Haul *(to pull with efforts*; खींचना)—They *hauled* timber to a saw mill.

Howl (चिल्लाना)—The jackals are *howling*.

Hare *(rabbit*; खरगोश)—The *hare* is fleet of foot.

Hair (बाल)—Your *hair* has turned grey.

Hear (सुनना)—Did you *hear* him speak?

Here (यहाँ)—Come *here* and sit beside me.

Heart (दिल)—He suffers from *heart* disease.

Hart *(adult male deer*; नर हिरण)—He shot a *hart* dead.

Hay *(grass cut and dried*; सूखी घास)—Make *hay* while the sun shines.

Hey (हे ! ऐ !)—*Hey*, the hour of judgement is come.

Heal *(to make or grow well*; अच्छा होना)—His wound has not yet *healed*.

Heel (एड़ी)—The *heels* of your shoes are wearing down.

Heap *(mass of material piled up*; ढेर)—Look at the *heap* of books.

Hip (कूल्हा)—He stood there with his hands on his *hips*.

Herd *(flock*; पशुओं का झुंड)—We saw a *herd* of cattle grazing in the field.

Heard (सुना)—I have *heard* the story of his success.

Hard *(strict*; कड़ा)—He is a *hard* task-master.

Hew *(to cut down*; काटकर गिराना)—Let me *hew* down a branch of this tree.

Hue *(loud noise*; शोर)—They raised a *hue* and cry.

Historic *(important*; ऐतिहासिक)—The *historic* victory of India in the World Cup can never be forgotten.

Historical *(relating to history*; इतिहासप्रसिद्ध)—Agra is a place of *historical* importance.

Hoard *(carefully save and guard*; जमा करना)—They are *hoarding* up gold.

Horde *(gang*; झुंड)—I saw a *horde* of robbers in the Chambal valley.

Hoarse *(rough and harsh*;कर्कश)—That old man has a *hoarse* voice.

Horse (घोड़ा)—The *horse* is a very faithful animal.

Homely *(plain*; सादा)—How simple and *homely* are these villagers!

Homily *(a plain and familiar sermon*; परिचित उपदेश)—Everybody lent his ears to the priest's *homily*.

Idle *(lazy*; सुस्त)—He is sitting *idle*.

Ideal *(a model of perfection*; आदर्श)—It is an *ideal* place to live in.

Idol *(an image*; मूर्ति)—All the *idols* of Buddha have been stolen away.

Imaginary *(unreal*; काल्पनिक)—It is an *imaginary* story.

Imaginative *(having imagination*; कल्पनापूर्ण)—Poets are highly *imaginative*.

Implicit *(implied*; निहित)—I could not explain the *implicit* meaning of his statement.

Explicit *(clear*; स्पष्ट)—He was quite *explicit* about this matter.

Incredible *(impossible to be believed*; अविश्वसनीय)—The conquest of the moon seems an *incredible* feat.

Incredulous *(unwilling to receive as true*; अविश्वसनीय)—She has an *incredulous* approach to scientific achievements.

Indict *(to accuse*; अपराध लगाना)—Many ministers have been *indicted* by the Aiyer Commission.

Indite *(compose, put into words*; रचना करना)—He *indited* a lovely poem.

Injection (इंजेक्शन)—Dr Sinha advised him to take five *injections* of glucose.

Injunction *(an order, legal writ*; कानूनी रोक)—The *injunction* has been vacated by the Supreme Court.

In *(within*; में)—He is *in* the drawing room.

Inn *(a tavern*; सराय)—The pilgrims spent the night in this *inn*.

Jealous *(envious*; डाही)—Why are you *jealous* of my success?

Zealous *(enthusiastic*; उत्साही)—Raja Ram Mohan Roy was a *zealous* reformer.

Jest *(joke, fun*; मजाक)—He took seriously what was said in *jest*.

Zest *(gusto*; रुचि)—He has a great *zest* for life.

Keen (*eager*; उत्सुक)—He is very keen to see his birthplace again.

Kin (*relative*; संबंधी)—He helps only his kith and *kin*.

Knave (*rogue*; बदमाश)—Let us beware of this *knave*.

Naive (*artless, simple*; भोला)—He is too *naive* to see through her design.

Kneel (*to bend the knees*; घुटना टेकना)—He *knelt* down before his master.

Knell (*sign of the end or death of something*; मौत की घंटी)—The bells tolled the *knell* of the parting day.

Lac (*shellac, lakh* लाह, लाख)—*Lac* is used for sealing envelopes. He has deonated rupees one Lac to the Flood Relief Fund.

Lack (*want*; कमी)—There is *lack* of employment opportunities in Bihar.

Lace (*string for shoes*; फीता)—He has purchased a pair of *shoelaces*.

Lash (*strike violently*; प्रहार)—The storm *lashed* the coastal regions of Bombay.

Lair (*the resting place of a wild beast*; माँद)—The tiger came out of the *lair*.

Layer (*a bed*; तह)—I saw *layers* of snow all around.

Later (देर से)—He came *later* than Rajo.

Latter (बादवाला)—Of those two men the former is dead, but the *latter* is still alive.

Lead (*a metal*; जस्ता)—This casket is made of *lead*.

Led (*spent*; बिताया)—They *led* a life of ease and comfort.

Leak (*to let water in and out*; चूना)—The roof of your house is *leaking*.

Lick (*to pass the tongue over*; चाटना)—The dog is *licking* the plate.

Leap (*jump*; उछलना)—The children *leapt* up with joy.

Lip (ओठ)—My *lips* are sealed.

Lessen (*make or become less*; कम करना)—This medicine has *lessened* the effect of indigestion.

Lesson (पाठ)—I taught him a good *lesson*.

Liar (*one who tells a lie*; झूठा)—I am not a *liar*.

Lyre (*a musical instrument*; सितार)—He sang a song to the accompaniment of a *lyre*.

Licence (*permission*; लाइसेंस)—Have you applied for a gun *licence?*

License (*to permit by authority*; सरकार से मान्यताप्राप्त)—This is a *licensed* shop of wine.

Lightening (*lessening*; हल्का करना)—I am helping him with a view to *lightening* his burden.

Lightning (*the electric flash*; बिजली)—There was *lightning* accompanied by thunder.

Lion (शेर)—You are as brave as a *lion*.

Loin (*waist*; कमर)—Gird up your *loins* and face the situation.

Litter (*newly-born young ones*; कुतिया के पिल्ले)—We saw a *litter* of puppies.

Litre *(unit of capacity*; लीटर)—Give me two *litres* of petrol.
Loan (कर्ज)—I have applied for *loan* from the Provident Funds.
Lone *(lonely*; अकेला)—He is the *lone* male member of that family.
Loath *(unwilling*; अनिच्छुक)—He is *loath* to help me.
Loathe *(to detest*; घृणा करना)—I *loathe* the very sight of able-bodied beggars.
Loose *(not fastened*; ढीला)—He wears *loose* and baggy trousers.
Lose *(to be deprived of* ; खोना)—Why do you *lose* patience?
Luxuriant *(strong in growth*; बहुत ज्यादा)—Have you seen the *luxuriant* vegetation of the tropics?
Luxurious *(very comfortable*; आरामतलब)—He leads a *luxurious* life.
Magnate *(leading man of business*; प्रभावशाली व्यापारी)—Dalmia is a business *magnate*.
Magnet *(loadstone*; चुंबक)—A *magnet* attracts metals.
Main *(chief*; मुख्य)—What was the *main* cause of that explosion?
Mane *(long hair on the neck of an animal*; अयाल)—This horse has a fine *mane*.
Maize *(corn*; मक्का)—They grow *maize* in this field.
Maze *(network of lines, path*; चक्करोंवाला रास्ता)—You can find a *maze* of lanes in old Delhi.
Male (मर्द)—There is no *male* member in this house.
Mail *(an express train*; एक्सप्रेस ट्रेन)—He left for Delhi by the Punjab *mail*.
Mare *(female horse*; घोड़ी)—He has purchased a *mare*.
Mere *(only*; केवल)—Munni is a *mere* child.
Marry (शादी करना)—He will *marry* the girl of his choice.
Merry *(to make mirth*; प्रसन्न)—Eat, drink and be *merry*.
Marshal *(a military rank*; मार्शल, सेना का उच्च अधिकारी)—Who is the Field *Marshal* of the Indian army ?
Martial *(brave*; बहादुर, जंगी)—The Jats are a *martial* race.
Maund (मन)—He has bought *maunds* of wheat.
Mound *(mass of piled up earth*; टीला)—In the past *mounds* were built for defensive purposes.
Mead *(meadow*; चरागाह)—Lucy was found wandering in the *mead*.
Meed *(deserved praise*; उचित प्रशंसा)—Dinkerji got *meed* for his lyrics.
Mean *(low, base*; नीच)—He is a *mean* fellow.
Mien *(appearance*; रंगढंग)—He is a man of pleasing *mien*.
Medal (पदक)—He was awarded a gold *medal* for his outstanding work.
Meddle *(to interfere*; बाधा देना)—Don't *meddle* in my affairs.
Memorable *(worth remembering*; याद रखने योग्य)—The 15th of August 1947 is a *memorable* day for us.

Memorial (स्मारक)—Let us see the war *memorial.*

Mesh *(network*; जाली)—He is entangled in the *meshes* of political intrigue.

Mess *(confusion*; गड्डमगड्ड)—Everything is in a *mess.*

Metal (धातु)—Iron is a *metal.*

Mettle *(endurance and courage*; जीवटवाला)—Hillary is a man of *mettle.*

Meter *(apparatus which measures*; मापक)—It is an electricity *meter.*

Metre *(unit of length*; मीटर)—Let me take two *metre* of this cloth.

Might *(strength*; ताकत)—He did it with all his *might.*

Mite *(small, modest contribution*; न्यूनातिन्यून दान)—We should contribute our *mite* to the welfare scheme.

Mince *(cut into small pieces*; टुकड़े करना)—He *minced* meat with a knife.

Means *(method, process*; साधन)—All possible *means* have been tried.

Miner *(a man who works in a mine*; खनक)—The *miners* work underground.

Minor *(less important*; छोटा)—He has played only a *minor* role in this film.

Moan *(low sound of pain*; कराहना)—The wounded man is *moaning.*

Mown *(cut with a scythe*; काटना)—The lawn has been *mown.*

Momentary *(lasting for a moment*; क्षणिक)—It was nothing but a *momentary* lapse.

Momentous *(important*; महत्त्वपूर्ण)—It is a *momentous* decision.

Moral (नैतिक)—*Moral* standards have gone down.

Morale *(temper, state of the mind*; आत्मविश्वास)—We boosted up their *morale.*

Morning (सुबह)—He left for New York this *morning.*

Mourning *(grief*; दुःख, शोक)—The widow was in deep *mourning.*

Nap *(short sleep*; नींद की झपकी)—He takes a *nap* after lunch on a hot day.

Nape *(back of the neck*; गर्दन का पिछला भाग)—I have a slight pain in the *nape.*

Navvy *(unskilled workman employed for digging*; अप्रशिक्षित उत्खनक)—Many a *navvy* was employed for digging a canal.

Navy (जल-सेना)—He has joined the Indian *Navy.*

Naughty *(wicked*; नटखट)—He is a *naughty* boy.

Knotty *(difficult to solve*; कठिन)—It is a *knotty* problem.

Neat *(clean*; साफ)—It is a *neat* and clean locality.

Knit (बुनना)—Let me *knit* stockings out of wool.

Not (नहीं)—I am *not* interested in cricket.

Knot (गाँठ)—Let me tie a *knot* in this rope.

Nun (संन्यासिनी)—There are many *nuns* in this convent.

None (कोई नहीं)—*None* of the three boys came.

Oar (पतवार)—The *oar* fell off the hands of the sailors.

Ore *(mineral*; कच्ची धातु)—Singhbhum is rich in iron *ores.*

Odour *(smell*; गंध)—The *odour* of ammonia is pungent.

Order *(command*; आदेश देना)—I *ordered* his dismissal.

Official (सरकारी)—He is on an *official* tour of this district.

Officious *(meddlesome*; दस्तंदाज)—I don't like the *officious* civil servants.

Ordinance *(statute, rule made by authority*; खास कानून)—A new *ordinance* has been passed.

Ordnance *(munitions*; गोला-बारूद)—There is an *ordnance* factory at Munger.

Pack *(a bundle of things*; *packet*; गड्डी)—Give me a *pack* of playing cards.

Peck *(strike with the beak*; चोंच मारना)—Hens are *pecking* at the corn.

Pail *(a vessel for carrying liquid*; बाल्टी)—He brought a *pail* of fresh water from the well.

Pale *(bloodless, having little colour*; पीला)—He turned *pale* on hearing the news.

Pair *(two things of the same kind*; जोड़ा)—He purchased a *pair* of shoes.

Pare *(to cut the outer part, or edge*; काटना)—Let me *pare* my fingernails.

Pane *(single sheet of glass in a window*; शीशे की पट्टी)—He has broken the glass *panes*.

Pain (दर्द)—The patient is crying with *pain*.

Paper (कागज)—He wrote his name on a piece of *paper*.

Pepper (गोलमिर्च)—We use *pepper* to make food tasteful.

Pause *(short interval*; रुकावट, ठहराव)—There was a *pause* in their conversation.

Paws *(animal's feet*; पंजा)—We took the thorns out of the *paws* of our dog.

Peace (शांति)—There is no *peace* in this world.

Piece (टुकड़ा)—The dog is carrying a *piece* of meat.

Peak *(top*; चोटी)—Which is the highest *peak* of the world?

Pick *(gather*; चुनना)—He is *picking* pebbles.

Peal *(loud ringing of a bell*; घंटी की गूँज)—The bells are *pealing*.

Peel *(to strip off the skin*; छिलका छुड़ाना)—He is *peeling* off an orange.

Pill *(tablet of medicine*; गोली)—It is too bitter a *pill* to gulp.

Pear (नाशपाती)—*Pear* is a juicy fruit.

Peer *(look closely*; घूरना)—He *peered* into dark corners.

People (लोग)—The *people* of this country are hard-working.

Pupil (शिष्य)—The teacher and his *pupils* are in the class.

Persecute *(treat cruelly*; सताना)—He *persecuted* those who did not fall in line with his views.

Prosecute *(continue with*; जारी रखना)—He is keen about *prosecuting* his studies.

Personal *(private*; निजी)—I have something *personal* to discuss with you.

Personnel *(staff*; कर्मचारी वर्ग)—There were three Indian airlines *personnel* present on that occasion.

Petrol (पेट्रोल)—The price of *petrol* has risen high.

Patrol *(guard*; गश्त लगाना)—The army is *patrolling* this riot-torn town.

Plane *(flat or level surface*; समतल)—It is a *plane* surface.

Plain *(simple*; सादा)—He believes in *plain* living and high thinking.

Pole (खंभा)—Let us fix a *pole* here.

Poll *(election*; मतदान)—There is no need for mid-term *poll* now.

Pond *(tank*; तालाब)—This *pond* abounds in fish.

Pound (पौंड)—Shylock demanded a *pound* of Antonio's flesh.

Popular *(famous*; विख्यात)—He is the most *popular* teacher of our college.

Populous *(thickly populated*; घनी आबादीवाला)—Calcutta is the most *populous* city of India.

Pour (उड़ेलना)—Please *pour* a cup of tea for me, too.

Pore (छेद)—Your brother is sweating from every *pore*.

Practice *(way of doing something*; अभ्यास)—The *practice* of closing shops on Sundays is quite common.

Practise *(do something repeatedly*; अभ्यास करना)—He *practises* what he preaches.

Pray (प्रार्थना करना)—Let us *pray* to God for His mercy.

Prey (शिकार)—An eagle is devouring its *prey*.

Precede *(to go before*; पहले होना)—Did you mark the calm that *preceded* the storm?

Proceed *(to go onward*; आगे बढ़ना)—He *proceeded* on leave on medical grounds.

Prescribe *(advise the use of*; नुसखा बताना)—The doctor has *prescribed* this medicine for you.

Proscribe *(denounce as dangerous*; गैरकानूनी करार देना)—Cheap books with nude photographs should be *proscribed*.

President (राष्ट्रपति)—Who is the *President* of India?

Precedent *(earlier happening taken as an example*; पूर्व दृष्टांत)—Is there a *precedent* for what has happened?

Principal (प्राचार्य)—Who is the *principal* of your college?

Principle (सिद्धांत)—He is a man of *principle*.

Prophecy *(a prediction*; भविष्यवाणी)—I do not believe in *prophecy*.

Prophesy *(to foretell*; भविष्यवाणी करना)—They *prophesied* that war would soon break out.

Propriety *(fitness*; औचित्य)—I questioned the *propriety* of granting him this concession.

Property (संपत्ति)—His *property* has been confiscated.

Pull *(to draw*; खींचना)—The horse is *pulling* a heavy cart.

Pool *(small area of still water*; पानी से भरा खंडक)—After the rains there were *pools* on the roads.

Quack *(fake doctor*; जाली डाक्टर)—He is a *quack* and not a qualified doctor.

Quake *(shake*; काँपना)—The ground *quaked* under his feet.

Quell *(suppress*; दमन करना)—Macbeth *quelled* the rebellion of the Thane of Cowder.

Quail *(feel or show fear*; भय से थरथराना)—Her heart *quailed* on listening to the booming of cannons.

Quiet (शांत)—You must keep *quiet.*

Quite *(completely*; बिल्कुल)—I *quite* agree with you.

Quote *(repeat or write*; हवाला देना)—He *quoted* a lyric of Wordsworth.

Court (अदालत, अवसर देना)—He is an employee of the civil *court.* He is prepared to *court* any danger.

Rain (वर्षा)—It does not normally *rain* in December.

Rein (बागडोर)—He has taken over the *reins* of the new government.

Reign *(rule*; राज्य)—During the *reign* of Ashoka, India made tremendous progress.

Raise *(lift up*; उठाना)—Can you *raise* this log of wood?

Rays (किरणें)—The *rays* of the sun struck the earth with torrid power.

Raze *(destroy*; ढाहना)—The whole town was *razed* to the ground.

Rapt *(enraptured*; पूरे ध्यान से)—I listened to her song with *rapt* attention.

Wrapt *(lost in something*; लीन)—He is *wrapt* up in pleasurable contemplation.

Reap (काटना)—They are *reaping* the corn.

Rip *(tear or cut*; फाड़ना)—He *ripped* the letter open.

Recourse *(seek help from*; सहारा लेना)—I forbade him to have a *recourse* to the money-lender.

Resources *(wealth*; धन)—We must exploit the natural *resources* of our country.

Rest (आराम)—Let us take *rest* for an hour or so.

Wrest *(take away by force*; छीन लेना)—I *wrested* the initiative from him.

Reveal *(disclose*; जाहिर करना)—He *revealed* the whole secret to me.

Revel *(make merry*; मौज उड़ाना)—These birds *revel* in muddy water.

Right (अधिकार)—They are fighting for their *rights.*

Rite *(a religious ceremony*; क्रिया-कर्म)—His last *rites* were performed by his eldest son.

Riot *(carnage*; दंगा)—Many innocent people were killed in that caste *riot.*

Rowed (नाव खेकर)—They *rowed* me across the river.
Rod (डंडा)—He beat me with an iron *rod*.
Rob (लूटना)—They tried to *rob* him of all his belongings.
Robe *(dress*; पोशाक)—The king was in royal *robes*.
Roll *(to turn over and over*; लुढ़कना)—The coin fell and *rolled* under the table.
Role (काम)—He has played a key *role* in this election.
Root (जड़)—This plant has taken *root*.
Route *(way*; रास्ता)—This is the shortest *route* to the Railway station.
Rose (गुलाब का फूल)—What a lovely *rose* it is!
Rows (कतार)—They are sitting in *rows*.
Secret *(hidden, unknown matter*; गुप्त बात)—He alone knows my *secret*.
Secrete *(to flow out*; निकलना)—Saliva *secretes* from the mouth.
Seek *(look for, try to find*; तलाश करना)—Let us *seek* shelter from the rain.
Sick *(ill*; बीमार)—He is a *sick* man.
Sensual *(given up to the pleasures of the senses*; इंद्रियलोलुप, कामुक)—He is all for *sensual* pleasure.
Sensuous *(appealing to the senses*; इंद्रियग्राह्य)—Keats's poetry is *sensuous*.
Shade (छाया)—These trees give us a pleasant *shade*.
Shed *(roughly made structure, to let fall*; छप्पर, गिराना)—It is a coal-*shed*. Trees *shed* their leaves.
Share (हिस्सा)—You will have no *share* in the profits.
Sheer *(complete, absolute*; निरा)—It is a *sheer* waste of time.
Show (दिखाना)—*Show* me your certificates.
Sow (बोना)—Let me *sow* these seeds.
Soar *(fly*; ऊँचा उड़ना)—The eagle can *soar* higher and still higher.
Swore (कसम खाया)—She *swore* that she would tell the truth.
Soared (ऊँचा उड़ा)—The eagle *soared* high up in the sky.
Sword (तलवार)—The Sikhs carry *swords* wherever they go.
Sociable *(friendly*; मिलनसार)—He is very courteous and *sociable*.
Social *(relating to society*; सामाजिक)—Man is a *social* being.
Sole *(one and only*; एकमात्र)—The *sole* cause of our failure is lack of drive and initiative.
Soul (आत्मा)—I believe in the immortality of the *soul*.
Spiritual *(of the spirit or soul*; आत्मिक)—A saint is concerned about our *spiritual* welfare.
Spirituous (मादक)—He deals in *spirituous* liquors.
Stationary *(not moving*; स्थिर, अचल)—The sun is *stationary*.
Stationery (लेखन सामग्री)—There is a *stationery* shop in our village.

Statue *(image*; मूर्ति)—It is the *statue* of Netaji Subhas Chandra Bose.
Statute *(law passed by law-making body*; कानून)—You must follow the *statute* of Patna University.
Story (कहानी)—He has written a short *story* of exceptional beauty.
Storey (तल्ला)—It is a house of two *storeys*.
Straight (सीधा)—He went *straight* to the Railway station.
Strait *(narrow passage of water connecting two seas*; जलडमरूमध्य)—They passed through the *straits* of Gibraltar.
Sweat (पसीना)—Wipe the *sweat* off your brow.
Sweet (मीठा)—This fruit has a *sweet* taste.
Tale *(story*; कहानी)—Life, says Shakespeare, is a *tale* told by an idiot.
Tell (कहना)—*Tell* me the whole truth.
Tail (पूँछ)—This monkey has a long *tail*.
Tamper *(interfere with*; गोलमाल करना)—Someone has *tampered* with the seal of this letter.
Temper *(state or condition of the mind*; स्वभाव)—He is in a good *temper*.
Taste (स्वाद)—He has no *taste* for classical music.
Test (जाँचना)—Let me *test* your knowledge of the subject.
Taught (पढ़ाया)—He *taught* me English grammar.
Taut *(tightly stretched*; खूब कसा हुआ)—Pull the string till it is *taut*.
Tout (दलाल)—This lawyer has many *touts* to lure clients.
Team (टीम)—Our *team* won the Shri Krishna Gold Cup.
Teem *(to be present in large number, full of*; भरा हुआ)—Fish *teem* in this river. This place is *teeming* with life.
Tear (फाड़ना)—Let me *tear* this sheet of paper to pieces.
Tier *(row*; तह)—It is a three-*tier* shelf.
Temporal *(worldly*; सांसारिक)—He always runs after *temporal* pleasures.
Temporary *(not permanent*; अस्थायी)—He is working on a *temporary* post.
Tenor *(general routine or direction of one's life*; गति, क्रम)—The even *tenor* of his life has been disturbed.
Tenure *(period*; अधिकार की अवधि)—The *tenure* of office of the President is five years.
Through (होकर)—The thieves came in *through* the window.
Thorough *(complete*; पूर्ण)—He has made a *thorough* study of this problem.
Throne (सिंहासन)—Akbar came to the *throne* after the death of Humayun.
Thrown (फेंका)—They have *thrown* stones at me.
Tide (ज्वार-भाटा)—You cannot ignore the rising *tide* of public discontent.
Tied (बाँधा)—Who has *tied* this knot?
Tire (थकना)—He never *tires* of talking about his son.

Tyre (टायर)—You should change the *tyre* of this bicycle.

Tread (*walk*; चलना)—Don't *tread* on the flower-beds.

Trade (व्यापार)—He is in the cotton *trade*.

Travel (यात्रा करना)—Let us *travel* round the world.

Travail (*pains of childbirth*; प्रसव-पीड़ा)—Have you ever seen a woman in *travail*?

Umpire (*referee*; निर्णायक)—You cannot question the decision of the *umpire*.

Empire (*dominion*; साम्राज्य)—The Moghul *Empire* fell to pieces.

Union (*act of uniting*; एकता)—*Union* is strength.

Unison (*agreement of sound*; स्वरसम्मति)—Lata and Usha sang in *unison*.

Urban (*of a city or town*; शहरी)—Now more stress is being laid on *urban* development.

Urbane (*refined, polite*; सभ्य, नम्र)—He is polished and *urbane*.

Vacation (*holidays*; छुट्टी)—I shall leave for my village home in the summer *vacation*.

Vocation (*special aptitude*; वृत्ति, मनोधारणा)—He has a little or no *vocation* for teaching.

Vain (*without use*; बेकार)—Don't bother about *vain* promises.

Vein (नस)—Warm blood runs through our *veins*.

Vane (*a weather-cock*; वायुदर्शक यंत्र)—You can know the direction of the wind by observing the *vane*.

Wane (*decrease*; घटना)—The moon waxes and *wanes*.

Variance (*disagreement*; विपरीत)—His actions are at *variance* with his thoughts.

Variation (*change*; मतभेद, परिवर्तन)—Mark the *variations* in public opinion.

Verbal (*spoken not written*; जबानी)—He gave a *verbal* assurance.

Verbose (*using more words than are needed*; शब्दाडंबर)—It is a *verbose* style and hence not to my liking.

Wage (*salary*; मजदूरी)—These labourers work on daily *wages*.

Wedge (फर्नी, पच्चड़)—You can split wood with a *wedge*.

Wait (प्रतीक्षा करना)—Please *wait* and watch.

Wet (भीगा हुआ)—He is *wet* through and through.

Weight (वजन)—What is the *weight* of this bundle?

Wail (*cry or complain*; विलाप करना)—She *wailed* over her misfortune.

Whale (*sea-animal*; ह्वेल मछली)—The sailors have caught a white *whale*.

Waist (कमर)—Her *waist* is slender.

Waste (बर्बाद करना)—Why do you *waste* your time?

Wave (*move to and fro*; हिलाना)—They *waved* their hands.

Waive (छोड़ना, हटाना)—The age limit should be *waived*.

Weak *(infirm*; कमजोर)—He is too *weak* to walk.
Week (सप्ताह)—There are seven days in a *week*.
Wick (बत्ती)—Trim the *wick* of this oil-lamp.
Whet *(sharpen*; तेज करना)—You should *whet* your knife on the stone.
Whit *(not the least, not at all*; तनिक भी नहीं)—I don't care a *whit* for him.
Wilful *(intentional*; जानबूझकर)—It is a case of *wilful* negligence.
Willing (इच्छुक)—He is *willing* to extend all help.
Wither *(fade*; मुरझाना)—All the flowers have *withered* away.
Whither *(where*; कहाँ)—*Whither* so fast?
Womanish *(effeminate*; स्त्रियों जैसा)—He is *womanish* in behaviour.
Womanly *(relating to a woman*; स्त्रियों के योग्य)—Portia possessed all the *womanly* qualities.
Wreath (माला)—He placed a *wreath* on the dead body.
Wreathe *(encircle*; लिपटना)—Mist *wreathed* the hill tops.
Writhe *(roll about in pain*; दर्द से छटपटाना)—The wounded man cried and *writhed*.

(2)

re-act	=	act again	re-mark	=	mark again
react	=	respond	remark	=	comment
re-call	=	call again	re-place	=	place again
recall	=	remember	replace	=	substitute for
re-cite	=	cite again	re-store	=	store again
recite	=	to say aloud from memory	restore	=	give back, bring back
re-dress	=	dress again	re-strain	=	strain again
redress	=	set right, remedy	restrain	=	hold back
re-form	=	form again	re-trace	=	trace again
reform	=	improve	retrace	=	go back
re-lease	=	lease again	re-turn	=	turn again
release	=	set free	return	=	come back, give back

Exercises

I. *Choose the correct word to fill in the blanks:*

1. I've had more than a fair ... of troubles in my time.
   (a) *sheer* (b) *share* (c) *shear*
2. Let me ... through the mist to help find out the right path.
   (a) *pear* (b) *pare* (c) *peer*
3. Before you cut up the onions, please ... them off.
   (a) *peel* (b) *pill* (c) *pale*
4. The wax began to melt as soon as the ... started burning.
   (a) *wick* (b) *whisk* (c) *week*

5. There were ... of unemployed persons at the gate of the Employment Exchange.
   (a) *herd* (b) *rows* (c) *rays*
6. His funeral ... were performed by his eldest son.
   (a) *riots* (b) *rights* (c) *rites*
7. The boat capsized and all the pilgrims were ...
   (a) *bunch* (b) *drowned* (c) *drenched*
8. There was a ... of green grass in that sandy tract of land.
   (a) *sunk* (b) *twig* (c) *drenched*
9. He ... his hands to greet us at the airport.
   (a) *waved* (b) *waived* (c) *weighed*
10. Gird up your ... to face the situation manfully.
    (a) *mien* (b) *lion* (c) *loin*
11. The downfall of this dictatorial regime is ...
    (a) *imminent* (b) *eminent* (c) *urgent*
12. Don't ... me to distraction.
    (a) *boar* (b) *wore* (c) *bore*

II. *Select words from those given in brackets to fill in the blanks:*

1. We get milk from the nearby ... *(dairy, diary)*
2. The ... of love never runs smooth. *(coarse, course)*
3. You are not ... for this post. *(eligible, illegible)*
4. The ... has left no property. *(diseased, deceased)*
5. Nothing can ... my opinion now. *(alter, altar)*
6. Let us ... what we preach. *(practice, practise)*
7. He is willing to ... his claim to this property. *(wave, waive)*
8. ... the right word from this list. *(Pick, Peak)*
9. Birla is a business ... *(magnet, magnate)*
10. That old lady is ... her hair. *(dyeing, dying)*

III. *Tick the right word:*

1. The sun sets in the *west / waste / waist.*
2. He was *cot / quote / caught* red-handed.
3. Who will twist the *tale / tail* of this monkey?
4. He has *re-covered / recovered* from his illness.
5. He *rowed / rode* me across the Ganges.

Answers:

I. 1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (a) 4. (a) 5. (b) 6. (c) 7. (b) 8. (b) 9. (a) 10. (c) 11. (a) 12. (c).

II. 1. *dairy* 2. *course* 3. *eligible* 4. *deceased* 5. *alter* 6. *practise* 7. *waive* 8. *Pick* 9. *magnate* 10. *dyeing*.

III. 1. west 2. caught 3. tail 4. recovered 5. rowed

CHAPTER 6

Words Often Mistaken for One Another (Brain Teasers)

There are quite a few words that pose problem. They are very similar in meaning but quite different in usage. There is, in fact, a subtle distinction which we generally miss. And we often mistake one for the other. It is time we learnt the exact shade of their meaning and their correct use.

1. Amount, Number

Amount refers to a quantity of something (a singular noun) that cannot be counted – a large *amount* of money. *Number* refers to countable items (a plural noun). With most plurals it is better to use *number*–a large *number* of mistakes.

The *amount* of money paid is none of my concern.
A large *number* of teachers have gone on strike.

Note: A *number* of (many) is plural in sense and takes a plural verb. (A *number* of people *were* shot dead.) The *number* of (= a mathematical or numerical figure) is singular. It takes a singular verb. (The *number* of boys present *is* very small.)

2. Ancient, Old

'Ancient' is the opposite of 'modern' whereas 'old' is the opposite of 'young'. Moreover 'ancient' refers to very old things. And 'old' can at times be used in the case of a very young child as well. As for example,

The *ancient* Rome was the cradle of civilization.
The *ancient* Mariner narrated his story of adventure.
Death overtakes all alike, the young and the *old*.
My baby is only two months *old*.

3. Anticipate, Expect

To 'anticipate' is to guess or imagine in advance what will happen, and take the necessary action to face it; as

I tried to *anticipate* the kind of questions they were likely to ask me.

To 'expect' is to believe or think that something will happen or come; as-

We are *expecting* a letter from our Boss.

4. **Anxious, Eager**

Anxious means 'nervous' or 'worried' and is usually followed by about. *Eager* means 'looking forward'. It is usually followed by *to*; as—

I am terribly *anxious about* these children.
Our company is *eager to* expand into new markets.

5. **Bank, Shore, Coast, Beach**

The place where the land meets the water can be either the *bank* or the *shore* or the *coast* or the *beach*. The edge of a river is called its *bank* whereas the edge of a sea is its *shore*. The land bordering the sea is *coast*. We use it when we think of places on maps, of weather, or naval defence. A *beach* is part of the *shore* that is smooth, without rocks or cliffs. The only word that can be used for lakes is *shore*; as

Calcutta is situated on the *bank* of the river Hoogly.
He has a house on the *shore* of lake Mansarowar.
Our ship is fast heading towards the *shore*.
Our ship sailed from port to port along the *coast*.

6. **Beautiful, Handsome**

Beautiful and *pretty* are generally used for women, children and things, but not usually for men. We use *handsome* for men; as–

Look at that *beautiful* girl.
How *pretty* the Chinese doll is!
Lo ! there comes a *pretty* child.
He is a *handsome* young man.

We can use *handsome* for women having a fine figure, vigour and dignity; as-

Jane Austen was a *handsome* lady with chiselled face and a fine figure.

7. **Cause, Reason**

Cause is something that produces a result or an effect whereas *reason* is something that justifies or explains a result; as—

She is the *cause* of all my unhappiness.
The *reason* of my silence is my illness.

8. **Ceiling, Roof**

Ceiling is the undersurface or the overhead interior lining of a room. *Roof* is the top covering of a building, bus, car or tent; as—

The *ceiling* of my drawing-room is being painted.
The *roof* of his house is leaking.

Even the *roof* of this bus is crowded with passengers.

9. Client, Customer

A person who goes to a solicitor or an architect and pays for his help or advice is a *client*. People who buy goods from shopkeepers and tradesmen are *customers*; as—

A successful solicitor has a large number of *clients*.
This shopkeeper is all attention to his *customers*.

10. Cold and Cool, Hot and Warm

Cold suggests a lower temperature than *cool*. Temperature is uncomfortably low. *Cool* suggests a pleasantly low temperature; as —

I can't stand this *cold* wave.
A nice *cool* breeze is blowing.

Hot, likewise, suggests a higher temperature than *warm*. It is often uncomfortable. But *warm* is a pleasantly high temperature; as—

You can't work long hours on a *hot* day.
It was *warm*, but not hot, day before yesterday.

11. Contagious, Infectious

Contagious is used for a disease spreading by contact. *Infectious* is used for a disease that can be spread by means of germs carried in the atmosphere or in water; as—

Measles is highly *contagious*.
Cold is *infectious*.

12. Convince, Persuade

To *convince* someone means to change his or her opinion; to *persuade* someone means to move him or her to action. *Convince* is properly followed by *of* or *that*, whereas, *persuade* is followed by *to*; as—

We could not *convince* him *of* our innocence.
We persuaded him *to* concede our demands.

13. Custom, Habit

Customs are social and *habits* are personal. A *habit* is something a person has been doing for a long time. *Custom* is something that belongs to a large number of people of the same sort: all Christians or all Hindus. For example,

Don't let yourself get into bad *habits*.
Social *customs* vary from country to country.

14. Delusion, Illusion

Delusion is false opinion or belief which is sincerely believed to be true. *Illusion* is false idea or belief which appears to be true; as—

He is under the *delusion* that he is the wealthiest man of this place.

Macbeth felt that the Birnam wood was moving. It was an optical *illusion*.

15. Dirty, Filthy

Dirty is a general word indicating dirt of any kind: *dirty* hands, *dirty* clothes. It can also refer to moral dirt: *dirty* jokes, *dirty* stories. *Filthy* means 'extremely dirty; covered with filth.' It is a much stronger term than *dirty*.

He put the *dirty* dishes in the sink.
Let me take my *filthy* boots off.
Nobody relishes your *filthy* jokes.

16. Discover, Invent

Discover means 'to find out; get knowledge of; bring to view something existing but not yet known'. *Invent* means 'to create or design something not existing before'; as—

It was Columbus who *discovered* America.
Marconi *invented* the wireless.

17. Disinterested, Uninterested

Disinterested means 'impartial'. *Uninterested* means 'bored' or 'lacking interest'.

As a *disinterested* observer, who do you think is right?
I am completely *uninterested* in cricket. (I do not find cricket at all interesting)

18. Effeminate, Womanly, Womanish

Effeminate and *womanish* are derogatory terms used for a man having qualities that are regarded as typical of women. Both the words mean 'unmanly'. *Womanly* refers to qualities that are regarded as typical of or suitable to woman; as—

A hen-pecked husband is generally *effeminate*.
Art thou a man? Thy form cries out thou art: thy tears are *womanish*. SHAKESPEARE
She showed a *womanly* concern for the aggrieved family.

19. Egoist, Egotist

Egoist means 'a selfish person, one who puts his interest first'. *Egotist* means 'a self-centred person, one who is continuously speaking of himself or trying to attract attention to himself.'

An egoist is all too eager to serve his own end.
He is an *egotist* for he always blows his own trumpet.

20. Empty, Vacant

Empty means 'containing nothing'. It refers to an object; an *empty* box, an *empty* room. *Vacant* also means 'empty'. It is used for a place or space,

especially one that is usually filled or intended to be filled. There is a *vacant* place over there. It is also used of a job not at present filled. I have applied for the *vacant* post. It also means lack of interest or serious thought. A *vacant* mind breeds depression.

An *empty* vessel sounds much.
Is this seat *vacant*?

21. Envious, Jealous

Both these words refer to a person who wants to have what someone else has. He is, in fact, unhappy about another person's possession of something that he himself would like to possess; as—

He is *jealous* of their success.
He is *envious* of their success.

Jealous, however, refers to a stronger and more unpleasant feeling. In some cases, it means unhappy and angry because someone who should like you, likes someone else more. When I kiss the baby, it makes the older child *jealous*.

22. Especially, Specially

Especially means 'particularly' or 'more than other things'; *specially* means 'for a specific reason'.

I *especially* treasure the memory of days long gone by.
These boots were made *specially* for me.

23. Explicit, Implicit

Explicit means 'stated outright', 'clear and fully expressed'. It refers to a statement, rule, etc. *Implicit* means means 'implied or understood though not directly expressed'; as—

I gave you *explicit* instructions not to tamper with the records.
Your request for information contains an *implicit* threat.

24. Famous, Notorious

'*Famous*' means 'widely and favourably known'. '*Notorious*', on the other hand, is widely but only unfavourably known to the people in general; as—

Naushad is a *famous* music director.
Phulan Devi is a *notorious* dacoit.

25. Farther, Further

Farther refers to additional distance (How much *farther* is it to the Juhu beach?), and *further* refers to additional time or amount, or other abstract matter (I don't want to discuss this matter any *further*).

You are to use *further* (i) when the sense is 'additional' (*further* evidence, *further* information), or 'in addition' (Have you anything *further*

to say?), and (ii) when it is a verb meaning 'advance', 'promote' (to *further* one's own interests). As adjective or adverb denoting distance, *farther* is the correct word.

26. Gather, Collect, Accumulate, Amass

You can '*gather* things which are irregularly distributed, or not clearly separated from one another': to *gather* information/flowers/crops. *Collect* is like *gather*. It suggests that the things you are gathering are separate, or can be dealt with one at a time: *Collect* the magazines and put them on the shelf/I am *collecting* data for my research project. It (*collect*) is used especially when you want to keep things together to form a collection. He *collects* coins/stamps. If you *accumulate* things, you collect more and more of them over a period of time (often without having a strong intention to do this): I've *accumulated* quite a lot of rare paintings over the years. *Amass*, however, is rather formal. It is used especially of money, goods or power collected gradually, but in very large amounts. Harshad Mehta has *amassed* a fortune through share-market.

27. Glance, Glimpse

Glance means 'to look at something quickly' whereas *glimpse* means 'to see by chance, just for a moment'; as—

> I can tell at a *glance* what ails this man.
> I caught a *glimpse* of the Rashtrapati Bhawan as I drove quickly past.

28. Hear, Listen

Hear means 'to perceive sound, etc., with the ears.' *Listen* means 'try to hear, pay attention to.'

> The deaf can't *hear*.
> Please *listen* to what I am saying.
> We *listened* but heard nothing.

29. Hide, Skin

The raw and undressed skin of large animals (like horses, elephants, etc.) used for commercial purpose is called *hide*. The thin outer covering on the body of a man or an animal or a fruit is *skin*; as—

> This leather factory gets two hundred tons of *hide* as its raw material.
> He has specialized in *skin* diseases.
> Let me peel the *skin* of this orange.

30. House, Home

A *house* is a building for people to live in. And the place where you live in is your *home*, whatever type of *house* it is. Your *home* is the place to which you belong and where you feel comfortable. It also means the place where one is born and habitually lives.

He has shifted to a newly built *house*.
Bilaspur is my *home* but I'm living in Delhi just now.

31. Hurt, Injured, Wounded

Injured and *hurt* both mean physical damage caused by an accident. But *wounded* implies physical damage caused in an attack; as—

In a train accident twenty passengers were *injured*.
She was badly *hurt* in a bus and a truck collision.
The enemy attacked our outpost and *wounded* five soldiers.

32. Imply, Infer

Imply means 'to give or make a suggestion; to express, show, or mean indirectly'. But *infer* means 'conclude, reach an opinion from facts or reasoning.' Writers or speakers *imply* something whereas the listener or the reader *infers* it; as—

Dick's letters *imply* that he is doing brisk business.
Am I to *infer* from your remarks that you think I am a liar?

33. Incident, Accident

Incident refers to event, especially of less importance than others; happening that attracts general attention. But *accident* means 'an unexpected, unpleasant occurrence'; as—

Tell me about the strangest *incident* of your life.
Drive slowly lest you should meet with an *accident*.

34. Lazy, Idle

Lazy means 'unwilling to work', 'doing little work'. *Idle* means 'not working' or 'not being used'. The two words are not synonymous.

Rajo is a very *lazy* boy. (doesn't like working)
He is sitting *idle*. (not working)
He spent many *idle* hours (did nothing) during the holidays.
That machine is lying *idle*. (not being used)

35. Moral, Morale

As a noun, *moral* means 'ethical conclusion' or 'lesson'. *Morale* means 'spirit' or 'state of mind', or 'the condition of courage, determination and pride in the mind of a person, team, army, etc.', as—

The *moral* of this story is that death is inevitable.
The *morale* of our soldiers is high.

36. Pair, Couple

A pair means (i) two things of the same kind to be used together: a *pair* of shoes/gloves; (ii) single article with two parts always joined: a *pair* of scissors/trousers/tongs; (iii) two persons closely associated, e.g., an engaged or married couple: the happy *pair* (=two newly married persons).

Any two things of the same kind can be spoken of as a *couple*: I saw a couple of rats in the garden. It also means (i) two people who live or spend time together, especially a husband and a wife: look at the newly married couple; (ii) a few; several; small number: She'll be back in a *couple* of minutes.

37. Pick, Choose

Pick suggests merely selection, sometimes in a rather perfunctory manner. *Choose* suggests careful thought and deliberation, and the weighing of one thing against another. We *pick* a winner and *pick* a football team, but *choose* a birthday or wedding present, *choose* a site for a new building, *choose* a name for a child, and *choose* one of the several things that are offered; as—

He has been *picked* for the Indian Cricket Team.
She *chose* her words carefully hoping to avoid a quarrel.

38. Practical, Practicable

Practical means 'useful' or 'sensible'. He lacks *practical* experience. *Practicable* means 'capable of being put into practice'. It is not used for people.

Be *practical,* we can't afford both a car and a house.
Is it *practicable* to make the desert bloom?

39. Price, Cost

Price means the amount of money for which a thing is offered: What *price* did you pay for the house? *Cost* (n) is like *price*, but is used less for objects, and more (i) for services: the cost of having the car painted (ii) for general things: the cost of living. The amount of money we pay for something is what it *costs* (v) us.

The *price* of gold has risen sky-high.
How much did this motorbike *cost* you?

40. Proceed, Precede

The verb *proceed* means 'to move on; to continue in a course of action or set of actions.' But the verb *precede* means 'to come before; to happen just before'; as—

We can now *proceed* to the visiting room.
My work is *proceeding* according to plan.
My name *precedes* yours in the alphabet.
The flash of lightning *preceded* the sound of thunder.

41. Race, Nation, State, Tribe

All these words stand for large groups into which human beings may be divided. The largest of these group is a *race*. It means 'a group of people of the same class or physical type'. A *nation* is 'a group of people who share a common history and usually a language, and usually but not always live in the same area'. A *state* is either a politically independent country, or one

of the *states* making up a country, such as Bengal, Bihar, Uttar Pradesh, etc. A *tribe* is 'a social group smaller than a *nation*, sharing the common customs and usually the same language, and often following an ancient way of life.'

We all belong to the Aryan *race*.
Do you know anything about the Indian *nations* of America?
The President spoke on radio to the *nation*.
Most former colonies have now become self-governing *states*.
He is a member of the Zulu *tribe*.

42. Rare, Scarce

Things that are uncommon, and perhaps valuable, are *rare*; a *rare* bird/coin/disease. Ordinary useful things that we have not got enough of, are *scarce*. It means 'not much or many compared with what is wanted'. Apples are *scarce* this season.

We can use *rare*, but not *scarce*, about time: One of my *rare* (=not happening often) visits to New York.

It is a *rare* bird (hard to come by).
Mango is *scarce* in winter, and costs a lot.

43. Referee, Umpire

A person who controls and regulates a basketball, or billiards or football or hockey or rugby or a boxing match is known as a *referee*. But an *umpire* is a person who regulates and controls the matches of either badminton or baseball or cricket or tennis or wrestling.

Raman was the *referee* of the Durand Cup Final.
The *umpire* Dicky Bird gave the batsman the benefit of doubt.

44. Rob, Steal

Things are *stolen* and people are *robbed*. The verb *steal* has, as its object, what is taken by the thief; as—

Somebody has *stolen* my scooter.
He *stole* a few antique coins from the museum.

The verb *rob* has, as its object, either the *person* whose things are taken, or the *place* from where things are taken. The object of the verb *rob* is never the things that are taken; as—

The bank was *robbed* last week.
He has been *robbed* of all his belongings.

45. Sensual, Sensuous

A person addicted to bodily pleasures derived out of food, drink and sex is termed *sensual*. A person fond of beautiful sights and sounds and of objects which are pleasant to smell, taste and touch is a *sensuous* person; as—

He is all for purely *sensual* pleasures.
Keats's poetry is remarkably *sensuous*.

46. Shade, Shadow

Shade is any place sheltered from the sun. And the dark shape made by the *shade* of something is *shadow*; as—

The tree gives us pleasant *shade* in summer.
The tree cast its *shadow* on the wall.

47. Smell, Stink

A *smell* can be good or bad but a *stink* is always bad, offensive smell, especially a very strong one; as—

The *smell* of these roses is sweet.
I can't stand the pungent *smell* of this acid.
The *stink* of burning rubber is unbearable.

48. Smile, Grin

A *smile* is 'an expression of the face showing amusement or happiness'. A *grin* is 'a very wide smile which usually shows the teeth'; as—

He *smiled* and then accepted the proposal.
She stood there with an embarrassed *grin* on her face.

49. Storm, Cyclone, Typhoon, Hurricane

The general word for rough and especially windy weather conditions is *storm*. A large, violent storm with a circular wind is called a *cyclone* in the tropics, a *typhoon* in the western pacific, and a *hurricane* in the western Atlantic ocean.

A fierce *storm* is raging.
This year a *cyclone* took a heavy toll of life in Bangla Desh.
The Western Pacific region, was lashed by *typhoon*.
The coastal region of the Western Atlantic ocean was laid waste by a *hurricane*.

50. Tall, High

Tall refers to heights from base to top, in proportion to breadth: a *tall* tree, a *tall* person. *High* refers to distance above—usually though not always, above the ground or the floor: a *high* hill, a *high* window, etc.

We use *high* (opposite *low*) for measurement of most things (not people), especially when we are thinking of distance above the ground. We use *tall* (opposite *short*) for people, and also for things that are high and narrow.

He is rather *tall* for his age.
How *high* is that mountain?

51. Travel, Journey, Voyage

Travel means 'moving from place to place.' If a person moves from place to place over a period of time, we speak of his or her *travels*. A *journey* is the time spent and the distance covered in going from one particular place to another. A *voyage* has the same meaning but is only by sea; as—

He returned home after years of *travel* abroad.
It was a long *journey* across the desert.
The *voyage* from Bombay to England takes a lot of time.

52. Wind, Breeze, Gust, Gale

Wind means 'a moving current of air'. A *breeze* is usually 'a pleasant gentle wind'. A *gust* is 'a strong, sudden rush of air' whereas a *gale* is 'a very strong wind'; as—

Cold *wind* is blowing.
The morning *breeze* is good for health.
A *gust* of wind blew his hat away.
Our chimney was blown down in a *gale*.

Exercise

Say which of the two or three words within the brackets the most suited to the meaning of that sentence:

1. As I am dog-tired, I can't go any (*further, farther*).
2. He is under the (*illusion, delusion*) that he is the best sportsman.
3. Let us (*proceed, precede*) with the work on hand.
4. How much did this scooter (*cost, price, value*) you?
5. Dr Ravi is keen about specialising in (*hide, skin*) diseases.
6. Copper is not as (*heavy, weighty*) a metal as lead is.
7. Last night she feil (*sick, ill, indisposed*) when she went to bed.
8. How is the (*climate, weather, season*) today?
9. Have you ever heard him (*laugh, smile*)?
10. He has written a sarcastic (*reply, rejoinder*) to an article denouncing his short story.

Answers: 1. further 2. delusion 3. proceed 4. cost 5. skin 6. heavy 7. sick 8. weather 9. laugh 10. rejoinder

---

CHAPTER 7

One-word Substitution

Words are like leaves, and where they most abound
Much fruit of sense beneath is rarely found.

—ALEXANDER POPE

Brevity, said Shakespeare, is the soul of wit. You have to be, then, precise and to the point. You just can't put your ideas across succinctly—without mincing words— unless you are direct and forthright. Too many words (*verbosity*) and roundabout statements (*circumlocution*) impede the smooth flow of thoughts and often create confusion. So, in exhibiting your sentiment by speech, the narrower the compass of words is, the more energetic is the impression.

You have, in English, different words for group of people in the different situations of life. As for example,

A COLLECTION OF PEOPLE

1. at a lecture or concert : *audience*
2. at a match : *spectators*
3. in the street : *crowd*
4. in a riot : *mob*
5. in a church, mosque, temple : *congregation*
6. in a rowdy scene : *rabble*
7. watching a TV programme : *viewers*
8. attending a funeral : *mourners*
9. listening to a broadcast programme : *listeners*

It is, therefore, advisable to study the list of one-word substitution to help add 'pep' to your expression.

1. A minister representing a sovereign or a state in a foreign country = *ambassador*
2. A person sent on a mission = *emissary*
3. A person who spends his money recklessly = *spendthrift*
4. A person who can neither read nor write = *illiterate*
5. A person who lives at the same time as another = *contemporary*
6. A lover of mankind = *philanthropist*

7. A lover of womankind = *philogynist*
8. A lover of oneself = *egoist*
9. A lover of others = *altruist*
10. A lover of food = *gourmand*
11. A person who loves his own country = *patriot*
12. A person who regards the whole world as his country = *cosmopolitan*
13. A person who believes in the total abolition of war = *pacifist*
14. A person who is fond of fighting = *bellicose*
15. A man who is womanish in his habits = *effeminate*
16. A person who is devoted to the welfare of women = *feminist*
17. One who is all-powerful = *omnipotent*
18. One who is present everywhere = *omnipresent*
19. One who knows everything = *omniscient*
20. One who believes in fate = *fatalist*
21. One who supplicates or entreats earnestly = *supplicant*
22. One who has narrow religious views = *bigot*
23. One who plays for pleasure = *amateur*
24. One who plays for money = *professional*
25. One who eats too much = *glutton*
26. One who feeds on vegetables = *vegetarian*
27. One who eats human flesh = *cannibal*
28. One who breaks images and idols = *iconoclast*
29. One who is over-enthusiastic about some religious principles or beliefs = *fanatic*
30. One who walks in sleep = *somnambulist*
31. One who talks in sleep = *somniloquent*
32. One who makes a scientific study of language = *linguist*
33. One who knows many languages = *polyglot*
34. One who enjoys another person's confidence = *confidant*
35. One who is appointed by parties to settle disputes = *arbitrator*
36. One who breaks in a house to steal = *burglar*
37. One who sails around stopping and robbing ships at sea = *pirate*
38. One who abstains from alcoholic drink = *teetotaller*
39. A person who leaves his own country and goes to live in another = *emigrant*
40. A person who comes to one country from another to settle = *immigrant*
41. To send out of one's native country = *expatriate*
42. One who leads others in any field = *pioneer*
43. One who commits the first act of attack = *aggressor*

44. One who speaks for others = *spokesman*
45. One who wastes money for luxury = *extravagant*
46. One who is unable to pay his debt = *insolvent / bankrupt*
47. One who abandons his religious faith = *apostate*
48. One who makes an eloquent public speech = *orator*
49. One who undergoes the penalty of death for persistence in his faith = *martyr*
50. A child whose parents are dead = *orphan*
51. A man whose wife is dead = *widower*
52. A woman whose husband is dead = *widow*
53. A person who takes advantage of every change for success, sometimes to other people's disadvantage = *opportunist*
54. A girl or woman who flirts, that is, tries to attract people and make advances in love simply to satisfy her vanity = *coquette*
55. A person who has a long experience of any occupation = *veteran*
56. A person who does clever tricks which appear magical = *conjuror*
57. A person who travels into or through a country for the purpose of learning about it = *explorer*
58. A disease that can be spread by touch = *contagious*
59. A disease that is found regularly in a particular place = *endemic*
60. A disease that causes death = *fatal*
61. A child born after the death of its father = *posthumous*
62. A child brought up by persons who are not its parents = *foster-child*
63. Having a tendency to break the law to do socially unacceptable things = *delinquent*
64. A disease caused by bacteria and passed from one person to another = *infectious*
65. A remedy for all kinds of diseases = *panacea*
66. A medicine that induces sleep = *narcotic*
67. An office which has no work but high salary = *sinecure*
68. A game or battle in which no party gains victory = *draw*
69. A roundabout way of expression = *circumlocution*
70. A story in which ideas are symbolized as people = *allegory*
71. A short simple story designed to teach a moral or religious lesson = *parable*

72. A short story in which animals or objects speak a story that gives wholesome moral lesson = *fable*
73. A talk between two people = *dialogue*
74. An old story about great events and people in ancient times, which may not be true = *legend*
75. A long speech for a single actor or actress, usually alone on a stage = *monologue*
76. An introduction to a long poem, a play, etc. = *prologue*
77. A speech made by one of the actors at the end of a play = *epilogue*
78. A string of beads used for prayer = *rosary*
79. The act of speaking aloud one's thoughts when alone = *soliloquy*
80. A speech which is delivered without any previous preparation = *extempore*
81. The first venture of a person = *maiden*
82. The life-history of a man written by himself = *autobiography*
83. The life-history of a man written by someone else = *biography*
84. Animals which live both on land and in water = *amphibians*
85. Animals which live in flocks = *gregarious*
86. Animals which give milk and suckle their young ones = *mammals*
87. An animal which lives on the flesh of others = *carnivorous*
88. Animals which live in water = *aquatic*
89. A style full of words = *verbose*
90. A style in which a writer displays his knowledge = *pedantic*
91. Repetition or writing word for word = *verbatim*
92. Matter written by hand = *manuscript*
93. Words opposite in meaning = *antonym*
94. Words different in meaning but similar in sound = *homonym*
95. Words similar in meaning = *synonym*
96. Anything which is no longer in use = *obsolete*
97. Article sold by one country to another = *export*
98. Article bought by one country from another = *import*
99. A state which is impartial to all religions = *secular*
100. That which cannot be heard = *inaudible*
101. That which cannot be consumed by fire = *incombustible*
102. That which cannot be believed = *incredible*
103. That which cannot be blotted = *indelible*
104. That which cannot be denied or questioned = *indisputable*
105. That which cannot be cured = *incurable*
106. That which cannot be corrected or reformed = *incorrigible*

107. That which cannot be explained = *inexplicable*
108. That which cannot be expressed in words = *inexpressible*
109. That without which one can't do = *indispensable*
110. That which cannot be extinguished = *inextinguishable*
111. That which cannot be avoided = *inevitable*
112. That which never tires out = *inexhaustible*
113. That which cannot be easily reached = *inaccessible*
114. That which cannot be admitted or allowed = *inadmissible*
115. That which cannot be defended = *indefensible*
116. That which cannot be excused = *inexcusable*
117. That which can be easily set on fire = *inflammable*
118. That which never fails = *infallible*
119. That which can be seen through = *transparent*
120. That which cannot be seen = *invisible*
121. That which cannot be repaired = *irreparable*
122. That which cannot be perceived by the senses = *imperceptible*
123. That which cannot be changed = *irrevocable*
124. That which is not to the point = *irrelevant*
125. That which cannot be taken by force or arms = *impregnable*
126. Incapable of being read = *illegible*
127. Incapable of being wounded = *invulnerable*
128. Incapable of being divided = *indivisible*
129. Incapable of being dissolved = *insoluble*
130. Incapable of being understood = *unintelligible*
131. Incapable of being imitated = *inimitable*
132. Incapable of being practised = *impracticable*
133. Fit to be chosen = *eligible*
134. That which cannot be seen through = *opaque*
135. That which happens every two years = *biennial*
136. That which happens every four years = *quadrennial*
137. That which happens every half year = *semiannual*
138. That which occurs time after time = *perennial*
139. That which happens once in three years = *triennial*
140. A man who leads an immoral life = *libertine*
141. A medicine to counteract the effect of poison = *antidote*
142. A medicine which can loosen the bowels = *laxative*
143. The science of speech sound = *phonetics*
144. The science of reasoning = *logic*
145. The science which deals with the derivation of words = *etymology*
146. Related to the sun = *solar*

147. Related to the moon = *lunar*
148. The practice of marrying only once = *monogamy*
149. The practice of having two wives or two husbands at a time = *bigamy*
150. The practice of marrying more than one wife at a time = *polygamy*
151. The practice of marrying more than one husband at a time = *polyandry*
152. Allowance due to a wife on legal separation from her husband = *alimony*
153. Property inherited from one's father or ancestors = *patrimony*
154. Of unknown or unadmitted authorship = *anonymous*
155. An imaginary name assumed by an author for disguise = *pseudonym*
156. The cessation of warfare before a treaty is signed = *armistice*
157. The act of violating the sanctity of the church = *sacrilege*
158. The act of speaking disrespectfully about sacred things = *blasphemy*
159. An office for which no salary is paid = *honorary*
160. The sum paid to a man for his labour = *remuneration*
161. Yearly return of a date = *anniversary*
162. Compulsory enlistment of military and other services = *conscription*
163. Of one's own free will = *voluntary*
164. All of one mind = *unanimous*
165. Occurring at the same time = *simultaneous*
166. Give tit for tat = *retaliate*
167. A figure with many angles and sides = *polygon*
168. Total loss of voice = *aphonia*
169. One who walks on foot = *pedestrian*
170. One who is fond of entertaining guests = *hospitable*
171. One who is out to destroy all government, law and order = *anarchist*
172. One who is revengeful = *vindictive*
173. One who is interested in old things, works of art or books = *antiquarian*
174. One who deceives by pretending to be someone else = *impostor*
175. The worship of idols or images = *idolatry*
176. The original inhabitants of a country = *aborigines*
177. Persons who work in the same department of an office = *colleagues*
178. A soldier who fights for the sake of money = *mercenary*

179. A formal written charge against a person for some crime or offence = *indictment*
180. Forensic examination of a dead body = *postmortem*
181. Engaged in war = *belligerent*
182. A person who has many love affairs without intending to marry = *philanderer*
183. A person who helps a helpless person or stranger = *Samaritan*
184. One who can use either hand with perfect ease = *ambidextrous*
185. The state of abstention from marriage = *celibacy*
186. Land that grows things in abundance = *fertile*
187. Land that does not grow anything = *barren*
188. A disease that spreads over a large area = *epidemic*
189. A house which is visited by ghosts = *haunted*
190. The place where clothes are kept = *wardrobe*
191. A political leader who tries to appeal to the feelings of people to stir them up = *demagogue*
192. A place of rest and recuperation for the sick = *sanatorium*
193. A place for the burial of dead bodies = *cemetery*
194. A place where birds and beasts are kept for public to see = *zoo*
195. A person who introduces the performers, speakers etc. = *compere*
196. A place where books are bound = *bindery*
197. A boastful fellow who behaves recklessly = *swashbuckler*
198. A place where stone, slate, etc. is obtained for building, road-making etc. = *quarry*
199. A structure erected in remembrance of a person or event = *monument*
200. A gambling den = *casino*
201. Closed vehicle for carrying sick or wounded people = *ambulance*
202. Force of aircraft used to protect a military or naval operation = *air-cover*
203. List of things to be done, business to be discussed by a committee = *agenda*
204. A record of list of one's ancestors in the order of succession or descent = *genealogy*
205. An imaginary place where ideally perfect social and political conditions are supposed to exist = *utopia*
206. Paradise or a place where one gets supreme delight and bliss = *Elysium*
207. A small set or committee of top leaders which runs the election for the party = *caucus*

208. Person who pilots or travels in a balloon, airship or other aircraft = *aeronaut*

209. Person who writes from dictation from somebody = *amanuensis*

210. Person who believes that nothing can be known about God or of anything except material things = *agnostic*

PRACTICE QUESTIONS

Directions: *Out of the given alternatives,* (A), (B), (C), (D), *etc., choose the correct word which very closely fits each definition. Mark the correct choice in your answer-sheet.*

Example I

One who is interested in the welfare of women:

(A) flamboyant (B) effeminate
(C) feminist (D) feminine

Sample Answer-sheet

A	B	C	D
○	○	●	○

The correct answer to this question is (C), "feminist". You should, therefore, answer (C).

Example II

Property inherited from one's parents or ancestors:

(A) matrimony (B) alimony
(C) patricide (D) patrimony

Sample Answer-sheet

A	B	C	D
○	○	○	●

The correct answer to this question is (D), "patrimony". You should, therefore. fill in the oval that contains "D".

Now do the following in the same way:

1. Disbeliever in God:
   (A) agnostic (B) atheist
   (C) theologist (D) altruist

2. Connoisseur of choice food:
   (A) gourmet (B) gregarious
   (C) glutton (D) greedy

3. Study of diseases:
   (A) philology (B) pathology
   (C) phrenology (D) pharmacology

4. Custom of having many wives:
   (A) matrimony (B) bigamy
   (C) polygamy (D) monogamy

5. Evenness of mind or temper:
   (A) equality (B) equity
   (C) equanimity (D) equitable

6. Animals that can live on land and water:
(A) amphibious (B) abstemious
(C) aquatic (D) aquarium

7. Person who eats human flesh:
(A) cannibal (B) furious
(C) carnivorous (D) beast

8. A word which can be interpreted in more than one way:
(A) anachronistic (B) confusing
(C) foolish (D) ambiguous

9. A place where birds are kept:
(A) attic (B) nursery
(C) aviary (D) zoo

10. Animals that feed on plants:
(A) carnivorous (B) herbivorous
(C) insectivorous (D) graminivorous

11. A hater of learning and knowledge:
(A) misologist (B) misogynist
(C) bibliophile (D) misanthropist

12. One who loves mankind:
(A) philanthropist (B) misanthropist
(C) mercenary (D) neurotic

13. A person who hates women:
(A) misogamist (B) misogynist
(C) masochist (D) misanthropist

14. A person who is womanish in his habits:
(A) feminist (B) effeminate
(C) philanderer (D) philogynist

15. The act of violating the sanctity of church:
(A) heresy (B) blasphemy
(C) sacrilege (D) desecration

16. A decision on which one cannot go back:
(A) invulnerable (B) incorrigible
(C) irrevocable (D) intangible

17. A person who is very fond of sensuous enjoyments:
(A) hedonist (B) lusty
(C) stoic (D) epicure

18. A person who rarely speaks the truth:
(A) crook (B) liar
(C) scoundrel (D) hypocrite

19. A remedy for all diseases:
(A) narcotic (B) tonic
(C) antiseptic (D) panacea

20. A thing which catches fire easily:
(A) efflorescent (B) callous
(C) inflammable (D) impatient

21. A person who readily believes others:
(A) credible (B) credulous
(C) sensible (D) sensitive

22. A critical judge of any art, particularly fine arts:
(A) connoisseur (B) dilettante
(C) veteran (D) philistine

23. Incapable of being wounded or hurt:
(A) [illegible]mable (B) invulnerable
(C) inev[illegible] (D) infallible

24. Ridiculous use of words:
(A) redundant (B) pun
(C) malapropism (D) onomatopoeia

25. The act of taking and passing off as one's own the ideas and writings, etc., of another:
(A) copyright (B) imitation
(C) plagiarism (D) adaptation

26. False statement about a person made to damage his reputation:
(A) defamation (B) calumny
(C) offence (D) affront

27. Contempt of God:
(A) atheism (B) nihilism
(C) blasphemy (D) agnosticism

28. Science of human mind and behaviour:
(A) psychotherapy (B) sericulture
(C) psychology (D) behaviourology

29. A written declaration made on oath in the presence of a magistrate:
(A) dossier (B) affidavit
(C) [illegible]ument (D) voucher

30. A gov[illegible]t in which all religions are equally honoured:
(A) autocracy (B) fanatic
(C) secular (D) democracy

31. A representative of India in a Commonwealth country:
(A) Charge d' Affaires (B) Ambassador
(C) High Commissioner (D) Rajdoot

32. A process involving too much [illegible]fficial formality:
(A) diplomacy (B) bureaucracy
(C) red-tapism (D) nepotism

33. That which is no longer in use:
(A) obsolete (B) rusted
(C) obscure (D) inviolable

34. A child born after the death of his father:
(A) stunted (B) still-born
(C) orphan (D) posthumous

35. Practice of having more than one husband at a time:
(A) polygyny (B) polyandry
(C) monogamy (D) celibacy

36. A person who studies heavenly phenomenon:
(A) astronomer (B) astronaut
(C) soothsayer (D) numismatist

37. A person who studies the formation of the earth:
(A) seismologist (B) anthropologist
(C) geologist (D) meteorologist

38. The science of earthquakes:
(A) seismology (B) meteorology
(C) astronomy (D) anthropology

39. The science concerned with the sounds of human speech:
(A) analogy (B) linguistics
(C) philology (D) phonetics

40. A person who wastes his money on luxury:
(A) luxuriant (B) luxurious
(C) extravagant (D) stingy

41. The yearly return of a date:
(A) birthday (B) centenary
(C) anniversary (D) jubilee

42. A political leader who tries to stir up people:
(A) martinet (B) demagogue
(C) statesman (D) dictator

43. The study of a community's statistics of births, deaths, diseases, etc.:
(A) census (B) demography
(C) astrology (D) pathology

44. Books, pictures, etc., intended to arouse sexual desire:
(A) erotica (B) pornography
(C) licentious (D) lewd

45. A person concerned with practical results and values:
(A) fundamentalist (B) pragmatist
(C) realist (D) ecologist

46. A person obsessed with exclusively one idea or subject:
(A) monomaniac (B) kleptomaniac
(C) bibliophile (D) nymphomaniac

47. An environmental scientist:
(A) seismologist (B) astronaut
(C) ecologist (D) neurologist

48. Poem recited at the beginning of a play:
(A) monologue (B) soliloquy
(C) prologue (D) epilogue

49. Something that causes no harm:
(A) injurious (B) innocuous
(C) panacea (D) secure

50. Something that cannot be grasped by the mind:
(A) inexplicable (B) infallible
(C) intangible (D) incredible

51. One who rides in horse races, esp. professionally:
(A) knight-errant (B) pedestrian
(C) jockey (D) equestrian

52. A heavy unnatural slumber:
(A) insomnia (B) coma
(C) intangible (D) stupor

53. To repeat word for word:
(A) literal (B) verbal
(C) verbatim (D) verbose

54. Anything that destroys the effects of poison:
(A) antidote (B) antibiotic
(C) antiseptic (D) antique

55. A person who totally abstains from alcoholic drinks:
(A) cannibal (B) teetotaller
(C) vegetarian (D) hedonist

56. A person in the habit of continuous talking:
(A) omnivorous (B) graminivorous
(C) loquacious (D) tongue-tied

57. A person who is hard to please:
(A) taciturn (B) stubborn
(C) fastidious (D) epicure

58. To atone for one's sins:
(A) ingratiate (B) propitiate
(C) apologise (D) expiate

59. A person who cannot be subdued or conquered:
(A) inscrutable (B) inflexible
(C) indomitable (D) infallible

60. Something that cannot be explained:
(A) impregnable (B) inexplicable
(C) mysterious (D) unthinkable

61. A place where young plants are reared:
(A) poultry (B) nursery
(C) kennel (D) gymnasium

62. A person who mends shoes:
(A) cobbler (B) plumber
(C) mechanic (D) shoeshine

63. A man whose wife is dead:
(A) widow (B) widower
(C) henpecked (D) orphan

64. Book, picture, etc., produced merely to bring in money:
(A) box-office (B) mercenary
(C) pot-boiler (D) heady

65. Forensic examination of a dead body:
(A) diagnosis (B) post-mortem
(C) analysis (D) dialysis

66. Musical or literary medley:
(A) musical soiree (B) potpourri
(C) rendezvous (D) extravaganza

67. A person who changes his religious beliefs:
(A) rebel (B) renegade
(C) iconoclast (D) heretic

68. A person who looks at the dark side of things:
(A) pessimist (B) optimist
(C) morose (D) blackguard

69. A place of shelter for ships:
(A) helipad (B) port
(C) harbour (D) barrack

70. A raised place on which offerings to a god are made:
(A) church (B) altar
(C) mound (D) archives

71. A person who sorrows for his sins:
(A) penitent (B) sadist
(C) sorrowful (D) pious

72. Printed notice of somebody's death:
(A) mourning (B) obituary
(C) condolence (D) journey's end

73. The study and treatment of mental illness:
(A) psychology (B) neurology
(C) psychiatry (D) cardiology

74. Witty, clever retort:
(A) broadside (B) repartee
(C) sarcasm (C) invective

75. Part-song for several voices without instrumental accompaniment:
(A) panegyric (B) limerick
(C) madrigal (D) ballad

76. The science of judging a person's character, capabilities, etc. from an examination of the shape of his skull:
(A) phrenology (B) anthropology
(C) philology (D) morphology

77. A shopkeeper who sells fresh and green vegetables:
(A) vegetarian (B) vendor
(C) grocer (D) greengrocer

78. Literature of unreal stories:
(A) fiction (B) episode
(C) fable (D) parable

79. A speech by an actor at the end of a play:
(A) duologue (B) epilogue
(C) melodrama (D) monologue

80. A verse letter:
(A) epitaph (B) pantomime
(C) lay (D) epistle

81. A room leading into a large room or hall:
(A) scullery (B) pantry
(C) anteroom (D) lounge

82. Something that cannot be rubbed out:
(A) inflexible (B) indelible
(C) irascible (D) irrepressible

83. Something that cannot be understood or known:
(A) incredible (B) inscrutable
(C) understandable (D) unknown

84. Unfriendly or harmful:
(A) congenial (B) inimical
(C) innocuous (D) intangible

85. That which cannot be heard:
(A) deaf (B) unheard-of
(C) inscrutable (D) inaudible

86. The life-history of a person written by another person:
(A) biography (B) autobiography
(C) memoir (D) audiography

87. A figure with three straight sides:
(A) angle (B) triangle
(C) trilogy (D) tripartite

88. That which cannot be consumed by fire:
(A) incombustible (B) inflammable
(C) invincible (D) inexhaustible

89. That which cannot be corrected:
(A) indelible (B) incorrigible
(C) fixed (D) fickle

90. The life-history of a person written by himself:
(A) bibliography (B) biography
(C) audiography (D) autobiography

91. A person who grows or sells flowers:
(A) florid (B) florist
(C) flautist (D) hoodlum

92. Just punishment for wrongdoing:
(A) nemesis (B) wrath
(C) catharsis (D) purgation

93. Coining or using of new words:
(A) phoneme (B) tautology
(C) neologism (D) lingua

94. Giving of special favour to one's kith and kin:
(A) pantheism (B) nepotism
(C) favouritism (D) solecism

95. Wistful longing for something one has known in the past:
(A) megalomania (B) logomania
(C) nostalgia (D) hysteria

96. Wide, uninterrupted view:
(A) window-view (B) panorama
(C) scenery (D) galaxy

97. Mental disorder marked by fixed delusions:
(A) hypermania (B) monomania
(C) paranoia (D) nostalgia

98. Venerable old man:
(A) headman (B) patriarch
(C) boss (D) Bohemian

99. Murdering one's father:
(A) regicide (B) patricide
(C) fratricide (D) homicide

100. Branch of medicine concerned with children and their illness:
(A) osteopathy (B) pediatrics
(C) cardiology (D) morphology

101. Equal in rank, merit or quality:
(A) contemporary (B) colleague
(C) chum (D) peer

102. Study of the problems of legal punishment and prison management:
(A) penology (B) criminology
(C) neurology (D) ragamuffin

103. Paying back injury with injury:
(A) repression (B) reprisal
(C) subjugation (D) vendetta

104. The firing of a number of guns together as a salute:
(A) salvo (B) gunsalute
(C) reception (D) jingoism

105. Short remaining end of a cigarette:
(A) filing (B) pinch
(C) filament (D) stub

106. A person who makes love without serious intentions:
(A) Romeo (B) goon
(C) consort (D) philanderer

ANSWERS

1.	(B)	2.	(A)	3.	(B)	4.	(C)	5.	(C)
6.	(A)	7.	(A)	8.	(D)	9.	(C)	10.	(B)
11.	(A)	12.	(A)	13.	(B)	14.	(B)	15.	(C)
16.	(C)	17.	(A)	18.	(B)	19.	(D)	20.	(C)
21.	(B)	22.	(A)	23.	(B)	24.	(C)	25.	(C)
26.	(B)	27.	(C)	28.	(C)	29.	(B)	30.	(C)
31.	(C)	32.	(C)	33.	(A)	34.	(D)	35.	(B)
36.	(A)	37.	(C)	38.	(A)	39.	(C)	40.	(C)
41.	(C)	42.	(B)	43.	(B)	44.	(B)	45.	(B)
46.	(A)	47.	(C)	48.	(C)	49.	(B)	50.	(C)
51.	(C)	52.	(D)	53.	(C)	54.	(A)	55.	(B)
56.	(C)	57.	(C)	58.	(D)	59.	(C)	60.	(B)
61.	(B)	62.	(A)	63.	(B)	64.	(C)	65.	(B)
66.	(B)	67.	(B)	68.	(A)	69.	(C)	70.	(B)
71.	(A)	72.	(B)	73.	(C)	74.	(B)	75.	(C)
76.	(A)	77.	(D)	78.	(A)	79.	(B)	80.	(D)
81.	(C)	82.	(B)	83.	(B)	84.	(B)	85.	(D)
86.	(A)	87.	(B)	88.	(A)	89.	(B)	90.	(D)
91.	(B)	92.	(A)	93.	(C)	94.	(B)	95.	(C)
96.	(B)	97.	(C)	98.	(B)	99.	(B)	100.	(B)
101.	(D)	102	(A)	103.	(B)	104.	(A)	105.	(D)
106.	(D).								

Exercise

Check the word that fits each definition.

1. An expert in foods and nutrition:
(a) patrician (b) dietician (c) pediatrician

2. An expert in the industrial art:
   (a) technician (b) industrialist (c) engineer
3. An expert at display ng fireworks:
   (a) magician (b) fireman (c) pyrotechnician
4. The creator of a design or plan for building:
   (a) cartographer (b) architect (c) bricklayer
5. One who makes maps and charts:
   (a) geologist (b) cartographer (c) geographer
6. A specialist in making eyeglasses:
   (a) optician (b) optometrist (c) oculist
7. One who has been withdrawn from a bombing zone:
   (a) refugee (b) deportee (c) evacuee
8. One who prescribes corrective lenses:
   (a) optician (b) optometrist (c) oculist
9. A person who books your ticket on a bus or tram:
   (a) ticket collector (b) conductor (c) astronomer
10. A space traveller:
    (a) technocrat (b) astronomer (c) astronaut

Answers: 1– (b) 2–(a) 3– (c) 4– (b) 5– (b) 6– (a) 7– (c) 8– (b) 9–(b) 10– (c)

CHAPTER 8

Word-Formation

English, says CL Wrenn, has continued to be able to make new words from native elements or from those foreign ones that have been used for so long in the language as to have been thoroughly naturalized.

There are at least four main ways of word-formation, as—

1. **Composition**: It is the name given to the process in which two words are joined to give us a new word. A word of almost any part of speech can combine with another word of any part of speech to form compounds. As for example,

(a) *Noun + Noun*: apple-tree; house-boat; air-ship.
(b) *Noun + Adjective*: sky-blue; knee-deep; purse-proud.
(c) *Adjective + Noun*: black-bird; short-hand; lay-man.
(d) *Adjective + Verb*: whitewash; blacklist.
(e) *Verb + Adjective*: stay-bright; livelong.
(f) *Verb + Verb*: make-believe.

2. **Derivation**: It is the name given to the process of making a new word from an old one by the addition of some *prefixes* or *suffixes*, as—

(a) *Prefix*: It is a one-syllable word added to the beginning of a word to form a new word like this:

im + perfect = *im*perfect	*dis* + honest = *dis*honest
in + efficient = *in*efficient.	*un* + fortunate = *un*fortunate

(b) *Suffix*: It is a one-syllable word added to the end of a word to form a new word like this:

king + *dom* = king*dom*	home + *less* = home*less*
gold + *en* = gold*en*	assert + *ive* = assert*ive*

3. **Root Creation**: It means the creation of a root, the word itself. The most important class of words due to root creation is *onomatopoeic* that is, *echo words*. As for example,

rustling of leaves	*booming* of cannons
jingling of coins	*rattling* of carts

4. **Back Formation**: It is a name given to the process in which a new word is formed from an existing word by dropping the ending which,

though looking like suffix, is really an integral part of the word. In the Middle English there was a word 'darkling', an adverb meaning 'in darkness'. But the *ing* was wrongly supposed to be the present participle inflexion. And a verb 'dark' was formed backwards.

5. **Clipping**: It is a process by which a long word is clipped to give a handy word. There are hundreds of such clipped forms and abbreviations; as—

microphone = *mike*	mathematics = *math.*
telephone = *phone*	examination = *exam*

Sometimes two words are clipped and the clipped parts are joined to give a new word conveying the sense of both the original elements; as –

Melody + drama = Melodrama; Tragedy + Comedy = Tragi-comedy

You would do well to study the formation of nouns, adjectives and verbs as well as compound nouns, adjectives and verbs given below:

(A) Formation of Verbs from Nouns

The endings *-en, -ify, -ise,* and *- ize* can be added to many nouns to form verbs like this: strength—strength*en*: class—class*ify*; patron —patron*ize*.

Examples: I made my *apologies* and left early. (Noun)
I *apologized* and left early. (Verb)

Nouns	*Verbs*	*Nouns*	*Verbs*
act	enact	claim	acclaim
advice	advise	class	classify
air	aerate, air	cloth	clothe
apology	apologize	colony	colonize
authority	authorize	company	accompany
bath	bathe	courage	encourage
beauty	beautify	critic	criticize
belief	believe	custom	accustom
black	blacken	danger	endanger
bliss	bless	deity	deify
blood	bleed	dew	bedew
body	embody	drop	drip
breath	breathe	economy	economize
brood	breed	electricity	electrify
camp	encamp	example	exemplify
capital	capitalize	fame	defame
centre	centralize	food	feed
character	characterize	fool	befool
circle	encircle	force	enforce

Nouns	*Verbs*	*Nouns*	*Verbs*
fraud	defraud	office	officiate
friend	befriend	origin	originate
fright	frighten	peace	pacify
frost	freeze	person	personify
fruit	fructify	power	empower
game	gambol	practice	practise
glass	glaze	prison	imprison
glory	glorify	red	redden
gold	gild	roll	enrol
grass	graze	sale	sell
grief	grieve	sermon	sermonize
guile	beguile	service	serve
habit	habituate	slave	enslave
hand	handle	society	associate
harmony	harmonize	spark	sparkle
haste	hasten	speech	speak
head	behead	substance	substantiate
heir	inherit	sympathy	sympathize
horror	horrify	system	systematize
idol	idolize	table	tabulate
joy	enjoy	tale	tell
justice	justify	terror	terrify; terrorize
knee	kneel		
knot	knit	throne	enthrone
life	live	title	entitle
light	lighten	tomb	entomb
loan	lend	trap	entrap
lot	allot	utility	utilize
mass	amass	vacancy	vacate
memory	memorize	vapour	evaporate
mind	remind	vice	vitiate
monopoly	monopolize	victim	victimize
nation	nationalize	vigour	invigorate
nature	naturalize	wreath	wreathe
necessity	necessitate		

(B) Formation of Nouns from Verbs

The endings *-er, -or, -ant, -al, -age, -ance, -ee, -ation, -ion, -sion,* and *-ment* can be added to many verbs to form nouns like this: beg—beggar; teach—teacher; govern—governor; inform—informant; admire—

admir*ation*; refuse—refus*al*; post—post*age*; appear—appear*ance*; train—train*ee*; depend—depend*ence*; reject—reject*ion*; invade—invas*ion*; move—move*ment*.

Examples: He *moves* from place to place. (Verb)
Keep a watch on his *movement*. (Noun)

Verbs	*Nouns*	*Verbs*	*Nouns*
abide	abode	bind	bound
abound	abundance	break	breach
accede	access	bury	burial
accept	acceptance	carry	carriage
achieve	achievement	certify	certificate
accomplish	accomplishment	choose	choice
act	action	commit	commitment
add	addition	collect	collection
admit	admission	compare	comparison
adore	adoration	compel	compulsion
advertise	advertisement	complete	completion
agree	agreement	comply	compliance
allow	allowance	concede	concession
amuse	amusement	confide	confidence
announce	announcement	connect	connection
apply	application	consider	consideration
apprehend	apprehension	consume	consumption
approve	approval	correct	correction
appoint	appointment	contain	contents
arrange	arrangement	contend	contention
arrive	arrival	contradict	contradiction
argue	argument	convert	conversion
ascend	ascent	create	creation
assist	assistance	criticize	criticism
assume	assumption	deal	dole
assure	assurance	deceive	deceit, deception
attend	attendance	decide	decision
attract	attraction	defend	defence
bear	birth	defy	defence
behave	behaviour	deliver	delivery, deliverance
begin	beginning	deny	denial
belong	belongings	depart	departure
betray	betrayal		

Verbs	*Nouns*	*Verbs*	*Nouns*
descend	descent	heal	health
destroy	destruction	imagine	imagination
determine	determination	imitate	imitation
describe	description	interfere	interference
die	death	introduce	introduction
define	definition	introspect	introspection
distinguish	distinction	infatuate	infatuation
disturb	disturbance	insure	insurance
differ	difference	invent	invention
direct	director, direction	invite	invitation
discover	discovery	judge	judgment
dismiss	dismissal	know	knowledge
disburse	disbursement	laugh	laughter
do	deed	learn	learning
enjoy	enjoyment	lend	loan
enter	entry, entrance	lose	loss
envelop	envelope	leak	leakage
err	error	maintain	maintenance
educate	education	manage	management
elect	election	mean	meaning
exceed	excess	marry	marriage
excel	excellence	mix	mixture
expect	expectation	narrate	narrator, narration
extend	extension	obey	obedience
exist	existence	object	objection
examine	examination	occupy	occupation
express	expression	offend	offence
explain	explanation	oppose	opposition
fail	failure	oblige	obligation
feel	feeling	omit	omission
float	fleet	operate	operation
flow	flood	paralyse	paralysis
fly	flight	pass	passage
give	gift	pay	payment
go	gait	perfect	perfection
govern	government	perform	performance
grow	growth	permit	permission
hate	hatred	please	pleasure
		presume	presumption

Verbs	*Nouns*	*Verbs*	*Nouns*
prepare	preparation	resign	resignation
pray	prayer	respond	response
preside	president	revise	revision
press	pressure	satisfy	satisfaction
prevent	prevention	secure	security
proceed	procedure, process	see	sight
		seize	seizure
prophesy	prophecy	sign	signature
protect	protection	shake	shock
prove	proof	sing	song
propose	proposal	sit	seat
provide	provision	solve	solution
pursue	pursuit	slay	slaughter
quote	quotation	steal	stealth
qualify	qualification	strike	stroke
receive	receipt, reception	succeed	success
		suggest	suggestion
recognise	recognition	sustain	sustenance
reduce	reduction	separate	separation
recover	recovery	supervise	supervision
redeem	redemption	think	thought
rely	reliance	trace	track
remove	removal	try	trial
refer	reference	unite	union, unity
relieve	relief	vary	variance, variation
remember	remembrance		
repeat	repetition	weave	web
resolve	resolution	wed	wedding
reveal	revelation	weigh	weight
require	requirement		

(C) Formation of Nouns from Adjectives

The endings *–dom, –ery, – ism,–ist,–ity,–ice,–ness, –ary, –ce,–cy,* and *–ty*, can be added to many adjectives to form nouns like this: free–free*dom*; brave–brav*ery*; regional–regional*ism*; social–social*ist*; passive–passiv*ity*; just—just*ice*; happy–happi*ness*; secret—secret*ary*: absent—absen*ce*; accurate—accura*cy*; cruel—cruel*ty*.

Examples: It is a *dark* night. (Adjective)
There is nothing but *darkness* all around. (Noun)

Adjectives	*Nouns*	*Adjectives*	*Nouns*
able	ability	foolish	fool
abundant	abundance	faithful	faithfulness
accurate	accuracy	gallant	gallantry
active	activity	gay	gaiety
anxious	anxiety	generous	generosity
absent	absence	grand	grandeur
bankrupt	bankruptcy	grave	gravity
brave	bravery	good	goodness
brief	brevity	hard	hardship
broad	breadth	high	height
brutal	brutality	holy	holiness
busy	business	hot	heat
calm	calmness	hostile	hostility
casual	casualty	healthy	health
certain	certainty	human	humanity
cheap	cheapness	humble	humility
civil	civility	inferior	inferiority
careful	carefulness	idle	idleness
careless	carelessness	important	importance
capable	capability	impatient	impatience
complete	completion	immense	immensity
complex	complexity	indignant	indignation
contemptuous	contempt	just	justice
coward	cowardice	kind	kindness
cruel	cruelty	legal	legality
curious	curiosity	lazy	laziness
dead	death	long	length
decent	decency	local	locality
deep	depth	little	littleness
dull	dullness	merry	merriment
different	difference	moist	moisture
efficient	efficiency	mortal	mortality
equal	equality	moral	morality
empty	emptiness	necessary	necessity
excellent	excellence	noble	nobility
false	falsehood, falsity	new	newness
fertile	fertility	notorious	notoriety
frank	frankness	novel	novelty
		national	nationality

Adjectives	*Nouns*	*Adjectives*	*Nouns*
obedient	obedience	short	shortage, shortness
one	oneness	silent	silence
original	originality	similar	similarity
perfect	perfection	simple	simplicity
polite	politeness	solid	solidity
pious	piety	solitary	solitude
poor	poverty	special	speciality
popular	popularity	splendid	splendour
possible	possibility	stupid	stupidity
precise	precision	supreme	supremacy
private	privacy	strong	strength
proud	pride	sweet	sweetness
present	presence	swift	swiftness
prudent	prudence	timid	timidity
pure	purity	true	truth
patriot	patriotism	urgent	urgency
proficient	proficiency	vacant	vacancy
rare	rarity	vain	vanity
real	reality	various	variety
rigid	rigidity	vital	vitality
regular	regularity	violent	violence
rich	richness	weak	weakness
rival	rivalry	wide	width
royal	royalty	wise	wisdom
safe	safety	young	youth
scarce	scarcity		
secret	secrecy		

(D) Formation of Adjectives from Nouns

The endings *–al, –an, –ary, –ate, –ent, –eous, –fic, –ful, –ic, –ish, –ious, –less, –like, –ly, –ous, –y,* and *–some* can be added to many nouns to form adjectives like this: agriculture—agricultur*al*; custom—custom*ary*; fortune—fortun*ate*; beauty—beaut*eous*; pain—pain*ful*; poetry—poet*ic*; fever—fever*ish*; envy—env*ious*; hope—hope*less*; child—child*like*; brother—brother*ly*; adventure—adventur*ous*; dream—dream*y*; trouble—trouble*some*.

Examples: He lives in *India*. (Noun)
He is an *Indian*. (Adjective)

Nouns	*Adjectives*
ability	able
absence	absent
accident	accidental
advantage	advantageous
advice	advisable
affection	affectionate
air	airy
ancestor	ancestral
angle	angular
Asia	Asiatic
atmosphere	atmospheric
authority	authoritative
autumn	autumnal
black	blackish, black
blood	bloody
body	bodily
book	bookish
boy	boyish
brass	brazen, brassy
brute	brutal
burden	burdensome
bush	bushy
calamity	calamitous
capacity	capacious
centre	central
ceremony	ceremonial, ceremonious
character	characteristic
charity	charitable
cheer	cheerful
China	Chinese
chivalry	chivalrous
circle	circular
class	classic, classical
climate	climatic
cloud	cloudy
comfort	comfortable
commerce	commercial
condition	conditional
confidence	confident

Nouns	*Adjectives*
conscience	conscientious
contempt	contemptible, contemptuous
courage	courageous
coward	cowardly
crime	criminal
colony	colonial
danger	dangerous
day	daily
defect	defective
devil	devilish
dew	dewy
dirt	dirty
discipline	disciplinary
drama	dramatic
duty	dutiful
earth	earthly
east	eastern
economy	economical, economic
elephant	elephantine
emperor	imperial
enemy	inimical
essence	essential
Europe	European
example	exemplary
expense	expensive
fable	fabulous
face	facial
faith	faithful, faithless
fame	famous
fancy	fanciful
fate	fateful, fatal
fault	faulty
favour	favourable
fear	fearful
feather	feathery
fire	fiery
fish	fishy

Nouns	*Adjectives*
flesh	fleshy
flower	flowery
fog	foggy
fool	foolish
force	forceful, forcible
France	French
friend	friendly
fruit	fruitful
fury	furious
habit	habitual
hair	hairy
hand	handy
harm	harmful, harmless
haste	hasty
health	healthy
heart	hearty
heaven	heavenly
heir	hereditary
hero	heroic
hill	hilly
history	historic
home	homely
honour	honourable, honorary
horror	horrible
hour	hourly
humour	humorous
idiot	idiotic
ignorance	ignorant
India	Indian
industry	industrial, industrious
influence	influential
injury	injurious
irony	ironical, ironic
judge	judicial, judicious
joke	jocular
joy	joyful, joyous

Nouns	*Adjectives*
king	kingly
labour	laborious
law	lawful
life	lifelike, living
limit	limited, limitless
love	lovely
lord	lordly
luxury	luxurious
machine	mechanical
man	manly
medicine	medicinal, medical
merchant	mercantile
mercy	merciful
merit	meritorious
metal	metallic
might	mighty
milk	milky
mind	mental
miracle	miraculous
mirth	mirthful
misery	miserable
moment	momentary
money	monetary
month	monthly
muscle	muscular
music	musical
mystery	mysterious
nation	national
nature	natural
navy	naval
need	needy, needful
neighbour	neighbourly
nerve	nervous
night	nightly
north	northern
number	numerical, numerous
office	official

Nouns	*Adjectives*	*Nouns*	*Adjectives*
oil	oily	storm	stormy
origin	original	study	studious
palace	palatial	sun	sunny
part	partial	sympathy	sympathetic
passion	passionate	system	systematic
peace	peaceful	table	tabular
people	popular, populous	talk	talkative
person	personal	taste	tasteful
picture	picturesque	terror	terrible
play	playful	thief	thievish
practice	practical	time	timely
pride	proud	title	titular
profit	profitable	thought	thoughtful, thoughtless
prose	prosaic	tragedy	tragic
quarrel	quarrelsome	trifle	trifling, trivial
question	questionable	tutor	tutorial
red	reddish	type	typical
right	righteous	use	useful
romance	romantic	value	valuable
ruin	ruinous	verb	verbal
sand	sandy	vice	vicious
scholar	scholarly	vigour	vigorous
school	scholastic	voice	vocal
science	scientific	war	warlike
season	seasonal	watch	watchful
sense	sensible	week	weekly
service	serviceable	wind	windy
shame	shameful	winter	wintry
silk	silken	woman	womanly, womanish
slave	slavish	wonder	wonderful
smoke	smoky	wood	wooden
society	social	wool	woollen
solitude	solitary	world	worldly
space	spacious	worth	worthy
star	starry	wretch	wretched
stone	stony		

(E) Formation of Verbs from Adjectives

The endings *–en, –iate, –ify, –ise* and *–ize* can be added to many adjectives to form verbs like this: sweet—sweet*en;* different—differenti*ate;* clear—clar*ify;* general—general*ize;* civil—civil*ize.*

Examples: His action is *just.* (Adjective)
Everybody will *justify* his action. (Verb)

Adjectives	*Verbs*	*Adjectives*	*Verbs*
able	enable	long	lengthen
abundant	abound	low	lower
base	debase	mad	madden
bitter	embitter	moist	moisten
bold	embolden	necessary	necessitate
brief	abbreviate	new	renew
broad	broaden	noble	ennoble
calm	becalm	particular	particularize
certain	ascertain	perpetual	perpetuate
clean	cleanse	poor	impoverish
dark	darken	popular	popularize
dear	endear	proper	appropriate
deep	deepen	public	publish
dense	condense	pure	purify
equal	equalize	real	realize
false	falsify	red	redden
familiar	familiarize	rich	enrich
fat	fatten	short	shorten
fertile	fertilize	sick	sicken
fine	refine	soft	soften
firm	confirm, affirm	strong	strengthen
fond	fondle	solid	consolidate, solidify
foul	defile	special	specialize
fresh	refresh	stable	stabilize
full	fill	strange	estrange
glad	gladden	stupid	stupefy
high	heighten	sure	ensure
humble	humiliate, humble	thick	thicken
just	justify	timid	intimidate
large	enlarge	venerable	venerate
less	lessen	vile	vilify
liquid	liquefy	white	whiten
little	belittle	wide	widen

(F) Compound Nouns

Sometimes compound nouns are made up of (i) Noun+Noun, (ii) Noun+Gerund, (iii) Gerund+Noun, (iv) Noun+Adjective, (v) Adjective+Noun, (vi) Verb+Noun, (vii) Adverb+Noun, (viii) Adverb+Verb, (ix) Pronoun+Noun and (x) Verb/Noun+Adverb. Such compounds are in some cases written and printed as one word (e.g., *bookseller)*, in some cases with a hyphen (e.g., *shoe-maker)* and in some cases as two separate words (e.g., *radio announcer)*.

(i) *Noun+Noun*

beauty-spot	tax-collector	maid-servant
ballot-papers	wine-shop	power-equation
bullock-cart	house-boat	bank-rate
pencil-sharpener	orange-juice	horse-race
beggar maid	bookmaker	bricklayer

(ii) *Noun+Gerund*

back-biting	dilly-dallying	play-acting
bear-baiting	cross-firing	sooth-saying
brain-washing	film-making	wool-gathering

(iii) *Gerund + Noun*

bathing-costume	bewitching-smile	washing-machine
hearing-aid	dressing-room	walking-stick
swimming-trunks	babbling-brook	leaping-flame
rolling stones	moving pictures	dancing doll

(iv) *Noun + Adjective*

flood-prone	war-torn	knight-errant

(v) *Adjective + Noun*

freebooter	freelance	double-dealing
soft-ware	short-cut	free-thinker

(vi) *Verb + Noun*

make-shift	breakfast	felt-hat
watch-dog	turn-coat	break-point
lighthouse	pick-pocket	cut-throat

(vii) *Adverb + Noun*

under-world	upstairs	after-thought
over-time	downstairs	under-tone

(viii) *Adverb + Verb*

overthrow	output	upstart
outcast	outburst	input

(ix) *Pronoun + Noun*

she-devil	he-goat	she-goat

(x) *Verb/Noun + Adverb*

passerby	go-between	break-down
run-away	farewell	lock-up

(G) Compound Adjectives

(i) *Noun + Adjective / Participle*

blood-curdling	chest-deep	weather-beaten
moth-eaten	henpecked	blood-thirsty
ice-cold	frost-bitten	thunder-struck

(ii) *Adverb / Adjective+Participle / Adjective*

whole-hearted	long-felt	fleet-footed
wide-spread	far-fetched	red-hot

(iii) *Noun+Present Participle / Adjective*

hair-splitting	match-making	time-saving
praiseworthy	face-saving	self-sacrificing

(iv) *Preposition+Noun*

indoor	outdoor	under-weight
outlaw	over-load	off-hand
uphill	post-graduate	post-independence

(v) *Adjective / (Noun used as Adjective)+ Noun*

a bald-headed person	a five-storey building	a five-year plan
a three-wheel chair	a fifty-rupee note	a three-fold increase

(H) Compound Verbs

Adverb+Verb

outvote	overhear	cross-examine
cross-fire	overcome	foretell

(I) Phrase Compound

a happy-go-lucky guy	a cock-and-bull story	a good-for-nothing fellow
father-in-law	commander-in-chief	a devil-may-care attitude
a well-to-do family	a well-thought-out scheme	a cat-and-dog life

(J) How Odd Are These Adjectives!

An adjective, you know, is a word used to qualify a noun or pronoun. The formation of adjectives from nouns is not much of a problem in majority of cases. For example, *feverish* is the adjective of *fever* and *courageous* that of *courage*. There are, however, some English nouns whose adjectives are odd. For example, how would you express in one word the idea of *pertaining to ear*? The adjective for *ear* is *aural*. The truth is that some of the English nouns have words derived from Latin or Greek as their adjectives. This is especially true of parts of the body.

	Words	: Adjectives		Words	: Adjectives
1.	*arm*	: *brachial*	6.	*heart*	: *cardiac*
2.	*ear*	: *aural*	7.	*lips*	: *labial*
3.	*finger*	: *digital*	8.	*neck*	: *cervical*
4.	*hair*	: *capillary*	9.	*teeth*	: *dental*
5.	*head*	: *cephalic*	10.	*tongue*	: *lingual*

(K) Word Formation: Prefix/ Suffix

There are, in English, many word beginnings (*prefixes*) and word endings (*suffixes*) that can be added to a word to form a new word. The most common ones are here for you to study.

Prefix + word

1. *ad–* (*to, towards*): adequate, adhere, adjacent, admire, advantage, administer.
2. *be–* (*intensive*): bedeck, belabour, beloved, bemused, bewail, beside.
3. *de–* (*away, from*): decompose, decontrol, deform, denude, depose, dethrone, derail.
4. *dis–* (*take away, not, deprive of*): disable, disadvantage, disagree, disarm, disapprove,discourage, discredit, disgrace, dishonest, disinherit, dislike, disloyal, displease,disregard, distrust.
5. *em–* (*in, into*): embark, embalm, embitter, embody, employ, empower.
6. *en–* (*in, into*): enable, encircle, encourage, endanger, enlarge, enrich, enslave, entrap.
7. *ex–* (*out, from*): excavate, excel, excite, exclaim, exit, expelled, express.
8. *hyper–* (*over, above, excessive*): hypercritical, hyperdimensional, hypersensitive.
9. *il–* (*not*): illegal, illegible, illegitimate, illiterate, illogical.
10. *im–* (*not*): imbalance, immature, immobilize, immoral, immortal, imperfect, impolite, impossible, improbable, improper.
11. *in–* (*not*): inability, inaccessible, inaction, inadequate, inaudible, incapable, incomplete, indecent, indiscipline, ineffective, inhospitable, intolerable, invisible.
12. *inter–* (*between, among*): interaction, intercede, intercourse, interdependent, international.
13. *mis–* (*wrongly*): mismanage, misplace, misquote, mistake, misunderstand, misuse.
14. *ir–* (*not*): irrational, irregular, irrelevant, irreligious, irreparable, irresolute, irresponsible, irrevocable.

15. *mono–/mon–* (*one*): monocracy, monodrama, monogamy, monologue, monotone, monandry, monarch.
16. *non–* (*not*): nonaggression, nonconformist, nonsense, nonstop, nontaxable, nonvegetarian.
17. *per–* (*through*): perambulate, percent, perceive, percolate, perfection, perforated.
18. *pre–* (*before*): precaution, prefix, prehistoric, prejudge, preoccupied, premature, prepaid, prewar.
19. *re–* (*back, again*): rebuild, recall, refold, regain, rejoin, remarry, reopen, repay, resell, rewrite.
20. *sur–* (*over, above, more*): surcharge, surface, surpass, surplus, surround.
21. *un–* (*not*): unable, unambitious, uneducated, unfinished, unhappy, unkind, unknown, unripe, unspoken, unwanted, unwelcome, unwise.

Word + suffix

1. *–able –ible* (*able, can do*): agreeable, acceptable, comfortable, enjoyable, laughable, portable, reliable, horrible, terrible, visible.
2. *–al* (*relating to*): arrival, autumnal, cultural, natural, optional, technical.
3. *–ar,–er,–or* (*who, that, whole*): beggar, liar, baker, dancer, driver, fighter, jester, actor, exhibitor, sailor, tractor.
4. *–ary,–ery,–ory* (*relating to, equality, place where*): burglary, dictionary, bakery, bravery, bribery, depository, factory, memory.
5. *–cian* (*having a certain skill or art*): beautician, electrician, musician, politician, technician.
6. *–dom* (*quality, realm, state*): boredom, dukedom, freedom, kingdom, officialdom, wisdom.
7. *–en* (*made of, make, cause to, become*): golden, silken, wooden, brighten, broaden, frighten, heighten, lighten, soften, smoothen.
8. *–ence* (*action, state, quality*): difference, existence, influence, obedience, patience.
9. *–ful* (*full of*): beautiful, careful, doubtful, graceful, handful, helpful, hopeful, joyful, mouthful, pitiful, restful, tactful, tearful.
10. *–fy* (*to make or become, to fill with*): beautify, clarify, fortify, justify, mollify, pacify, purify, simplify, terrify.
11. *–ic* (*nature of, like*): artistic, barbaric, comic, economic, emphatic, heroic, majestic, poetic, patriotic, realistic, tragic.
12. *–ion,–sion,–tion* (*act of, state of, result of*): action, injection, infection, location, option, question, suspension, relation, verification.

15. *mono–/mon–* (*one*): monocracy, monodrama, monogamy, monologue, monotone, monandry, monarch.
16. *non–* (*not*): nonaggression, nonconformist, nonsense, nonstop, nontaxable, nonvegetarian.
17. *per–* (*through*): perambulate, percent, perceive, percolate, perfection, perforated.
18. *pre–* (*before*): precaution, prefix, prehistoric, prejudge, preoccupied, premature, prepaid, prewar.
19. *re–* (*back, again*): rebuild, recall, refold, regain, rejoin, remarry, reopen, repay, resell, rewrite.
20. *sur–* (*over, above, more*): surcharge, surface, surpass, surplus, surround.
21. *un–* (*not*): unable, unambitious, uneducated, unfinished, unhappy, unkind, unknown, unripe, unspoken, unwanted, unwelcome, unwise.

Word + suffix

1. *–able –ible* (*able, can do*): agreeable, acceptable, comfortable, enjoyable, laughable, portable, reliable, horrible, terrible, visible.
2. *–al* (*relating to*): arrival, autumnal, cultural, natural, optional, technical.
3. *–ar,–er,–or* (*who, that, whole*): beggar, liar, baker, dancer. driver, fighter, jester, actor, exhibitor, sailor, tractor.
4. *–ary,–ery,–ory* (*relating to, equality, place where*): burglary, dictionary, bakery, bravery, bribery, depository, factory, memory.
5. *–cian* (*having a certain skill or art*): beautician, electrician, musician, politician, technician.
6. *–dom* (*quality, realm, state*): boredom, dukedom, freedom, kingdom, officialdom, wisdom.
7. *–en* (*made of, make, cause to, become*): golden, silken, wooden, brighten, broaden, frighten, heighten, lighten. soften, smoothen.
8. *–ence* (*action, state, quality*): difference, existence, influence. obedience, patience.
9. *–ful* (*full of*): beautiful, careful, doubtful, graceful, handful, helpful, hopeful, joyful, mouthful, pitiful, restful, tactful, tearful.
10. *–fy* (*to make or become, to fill with*): beautify, clarify, fortify, justify, mollify, pacify, purify, simplify, terrify.
11. *–ic* (*nature of, like*): artistic, barbaric, comic, economic, emphatic, heroic, majestic, poetic, patriotic, realistic. tragic.
12. *–ion,–sion,–tion* (*act of, state of, result of*): action, injection, infection, location, option, question, suspension, relation, verification.

13. *–ist* (*one who, that, which*): anthropologist, biologist, guitarist, humanist, sociologist, terrorist,

14. *–ize, –ise* (*to cause to, become, to put into the stated place*): modernize, surmise, centralize, fertilize, penalize.

15. *–less* (*without*): artless, baseless, careless, effortless, friendless, helpless, hopeless, noiseless, listless, sleepless, restless, tasteless, weightless.

16. *–logy* (*study, science, theory*): biology, criminology, geology, pathology, philology, theology.

17. *–ly* (*like, manner of*): artlessly, carelessly, effortlessly, fearlessly, helplessly, hopelessly, noiselessly, sleeplessly, shamelessly, slowly, quickly.

18. *–ment* (*act of, stage of, result of an action*): achievement, excitement, instrument, movement, judgment, payment, statement.

19. *–ous* (*full of, having*): ambitious, courageous, delicious, gracious, nervous, virtuous.

20. *–y* (*inclined to, tend to*): dirty, foxy, cloudy, faulty, moody, misty, rainy, rosy, sandy, sleepy, stormy.

Exercises

I. *Give the noun form of the following words:*

(a) reduce	.....	(b) splendid	.....
(c) conquer	.....	(d) social	.....
(e) pacify	.....	(f) grieve	.....
(g) wide	.....	(h) pretend	.....
(i) merry	.....	(j) pursue	.....
(k) know	.....	(l) long	.....

II. *Give the adjective form of the following words:*

(a) town	.....	(b) youth	.....
(c) slave	.....	(d) violence	.....
(e) spring	.....	(f) spectacle	.....
(g) deficiency	.....	(h) infection	.....
(i) ancestor	.....	(j) medicine	.....
(k) boy	.....	(l) angel	.....

III. *Column A contains five nouns and Column B adjectives from them. Match one with the other.*

Column A	*Column B*
1. youth	a. martial
2. moon	b. aural
3. ear	c. canine
4. dog	d. juvenile
5. war	e. lunar

IV. *From the words given below form compound nouns (with hyphen):*

point	home	wood
room	turning	communication
pool	dish	charmer
sweet	cutter	swimming
snake	drawing	coming
tele	cup	tea

V. *From the words given below form compound adjectives (with hyphen):*

earth	long	fashioned
note	broad	proof
range	old	heart
water	splitting	rending
ear	based	shattering
time	worthy	serving

VI. *Give the verb form of the following words:*
ascent; bond; abundance; choice; confidence; provision; excess; blood.

VII. *Fill in the blanks with appropriate words derived from the words given in brackets in each sentence.*

(a) I .....at his good fortune. *(marvellous);* (b) It was a ..... victory. *(spectacle);* (c) You should not.....his achievements. *(little);* (d) His .....look belies his age. *(youth);* (e) I had to suffer as a result of your ..... *(ignore).* (f) I have no ..... to his proposal. *(object);* (g) There is nothing to..... between these two boys. *(different);* (h) He died in most ..... circumstances. *(tragedy);* (i) He stands no ..... to me. *(compare);* (j) Everybody was surprised at his..... *(fail).*

Answers

I. (a) reduce—reduction (b) splendid—splendour (c) conquer—conquest (d) social—society (e) pacify—peace (f) grieve—grief (g) wide—width (h) pretend—pretension (i) merry—merriment (j) pursue—pursuit (k) know—knowledge (l) long—length

II. (a) town—urban (b) youth—juvenile (c) slave—slavish (d) violence—violent (e) spring—vernal (f) spectacle—spectacular (g) deficiency—deficient (h) infection—infectious (i) ancestor—ancestral (j) medicine—medicinal (k) boy—boyish (l) angel—angelic

III. 1—*d* 2—*e* 3—*b* 4—*c* 5—*a*

IV. turning-point; home-coming; wood-cutter; drawing-room; tele-communication; swimming-pool; sweet-dish; snake-charmer; tea-cup

V. earth-shattering; long-range; old-fashioned; note-worthy; broad-based; water-proof; heart-rending; ear-splitting time-serving.

VI. ascent—ascend; bond—bind; abundance—abound; choice—choose; confidence—confide; provision—provide; excess—exceed; blood—bleed

VII. (a) marvel (b) spectacular (c) belittle (d) youthful (e) ignorance (f) objection (g) differentiate (h) tragic (i) comparison (j) failure.

Silent Consonant Letters

We write in letters, but we speak in sounds.

— A T WEAVE: *Speech*

There are forty-five basic sounds of English, the building bricks that the language is made up from[1]. And remember, there are only twenty-six letters to represent these sounds! The innocent-looking group of letters *-ough* has eight different ways of saying it: *O* as in *though*, *00* as in *through*, *ow* as in *bough*, *off* (or *awf*) as in *cough*, *uff* as in *rough*, *och* as in *lough* and an indeterminate *er* sound as in *borough*.[2] The letter *a* represents at least nine different sounds, as in the following words: *fate*, *am*, *ask*, *final*, *preface*, *sofa*, *care*, *arm*, *many*. The letter *e* can be used to represent at least six different sounds. In the words, *who*, *blue*, *June*, *move*, *loose*, *doom*, we have different spellings all representing the same vowel sound. The same sound may be indicated by different letters and different combination of letters.

There are, then, letters that sound in a manner not their own. For instance, the letter *s* sounds like *z* in *nose*, *tease*, *please*, *ease*, *rise*, *praise*. Similarly the letters *ch* sound *sh* in *chauffeur* (sho'fer), *chaise* (*sh*), *chagrin* (*sh*), *moustache* (*sh*), *attache* (*sh*) but they also sound as k in *chord*, *choir*, *school*, *scheme*, *character*, *chemistry*, *chronicle*, *cholera*, *Christ*, *Christmas*. And to cap it all, the words *sc*eptic and *sc*hedule have *sc* as the first two letters but while the one is pronounced *sk*, the other *sh*.

How odd, then, the English pronunciation is! There are letters that sound at one place and remain silent at the other. Here they are in their dual role:

(A) *b* is silent in: climb, comb, crumb, debt, dumb, debtor, doubt, lamb, limb, numb, plumb, subtle, succumb, womb.

b is sounded in: *b*asket, *b*ail, *b*ook, *b*rick, *b*leat, crum*b*le, com*b*at, cla*m*ber, fum*b*le, hum*b*le, jum*b*le, lum*b*er, nim*b*le, mum*b*le, gam*b*le, tum*b*le.

(B) *c* is silent in: in*c*ict, vi*c*tuals, mus*c*le.

c is sounded in: *c*ell, *c*entre, *c*ensus, *c*entury, *c*entral.

1. CL BARBER: *The Story of Language;* p. 13
2. HW FOWLER: *Modern English Usage;* p. 485

(C) *d* is silent in: ba*d*ge, do*d*ge, gru*d*ge, gran*d*father, han*d*ful, hand-made, han*d*kerchief, han*d*some, ju*d*ge, lo*d*ge, ple*d*ge, ri*d*ge, sand-wich, san*d*stone, a*d*jacent, a*d*jective, a*d*jure, a*d*journ, Wednesday.

d. is sounded in: *d*ance, *d*eliver, para*d*e, re*d*, wo*d*.

(D) *g* is silent in: assi*g*n, beni*g*n, campai*g*n, desi*g*n, fei*g*n, forei*g*n, *g*nat, *g*naw, *g*nash, mali*g*n, poi*g*nant, resi*g*n, sovere*i*gn, si*g*n.

g is sounded in: a*g*ain, do*g*, di*g*nity, diagnosis, desi*g*nate, Go*d*, *g*oal, i*g*noble, i*g*norant, i*g*nite, ma*g*net, mali*g*nant, ma*g*nify, re*g*ain, resi*g*nation, si*g*nal, si*g*nature, sta*g*nant.

(E) *h* is silent in: *h*air, *h*eir, *h*our, *h*onour, *h*onorarium, *h*onest, ex*h*aust, ex*h*ibit, ex*h*ibition r*h*etoric, r*h*yme, shep*h*erd, w*h*at, w*h*en, w*h*ere, w*h*y, w*h*ich, w*h*ether.

h is sounded in: *h*eat, *h*it, *h*appy, *h*ot, *h*ero, *h*ill, ex*h*ale.

(F) *k* is silent in: *k*nee, *k*nife, *k*nell, *k*now, *k*nob, *k*night, *k*nowledge, *k*nock.

k is sounded in: ki*k*, li*k*, lea*k*, *k*oel, wee*k*, ree*k*, fa*k*e.

(G) *l* is silent in: ha*l*f, ca*l*f, ta*l*k, fo*l*k, ba*l*m, wa*l*k, a*l*mond, a*l*ms, ba*l*m, ca*l*m, pa*l*m, co*l*onel, cha*l*k, yo*l*k, wou*l*d, shou*l*d, cou*l*d.

l is sounded in: *l*abour, *l*ame, *l*isten, gir*l*, fu*l*fi*l*, mea*l*, pea*l*.

(H) *n* is silent in: autum*n*, colum*n*, condem*n*, dam*n*, hym*n*, solem*n*.

n is sounded in: autum*n*al, colum*n*ist, condem*n*ation, solem*n*ize, solem*n*ity.

(I) *p* is silent in: *p*salm, *p*sychology, *p*neumonia, cam*p*, cor*p*s, rece*i*pt, cu*p*board, em*p*ty, *p*seudonym, *p*syche, *p*sychiatric.

p is sounded in: *p*oint, *p*aste, *p*ush, *p*unch, stam*p*.

(J) *s* is silent in : cor*p*s, debri*s*, ai*s*le, i*s*land, i*s*let, preci*s*.

s is sounded in: *s*it, *s*eek, *s*ulk, *s*oft, *s*ea, *s*nake, *s*nail.

(K) *t* is silent in: cas*t*le, bus*t*le, wres*t*le, whis*t*le, of*t*en, lis*t*en, fas*t*en, has*t*en, debu*t*, depo*t*, bi*t*ch, nes*t*le, bris*t*le, buffe*t*, bouque*t*, Chris*t*mas, mor*t*gage.

t is sounded in: in*t*elligent, *t*rain, circui*t*, in*t*erview, s*t*a*t*us, *t*orme*n*t.

(L) *w* is silent in: *w*rap, *w*ring, *w*retch, *w*reath, *w*rit, s*w*ord, t*w*o, house-*w*ife, *w*rite, *w*rong, *w*ho.

w is sounded in: *w*ork, *w*ant, *w*all, *w*ait, a*w*ait, a*w*ake, *w*ind.

(M) *gh* is silent in: dau*gh*ter, hei*gh*t, li*gh*t, mi*gh*t, ri*gh*t, bou*gh*t, cau*gh*t, brou*gh*t, thou*gh*t.

Exercise

Identify the silent consonant letter in each of the following words:

1. buffet 2. mortgage 3. psalm 4. precis 5. coup 6. victuals 7. solemn 8. heir 9. handsome 10. balm

Answers: 1. *t* 2. *t* 3. *p* 4. *s* 5. *p* 6. *c* 7. *n* 8. *h* 9. *d* 10. *l*.

CHAPTER 10

Contractions

A: *What's* the matter with you?
B: *I've* got a headache.
A: *I'll* get you an aspirin.
B: You *needn't* bother about it.
A: Shut up, *can't* you?

The *italicized* words in this snatch of conversation are the shortened forms of a word or words. Such forms are called *contractions*. They are all too common in informal speech and writing which reproduces spoken language.

Look at the full forms of the contractions used above:

What's = What is	*I've* = I have
I'll = I will (also I *shall*)	*needn't* = need not
can't = cannot	

There are two possible ways of making two words into one:

(i) *pronoun + auxiliary verb*	(ii) *auxiliary verb + not*
I'm, you've, he'd	isn't, aren't, hadn't
we're, they've, it's	doesn't, won't (= will not)

The forms *'m, 've, 'd* and *'re* are written only after pronouns. But we write *'s* (= is / has) after nouns and question-words as well.

My *brother's* an Engineer. *Where's* the Town Hall?

We can have two possible contractions for an expression such as these:

You are not	= You aren't/ You're not
She is not	= She isn't/She's not
You had not	= You hadn't/you'd not
He will not	= He'll not/ He won't

In written contractions the two words are shortened by omitting one or two letters and joining the words together. The letters that are omitted are represented by an apostrophe (').

In spoken contractions the two words are shortened by omitting some sounds and pronouncing the two words as one.

If you want your English to sound natural you should use these contractions:

1. Personal Pronoun + Verb

Short form	*Full form*
I'm	I am
I've	I have
I'll	I will; I shall
I'd	I would; I had
you're	you are
you've	you have
you'll	you will
you'd	you would; you had
he's	he is; he has
he'll	he will
he'd	he would; he had
she's	she is; she has
she'll	she will
she'd	she would; she had
it's	it is; it has
it'll	it will
we're	we are
we've	we have
we'll	we will
we'd	we would; we had
they're	they are
they've	they have
they'll	they will
they'd	they would; they had

2. Verb + Not

Short form	*Full form*
can't	cannot
couldn't	could not
daren't	dare not
don't	do not
doesn't	does not
didn't	did not
hasn't	has not
haven't	have not
hadn't	had not
mightn't	might not
mustn't	must not
needn't	need not
oughtn't	ought not
shan't	shall not
shouldn't	should not
wasn't	was not
weren't	were not
won't	will not
wouldn't	would not

OTHER COMMON CONTRACTIONS

here's	here is
how's	how is?
that'll	that will
that'd	that would
that's	that is
there's	there is
what'll	what will

Exercise

Write the contracted forms of these:

1. I am
2. You are
3. He will
4. She will not
5. I cannot
6. must not
7. did not
8. have not
9. shall not
10. does not

Answers: 1. I'm 2. You're 3. He'll 4. She won't 5 I can't 6. mustn't 7. didn't 8. haven't 9. shan't 10. doesn't

REVISION TEST

1. *Can you say what names are given to these sciences or studies?*
(Each word has the ending *-logy*. The initial letter is given for a hint.)
(a) The study of antiquities a.....
(b) The science of the soul or mind p.....
(c) The study of handwriting g.....
(d) The study of man as an animal a.....
(e) The science of physical life b.....
(f) The science of birds o.....
(g) The study of insects e.....
(h) The science of the origin and structure of the universe c.....
(i) The study of myths m.....
(j) The scientific study of earthquakes s.....

2. *Can you give one word for each of these phrases?*
(The initial letter is given for a hint.)
(a) a literary theft p.....
(b) a general pardon a.....
(c) relating to the ear a.....
(d) a display of fireworks p.....
(e) violation of what is sacred s.....
(f) a declaration upon oath a.....
(g) the art of engraving on stone a.....
(h) having no fixed form or shape a.....
(i) one who copies what someone else has written a.....
(j) change of fortune, circumstances v.....

3. *Fill in the blanks with the right verbs:*
(a) Mice do not *scream*. They.....
(b) Elephants do not *howl*. They.....
(c) Sheep do not *bray*. They .....
(d) Tortoises do not *run*. They .....
(e) Leaves do not *ripple*. They .....
(f) The lame do not *leap*. They .....
(g) The wind *blows*, but the river .....
(h) A man *walks*, but a baby.....
(i) Coins *jingle*, but shoes.....
(j) A ship *sinks*, but a boat.....

4. *Complete the following nouns of multitude:*
(a) A *clump* of trees, but a ..... of puppies.
(b) A *team* of players, but a ..... of monkeys.
(c) A *troupe* of dancers, but a ..... of singers.
(d) A *bundle* of sticks, but a ..... of stars.
(e) A *bouquet* of flowers, but a ..... of rooms.

5. *Supply the missing letters in these words:*
(Each dot stands for one letter)

1. ASTRO.O.Y	study of the heavenly bodies
2. ASTRO.O.Y	science of predicting events by the stars
3. STATION.RY	not moving
4. STATION.RY	writing materials
5. MOMENT ...	of serious import
6. MOMENT ...	short-lived, transitory
7. BRID ..	reins, etc. to guide a horse
8. BRID ..	belonging to a bride, wedding
9. V. CATION	profession, calling
10. V. CATION	holiday

6. *Can you supply the word required from the clues provided?*

1. CAR....	a great slaughter
2. CAR	flesh-eating
3. PAN	uproar, confusion
4. PAN	a speech full of praise
5. DIP	a clever negotiator
6. DIP	a craving for alcohol
7. FUR	polish up, renovate
8. FUR	quiet and secret, trying to escape notice
9. CAP	to charm, allure
10. CAP	fickle, guided by whim or fancy

7. *Choose the right word from brackets to complete each sentence:*
   1. Hens *(quack, caw, cackle).*
   2. Birds *(pick, peck, nibble)* at corns.
   3. A doctor *(sees, feels, examines)* our pulse.
   4. The *(cobbler, plumber, glazier)* repairs broken pipes.
   5. The rule by wealthy people is *(aristocracy, plutocracy, theocracy).*
   6. *Tetracentennial* is the *(200th, 300th, 400th)* anniversary of an event.
   7. His face is as black as *(diamond, wood, coal).*
   8. The train runs on *(rails, lines, road).*
   9. The *(Dutch, Swiss, Spaniards)* are the inhabitants of Holland.
   10. The question tag of *I am* is *(am I ?/ am not I ?/ aren't I ?).*

8. (A) *Some words go in pairs. Write the words that often go with these:*

(a) horse and	(b) prince and .....
(c) landlord and.....	(d) duke and.....
(e) gods and.....	(f) might and.....
(g) hale and.....	(h) joys and.....

(B) *Underline the silent consonant letter or letters in each of the following words:*

knob, straight, weight, Wednesday, psychology, foreign, autumn, dumb, honest, handkerchief

9. *What names are given to the occupations of these people?*
   (a) He studies and collects coins. .....
   (b) He is an eye-doctor. .....
   (c) He specializes in heart diseases. .....
   (d) He specializes in the treatment of your feet and hands. .....
   (e) He specializes in designing ballet. .....
   (f) He collects postage-stamps. .....
   (g) He works in a mine underground. .....
   (h) He mends shoes. .....
   (i) He builds and repairs our house. .....
   (j) He sells sweets. .....

10. *Write the following:*
   1. adjective of 'tooth' .....
   2. opposite of 'rough' .....
   3. a young swan .....
   4. the past participle of 'bear' .....
   5. the plural of 'erratum' .....
   6. the singular of 'mice' .....
   7. the home of a pig .....
   8. loud ringing of bells .....
   9. take the skin off a fruit, etc .....
   10. a child born after the death of its father .....

Answers:

1. (a) archaeology (b) psychology (c) graphology (d) anthropology (e) biology (f) ornithology (g) entomology (h) cosmology (i) mythology (j) seismology
2. (a) plagiarism (b) amnesty (c) aural (d) pyrotechnics (e) sacrilege (f) affidavit (g) lithography (h) amorphous (i) amanuensis (j) vicissitude.
3. (a) *squeak* (b) *trumpet* (c) *bleat* (d) *crawl* (e) *rustle* (f) *limp* (g) *flows* (h) *toddles* (i) *creak* (j) *capsizes*.
4. (a) *litter* (b) *troop* (c) *choir* (d) *cluster* (e) *suite*.
5. 1. ASTRONOMY 2. ASTROLOGY 3. STATIONARY 4. STATIONERY 5. MOMENTOUS 6. MOMENTARY 7. BRIDLE 8. BRIDAL 9. VOCATION 10. VACATION.
6. 1. CARNAGE 2. CARNIVOROUS 3. PANDEMONIUM 4. PANEGYRIC 5. DIPLOMAT 6. DIPSOMANIA 7. FURBISH 8. FURTIVE 9. CAPTIVATE 10. CAPRICIOUS.
7. 1. *cackle* 2. *peck* 3. *feels* 4. *plumber* 5. *plutocracy* 6. *400th* 7. *coal* 8. *rails* 9. *Dutch* 10. *aren't I*.
8. (A): (a) carriage (b) princess (c) landlady (d) duchess (e) goddesses (f) main (g) hearty (h) sorrows.
   (B): (*k*)nob strai(*gh*)t wei(*gh*)we(*d*)nesday(*p*)sychology forei(*g*)n autum(*n*)dum(*b*) (*h*)onest han(*d*)kerchief.
9. (a) numismatist (b) oculist (c) cardiologist (d) chiropodist (e) choreographer (f) philatelist (g) miner (h) cobbler (i) mason (j) confectioner
10. 1. dental 2. smooth 3. cygnet 4. borne 5. errata 6. mouse 7. sty 8. peal 9. peel 10. posthumous

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

CHAPTER 11

Prepositions

A preposition is a word used to show the way in which other words are connected. It is used to express basic relationships between words. You can express the relationships of time and place by the use of a preposition. As for example,

I can see you *on* Friday/ *in* October / *at* 7 pm / *for* an hour, *etc.*

I'll meet you *at* university/*in* Delhi / *outside* the library / *on* the Delhi college campus, etc.

Besides the relationships of time and place you can use prepositions to express many other different kinds of relationships, such as

means— She came *by* train / *on* foot / *in* a motor-car, etc.
manner— She spoke *with* a smile / *in* a sweet tone.
reaction— I was shocked *at* his sudden death / *by* his cruel joke.
reason— I did it *for* my country / *out of* duty / *because of* my countrymen.

A preposition is, then, a link in the chain of a sentence. It ties a noun or pronoun to the rest of the sentence.

Write your address *in* the notebook.
There is a rat *under* the bed.
This piece of chalk is *for* you.
This letter is *from* him.

Prepositions can be used in a sentence to show space, or time, or direction, or agency, or association, etc.; as for example,

1. A few books have been placed *on* the desk. (showing *space*)
2. He arrived *before* lunch. (showing *time*)
3. I walk *to* town/*towards* the farm. (showing *direction*)
4. It was done *by* the night watchman *with* a knife. (showing *agency*)
5. He left *without* hope. (showing *association*)

The use of different prepositions in a sentence gives us different shades of meaning. As for example,

Meera danced *for* Govinda. (= for the sake of Govinda)
Meera danced *with* Govinda. (= They danced together.)
Meera danced *after* Govinda (= after Govinda had finished dancing)

Meera danced *behind* Govinda. (= with Govinda in the front)

A particular preposition can often be used to express different shades of meaning, such as—

1.	He will meet you *after* 2 o'clock.	(later than)
2.	Put the direct object *after* the verb.	(next in order to, following)
3.	It is a painting *after* Picasso.	(in the style of)
4.	The police ran *after* the thief.	(in pursuit of, in search of)
5.	She enquired *after* your health.	(regarding)
6.	A son takes *after* his father.	(resembles)
7.	*After* all my care it was broken.	(in spite of)
8.	Shut the door *after* you when you leave the room.	(behind)
9.	I shall never speak to him *after* what he has said about me.	(in view of, as a result of)

Sometimes the same word takes different prepositions to express various life situations. Take for example the word 'die' and 'divide'.

He died *of* cancer. He died *from* the loss of blood.
He died *through* neglect. He died *in* a train accident.
He died *by* his own hand. He died *for* his country.

Divide this mango *in* half. Divide this mango *into* four parts.
Divide forty *by* eight. Divide these apples *between* the two children.
Let me divide the property *among* my four sons.

Look at these, too:

Alive *in* every nerve; alive *to* every noble impulse; alive *with* fervour, hope, resolve; alive *through* all his being.

Alliance *with* a neighbouring people; *against* the common enemy; *for* offence and defence: alliance *of, between*, or *among* nations.

Agree *in* opinion *with* the speaker, *to* the terms proposed; persons agree *on* or *upon* a statement of principles, rules, etc; we must agree *among* ourselves.

A particular preposition can often be used to express more than one kind of relationship. For example we can use *by/on* for relationship of

time — *by* next month;	— *on* the appointed hour;
place — *by* the window;	— *on* the tree top;
means — *by* working overtime;	— *on* a bicycle;

(A) KINDS OF PREPOSITIONS

There are six different kinds of prepositions. They are as follows:

1. **Simple Prepositions**—*at, by, in, through; over, under,* etc.

He is *at* home. The tree was cut down *by* me. She has passed *through* many troubles. The sun shines *over* the earth. This road is *under* repair.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

2. **Double Prepositions**—*out of, from within, from among, from under*, etc.

Why were you driven *out of* the house? A voice came *from within* my heart. He was selected *from among* fifty candidates. We saw a poisonous snake emerging *from under* the water.

3. **Compound Prepositions**—*across, along, above, about, before, behind, beyond, beside, without*, etc.

His house is *across* the river. We walked *along* the river's bank. A sword is hanging *above* his head. She is *about* to be married. The train starts *before* six o'clock. The bus is *behind* its time. Her hut is *beyond* those hills. He is standing *beside* me. I have come *without* any clothes.

4. **Phrase Prepositions**— *on account of, in course of, on the point of, on the brink of, with an eye to, with reference to*, etc.

His scheme failed *on account of* the failure of the crops. He happened, *in course of* conversation, to reveal this secret. The patient is *on the point of* death. Our country is *on the brink of* a serious disaster. We are working hard *with an eye to* the future. Have you anything to say *with reference to* this question?

5. **Participial Preposition**—*concerning, considering, regarding, during, pending*, etc.

Let us talk with the chairman *concerning* this matter. *Considering* his age, he should be given light punishment. We will go home *during* the Puja holidays. Have you anything to say *regarding* his appointment to this post? *Pending* confirmation by the authorities concerned, the proposed meeting cannot be held.

6. **Disguised Prepositions** that is, weakened forms of the prepositions *on* or *of*:

They went out *a*-hunting (= on hunting). It is 10 *o*'clock (= of the clock) He has gone *a*-fishing (= on fishing).

(B) POSITION OF PREPOSITION

1. A preposition should be placed as near the word it governs as possible; as—

Raj called my place *at* early in the morning. (Incorrect)
Raj called *at* my place early in the morning. (Correct)

2. Generally a preposition comes before its object and it should be placed at the end of the sentence. In this connection some of the noted grammarians have this to say:

'You must never use a preposition to end a sentence up with' is an old joke, and introduces a superstition that dies hard. True, the very word preposition (placed in front of) suggests that the proper place for a preposi-

tion is in front of the noun or noun equivalent it governs, but where that is the place for it of its being there does not upset consonance of diction or idiom.

—[illegible]

Sometimes the preposition is best placed before the word it governs, sometimes at the end of the sentence or clause.

—[illegible]

In such a situation the writer must use his discretion and sense of style. It must be borne in mind that a preposition comes at the end of the clause of a sentence in the following cases:

(A) Prepositions are frequently placed at the end in questions beginning with *what, who, whom, where*, etc.

What is he looking *at*?	*Whom* did you give it *to*?
Who did you go *with*?	*Where* has he come *from*?

(B) Prepositions are placed at the end of passive structures; as—

He loves *being talked about*.
He has already *been operated on*.

(C) Prepositions often come at the end of clauses having infinitive structures; as—

I have no pen *to write with*.
It is a lovely place *to live in*.

(D) A preposition must come at the end of the clause or sentence when it governs a relative pronoun that is: (i) not expressed, (ii) represented by *as* or *that*; as—

This is the room I slept *in*.
There is the museum (that) I told you *about*.
This is the play (that) I am fond *of*.

(E) A preposition comes at the end of a contact clause. It is necessary when the preposition is felt to be more intimately connected with some verbs or other words or phrases in the clause than with the relative itself; as—

There is one more help which she cannot do *without*. —[illegible]

Thy love in return, which I cannot do *without*. —[illegible]

(F) Sometimes the object is placed first and the preposition last for the sake of emphasis; as—

He is famous all the world *over*.
He is busy all the year *round*.

3. Some prepositions are always placed before a relative pronoun: *besides, beyond, as to, except, during, opposite, round, outside, considering, concerning*; as—

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

It is the point *round* which the story revolves.
It is the place *beyond* which we cannot go.
He lives in a house *opposite* which stands an old temple.
His papers seemed to be everywhere *except* where they ought to be.

4. A preposition is generally placed before *whose:*

Under whose brim the gaudy sun would peep. — SHAKESPEARE

The woman *round* whose waist she had seen his arm.

—GALSWORTHY

5. *Up* and *down* are generally placed first (before a relative pronoun) except sometimes in short clauses; as—

There was a short cross-way, *up* which one saw the iron foundry.

-- DH LAWRENCE

6. *Than* is generally placed first, (before a relative pronoun) except sometimes in short clauses; as—

As old as woman's guile *than* which nothing human can be older.

— WJ LOCKS

Mr Toots—*than* whom there were a few better fellows in the world. — DICKENS

7. In a more formal style a preposition is placed before a question word; as—

To whom is this letter addressed?
By whom is the Prime Minister chosen?

8. Phrases of time like *morning, afternoon* and *evening* are preceded by the preposition *in* whereas *dawn, daybreak, noon, midday* and *midnight* are preceded by the preposition *at;* as—

The sun is the hottest *at midday*. He returns late *at night*.
I met him *in the evening*. He sleeps *in the afternoon*.

CAUTION

(A) It is better to avoid using the same preposition with two words unless it is appropriate to each of them; as

He is neither interested *in* nor fond *of* cricket.
He has no knowledge *of* and no interest *in* music.
He is angry *with* and indifferent *to* me.
I am pleased and satisfied *with* your progress.

(B) It is wrong to use the infinitive with certain words which require a preposition followed by a gerund. Some of these words are: *assist, confident, except, fond, hinder, insist, intent, persist, prevent, prohibit, refrain.*

1. What *prevented* you *to attend* the meeting? (*Incorrect*).
   What *prevented* you *from attending* the meeting? (*Correct*)
2. He *insists to go* to New York. (*Incorrect*)
   He *insists on going* to New York. (*Correct*)
3. He is *confident to win* this match. (*Incorrect*)
   He is *confident of winning* this match. (*Correct*)
4. He *assisted* me *to do* this work. (*Incorrect*)
   He *assisted* me *in doing* this work. (*Correct*)

(C) SOME PREPOSITIONS DISTINGUISHED

The misuse of preposition is one of the most common of errors. It is, therefore, advisable to know when and where to use a particular preposition. Here is a list of some prepositions distinguished.

1. *At* and *In*: *At* is used for small places, minor operations, definite part of space, definite point of time. *In* 'indicates a point of rest, the place where a person or thing is, including the idea of being close to a thing or person'.

He lives *at* Rajgir. He leaves his bed *at* 5 am.
The bus stood *at* the end of the Serpentine road.
The servant stood *at* the far end of the room.
He is staying *at* his uncle's place.
His son is *at* school.

At is also used with words denoting the rate, or degree at which a thing is done; as–

He drove the car *at* full speed.
Milk is selling *at* eight rupees a kilo.
He moved *at* a snail's pace.

At is also used in verbs of motion which indicate completion or attempt at completion: as–

The coolies rushed *at* the foreign tourists.
He simply aimed *at* the bird. He did not shoot it.

In is used before countries, large towns and a period of time in reference to future time; as—

He lives *in* South Africa.
He lives *in* Calcutta.
He will come *in* two days.

2. *In* and *Into*: *In* denotes position or rest inside something; *Into* denotes motion towards inside from outside; as–

There is a frog *in* this well.
A cat has just fallen *into* this well.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

3. *By* and *With*: *By* is used to indicate the doer or agent of an action. This is usually a person, but may sometimes be expressed by an abstract noun. *With* indicates the material, instrument or tool used in the action; as–

The stick was broken *by* Ranjana.
Let me write *with* a pen.
The horse was beaten *with* a whip *by* the rider.
He was struck *by* the beauty of Kashmir.

4. *In* and *After*: *In* is used with a period of time in reference to future. *After* is used to denote a period of past time; as–

I shall come back *in* (just at the expiry of) an hour.
He went there *after* a month.

5. *In* and *Within*: When *in* is used before a noun denoting a period of time, it means 'at the close of'. *Within* means 'before the close of'; as–

I shall be back *in* (at the close of) a month.
I shall be back *within* (before the close of) an hour.

6. *On* and *Upon*: *On* is used in speaking of things at rest; *upon* of things in motion; as–

He sat *on* the chair.
The dog sprang *upon* a cat.

7. *On* and *Over*: *On* denotes actual contact with some objects. *Over* does not do so; as–

He is standing *on* the road.
The plane flew *over* my head.

8. *Before* and *Within*: *Before* denotes point of time. *Within* denotes period of time; as–

He will reach *before* next January.
He will come back from UK *within* a month.

9. *At* and *About*: *At* denotes a fixed moment. *About* suggests proximity to a certain time; as–

He left work *at 3 o'clock*.
It is *about* seven now.

10. *Till* and *By*: *Till* means 'not earlier than'. *By* means 'not later than'; as–

I was kept waiting *till* 5 o'clock.
I shall return home *by* 10 o'clock.

11. *Within* and *By*: *Within* is used for space of time. *By* is used for point of time; as–

I shall submit my thesis *within* ten days.
He will come back *by* 8 o'clock.

12. *Between* and *Among*: *Between* is used in speaking of two persons or things; *among* is used in speaking of more than two persons or things; as–

Divide these apples *between* these two boys.
Divide these apples *among* these four boys.

Note: Sometimes, however, *between* can be used in speaking of more than two things: So far as honesty is concerned, there is not much to choose *between* the three men.'

13. *Beside* and *Besides*: *Beside* means 'by the side of' or 'near'. *Besides* means 'in addition to'; as–

He stood *beside* the RT bus.
He gave me a watch *besides* a pen.

14. *Since* and *For*: *Since* refers to a point of time and *for* to a period of time. They are generally preceded by a verb in the perfect tense; as–

He has been working *since* 5 o'clock.
I have not met him *for* three months.

15. *From* and *By*: *From* refers to time. It may be used with any tense, past, present, or future. *By* refers to point of future time and denotes some time before that time; as–

I began business *from* the age of twenty.
He will reach Agra *by* 6 o'clock in the morning.

(D) EXPRESSIONS WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

1. **The following words do not take a preposition after them**–*barring, considering, concerning, during, notwithstanding, pending, regarding, respecting, touching*; as–

Barring a few incidents, the atmosphere was otherwise peaceful.
Notwithstanding his weak position, he stood his ground manfully.
Considering his age, he should be given light punishment.
Pending the resolution of UNO, the two parties have agreed to maintain peace.

2. **No preposition is used before expressions of time beginning with** *next, last, this, that, every, any, all, each, today, before, tomorrow, yesterday*; as–

I met him *last Sunday*.	He comes home *every Saturday*.
I will see him *next week*.	He promised to come *today*.
He returned *this morning*.	I saw her *yesterday*.
Come *any day* you like.	I will help you *tomorrow*.
The meeting lasted *all night*.	I was busy *that evening*.
They stayed here *all week*.	He stood there *all day long*.

We almost always leave out the preposition before phrases beginning

with *last, next, this, that*; also before *today, yesterday, tomorrow*. (The phrases *at this/that time, on this/that occasion* are however normal.)

—G LEECH & J SVARTVIK

3. When used in the active voice the following verbs do not take any preposition after them; as–

accompany, afford, answer, ascend, ask, assist, attack, benefit, climb, combat, describe, discuss, enter, examine, inform, investigate, love, obey, order, pervade, pick, precede, probe, reach, recommend, request, resemble, resign, resist, sign, succeed, violate.

He *accompanied* me.
He *attacked* his enemy.
He *resisted* all temptation.
I *ordered* his dismissal.
Don't *violate* the rules.
I've *examined* the answerbooks.
Let's *discuss* this problem.
He *reached* his destination.
He *investigated* this case.
He has *signed* the document.
He *asked* me several questions.
An uneasy calm *pervades* here.

4. Expressions containing words like *height, length, shape, size, colour, age, area, volume* are usually connected to the subject of the sentence by the verb *be*, without a preposition; as–

He is *the same age* as me.
What colour are his eyes?
Both the buildings are *the same size*.
You're *the same weight* as you were last year.
He's *the right height* to be a boxer.
It is *the same shape* as your box.

5. We use *a / an* instead of a preposition in expressions such as *three times a day, fifty miles an hour, twenty rupees a kilo*, and similar expressions; as–

Take this medicine *three times a day*.
He drives his car *fifty miles an hour*.
He sells coal *two rupees a kilo*.
He fasts *twice a week*.

6. The preposition *at* is usually left out in (*At*) what time...?

What time does he get up? *What time* does the Delhi Express arrive?

7. The preposition *to* is not used before *home* provided the word *home* is preceded by *come, go, arrive, get, bring, send, take*: as–

Let's go *home*.
He comes *home* daily.
When does he get *home?*
They brought the dead *home*.

But we say,

My brother is *at home*.
Pray, stay *at home*.
I shall go *to his home*.
They'll come *to Ravi's home*.

(E) PREPOSITIONS OF TIME AND DATE

The prepositions of time and date are *by, at, in, on, during, for, since, from, after, before*. They are used in a variety of situations expressing different shades of meaning. We must, therefore, know where and when to use a particular preposition of time and date.

(a) *By* means 'not later than a given time'; as–

You must be back *by* four o'clock.
He must finish this work *by* 10 o'clock.

(b) *At* indicates exact point of time; as–

I got up *at* six o'clock in the morning.
He went to the tea party *at* six o'clock in the evening.

(c) *In* indicates a period of time; as–

He works *in* the morning.
This project will be completed *in* 1995.

(d) *On* indicates a day, or a part of a day, considered as a unit, on which some events occurred; as–

The meeting was held *on* the 15th of July, 1990.
We met him *on* the occasion of his marriage.

(e) *During* means 'throughout the length of a period of time'; as–

Europe was in the throes of war *during* 1914 to 1918.

During also means at some point in a period of time; as–

We returned to the base camp *during* the night.

(f) *For* indicates a period of time thought of as a whole; as–

I was detained *for* five hours.
I waited for you *for* four days.

(g) *Since* denotes some point of time; as–

I have not seen him *since* March last.
He has not met me *since* Monday last.

(h) *From* is used before a noun or a phrase denoting some point of time; it is used with other tenses except the perfect tense; as–

He started his work *from* the 1st of August.
Our examination will commence *from* 15th April 1992.

(i) *After* is used in reference to the past space of time; as–

I met him *after* a long time.
He came *after* a long gap.

(j) *Before* refers to a point of time; as–

The sun will rise *before* six o'clock.
He will come *before* five o'clock.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

[*Caution*: 'But *at night* indicates in or during the night, e.g., I came home late *at* night. The child is very restless *at night*. We sleep better *in the day* than *at night*. (also, *by day* than *by night*)]

(k) *On time* means exactly at the appointed hour, punctually; as–

The 10.30 train arrived *on time*.
He is *on time*.

But *in time* means 'not late'; as–
We were *in time* for the train.

Thus in English, different prepositions are used with different expressions of time and date. Here is a chart. It will help you know which prepositions to use.

Rules	Examples		
1. *in* before			
months	*in* March	*in* February	*in* July
years	*in* 1990	*in* 1988	*in* 1857
seasons	*in* spring	*in* winter	*in* summer
special expressions	*in* the morning	*in* the afternoon	*in* the evening
	in the next few days	*in* the last century	
2. *on* before	*on* Friday	*on* Monday	*on* Saturday
days of the week			
dates	*on* April 5th	*on* the 25th of December	
3. *at* before the time of day	*at* 8.30	*at* 6.15	*at* half past five
special expressions	*at* night	*at* midnight	*at* noon

(F) DIFFERENT USES OF SOME PREPOSITIONS

The same preposition can be used in a variety of situations to express different shades of thoughts. Let us take, for example, the preposition *in*.

He lost his way *in* the dark. (physical surroundings or circumstances)
It is a novel *in* four parts. (form, shape, arrangement)
It is a statue *in* marble. (material)
He is *in* poor health. (condition)
Have you seen the woman *in* white? (dress)
There are seven days *in* a week. (inclusion)
The papers are *in* my bag. (position)
He is *in* the Indian army. (occupation)
He lives *in* London. (large town)
He is young *in* years but old *in* wisdom. (relation, reference)

Here is a list of some of the commonly used prepositions with their different uses.

ON

(a) *supported by; fastened or attached to; lying against; in contact with*

pictures *on* the wall; a carpet *on* the floor; sit *on* the grass; float *on* the water; write *on* the paper; stick a stamp *on* the envelope; hang something *on* a nail; carry a jacket *on* one's arm; be/go *on* board a ship; have lunch *on* the train.

Have you any money *on* you? (in your pocket)

(b) *about; concerning*

a lecture *on* Milton; lecture/speak/write *on* the changing social scenario; be keen/determined/bent/set *on* something/*on* doing something.

(c) *indicating membership*

He's *on* this committee.
Are you *on* the jury?

(d) *indicating direction*

turn one's back *on* somebody; draw a knife *on* somebody; hit somebody *on* the head; march *on* the enemy's capital; smile/frown *on* somebody.

(e) *expressing the basis, ground or reason for something*

on the penalty of death; *on* an average; a story based *on* fact; *on* this/that/no account; retire *on* a pension; arrested *on* the charge of theft; act *on* somebody's advice; have something *on* good authority.

(f) *indicating a charge or imposition*

charge interest *on* money; put a tax *on* petrol; place a strain *on* the economy.

(g) *close to; against*

a house *on* the main road; a town *on* the coast; *on* both sides of the river; *on* my right/left.

(h) *followed by a noun or adjective; indicating an activity, manner, state*

on business; *on* holiday; *on* tour; *on* the way; be *on* the look-out for somebody; *on* fire; *on* sale; *on* loan.

(i) *added to*

suffer insult *on* insult/disaster *on* disaster

(j) *indicating time*

on Monday; *on* the 1st of July; *on* the evening of July the first; *on* New year's Day/Eve; *on* time, *on* the minute (punctually).

AT

(a) *to denote place and direction*

at the bus depot; *at* his office; *at* my uncle's

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

(b) *in the direction of; towards*

laugh/growl *at* somebody/something; rush *at* the enemy; look *at* something/somebody; throw something *at* somebody; shoot/aim a gun *at* something

(c) *indicating distance*

It looks better *at* a distance. Hold it *at* arm's length.

(d) *indicating frequency*

at all times; *at* regular intervals; *at* periodic intervals

(e) *indicating occupation*

What's he *at* now? (What's he doing?)
He's hard *at* it. (working hard)
They are *at* play. (They are playing.)
I am *at* work. (I'm working)

(f) *state, condition*

at peace; *at* leisure; *at* war

(g) *manner*

He finished the work *at* a sitting.

(h) *rate or degree, value, cost*

at full speed; *at* a snail's pace; *at* immense cost; sell something *at* a loss

(i) *with superlatives*

at least; *at* (the) worst; *at* his/their/its best

(j) *indicating a point of entrance or exit; through; by*

What the master says often goes in (*at*) one ear and out (*at*) the other.

(k) *indicating order*

at the second attempt; *at* first; *at* last

(l) *indicating a point of time*

at 3 o'clock; *at* sunset; *at* any moment

(m) *indicating an attempt to get or reach something, an uncompleted, or imperfect action*

That drowning man had to clutch *at* the oar. (tried to seize it)
We had to guess *at* the meaning.

BY

(a) *near; at* or *to the side of; beside*

Come and sit *by* me . My house is *by* the river.

(b) *showing direction of movement*

They came *by* the fields, not *by* the roads.

(c) *pass; past*

He goes *by* the telegraph office daily.

(d) *through the agency, means, or instrumentality of*

She makes a living *by* teaching.
The temple was designed *by* me.
The streets are lighted *by* electricity.

(e) *indicating path or means of travel, transport, conveyance*

travel *by* land/sea/air; go *by* bus/car/boat, etc.
send something *by* post/hand

(f) *indicating a part of the body that is touched, etc.*

I took him *by* the hand. He seized me *by* the hair.
He grabbed the thief *by* the scruff of his neck.

(g) *in accordance with; in agreement with*

By the terms of the agreement you've to pay Rs. 500.

(h) *according to*

It is 9 o'clock *by* my watch.
You mustn't judge him *by* appearance.

(i) *to the extent of*

The bullet missed him *by* the fraction of an inch.
She is too clever *by* half. (much too smart)

(j) *in oaths*

He always swears *by* God. She swears *by* you all the time.

(k) *to express division (in Arithmetic)*

Twenty divided *by* five is equal to four.

(l) *to express measurement*

This room is twenty feet *by* fifteen feet.

(m) *of time*

The enemy soldiers attacked *by* night.
Do you prefer travelling *by* night?/or *by* day?
Can you complete this work *by* tomorrow?
They ought to be here *by* this time.

FOR

(a) *indicating eventual possession*

Here's a message *for* you. Save it *for* me.
Are all these *for* you? She made tea *for* me.

(b) *indicating what is aimed at, or the attaining of something*

She was educated *for* the law. He was trained *for* lectureship.

(c) *indicating destination or progress or endeavours towards*

Let us set out *for* home. This is the train *for* Gaya.

(d) *indicating purpose*

Let's go *for* a walk/ride/swim, etc.
They work *for* their living.
I read *for* pleasure.
It is a mill *for* grinding wheat.

(e) *indicating liking, affection, etc.*

He has a weakness *for* gaudy dress.
He has a taste *for* classical music.
I have a strong liking *for* that young man.

(f) *indicating preparation to deal with a situation*

Let's prepare *for* the ensuing examination.
The boys are getting ready *for* school.
Let's lay in supplies of coal *for* winter.

(g) *indicating suitability, fitness*

You are fit/unfit *for* this job.
It is good/bad *for* your health.
He has no clothes proper *for* the occasion.
You are the very man *for* the job.

(h) *in view of (considering the circumstances, etc.)*

This boy is tall *for* his age.
It is quite warm *for* December.
It is not good *for* a beginner.

(i) *representing; in place of*

Will he act *for* me in this matter?
The letters DA stand *for* Dearness Allowance.

(j) *in defence or support of; in favour of*

Are you *for* or *against* this proposal?
I am all *for* an early solution to this problem.
Three cheers *for* the captain!

(k) *in spite of; notwithstanding*

For all his wealth, he is discontented.

(l) *With regard to; as far as it concerns*

I'm anxious *for* my father's safety.
You may take my word *for* it. (*believe me*)

(m) *to the amount or extent of*

The score of our team is 250 *for* three wickets.
The rival team was all out *for* 320.

(n) *in exchange for*

Put a new tree *for* every tree you cut down.
I paid Rs. 50 *for* the book.

(o) *indicating extent in time*

That is enough *for* the present.
I am going to Delhi *for* a few days.

(p) *indicating extent in space*

For miles and miles, there is no greenery to be seen.

(q) *in contrast with*

For one enemy he has ten friends.

(r) *indicating aptitude*

He has a good ear *for* music.
She has an aptitude *for* this language.

(s) *because of; on account of*

for the sake *of* peace; *for* my sake; *for* this reason;
for fear of discovery; suffer *for* one's sins;
dance/cry *for* joy; noted/famous *for* his wisdom

(t) *followed by an object of hope, wish, search, enquiry, etc.*

Let's hope *for* the best. Let's pray *for* peace.
Let's go to him *for* help. It's a cry *for* help.

OF

(a) *indicating cause*

He died *of* grief.
He is sick/afraid/ashamed/proud/glad/tired *of* something or some body.

(b) *indicating separation in space or time*

That village is five miles south *of* Delhi.
They were within a hundred yards *of* the airport.

(c) *indicating relief, deprivation, riddance*

Dr Sen cured me *of* this disease/bad habit.
You robbed me *of* my money/belongings.
You alone can relieve me *of* this anxiety.
Pray help me, I'm short *of* money.
The Pied Piper rid the town *of* all the rats.
These trees are bare *of* leaves.

(d) *indicating origin, authorship*

He is a man *of* humble origin. You're *of* royal descent.
Have you read the works *of* Shakespeare?

(e) *indicating material or substance*

a table *of* humble origin;
made *of* steel and concrete; built *of* brick

(f) *indicating connection, reference or relation*

the cause *of* the accident; the result *of* the debate;
the master *of* the house; the wall *of* the garden; a
topic *of* conversation; Master *of* Arts;
accused/suspected/convicted *of* a crime; dream *of* something;
sure/certain/confident/fond/guilty/innocent *of* something;
hard *of* hearing; blind *of* one eye; think well *of* somebody

(g) *indicating partition, inclusion, measure*

a sheet *of* paper; a roll *of* cloths; a pint *of* milk;
a ton *of* coal; two yards *of* cloth; four acres *of* land;
a lot/a great deal *of* that stuff; no more *of* that

(h) *indicating time*

What do you do *of* a Sunday // *on* Sundays?
He at times comes in *of* an evening, *in* the evenings.

OFF

(a) *not on; down from; away from*

He fell *off* a ladder/a tree/a horse.
The ball rolled *off* the table.
Cut another slice *off* the loaf.
Keep *off* the grass.

(b) *extending or branching from (of road or street)*

His house is *off* the main road.
Look at the ship anchored *off* the harbour entrance.

OVER

(a) *in or across every part of*

Snow is falling *over* the north of Kashmir.
He is famous all *over* the country.

(b) *from one side to the other; to or at the other side of*

We heard voices *over* the hedge.
He spoke to me *over* his shoulder.

(c) *in connection with; while engaged in; concerning*

We had a pleasant chat *over* a cup of coffee.

They all laughed *over* the affair.
He went to sleep *over* his work.

(d) *indicating superiority in rank, authority, etc.*

Akbar reigned *over* a great empire.
He has no command *over* his passion.
He has jurisdiction *over* two provinces.

(e) *resting on the surface of and covering, partially or completely*

Tie a piece of cloth firmly *over* the top of the jar.
Let us spread a cloth *over* the table.

(f) *at or to a level higher than, but not touching*

The balcony juts out *over* the street.
The telegraph wires *over* the streets are tight.
The sky is *over/above* our heads.

(g) *more than* (opposite of *under*)

He stayed in New York for *over* a year.
This river is *over* sixty miles long.
He spoke for well *over* two hours.

IN

(a) *for countries and large towns, and places important to the speaker*

in America; *in* the west of Asia; *in* Delhi; islands *in* the Indian ocean; the highest mountain *in* the world; *in* every quarter of the colony; not a cloud *in* the sky; *in* the background/foreground; *in* temple/church/mosque/prison; a holiday *in* the country/*in* the mountains; lying *in* bed; sitting *in* the armchair (but *on* a chair without arms); a stick *in* one's hand; a light *in* the distance; a ride *in* a motor car

(b) *of direction*

in this direction; *in* that direction; *in* all directions

(c) *indicating direction of motion or activity*

He dipped his pen *in* the ink. Cut/Break this cane *in* two.

Throw this rubbish *in* the fire.

(d) *of time when*

in the 20th century; *in* 1992; *in* the reign of Ashoka; *in* spring/winter/autumn/summer; *in* the morning/afternoon/evening; *in* the daytime; *in* the end; *in* future; *in* the past; *in* these/those days; *in* his youth; *in* my old age; *in* my absence; *in* his hour of triumph

(e) *of time; in the course of ; within the space of*

in an hour; *in* a moment; *in* a few days; *in* a short time; *in* a week's time

(f) *indicating inclusion*

a man *in* his forties; seven days *in* a week; four pints *in* a gallon

He has *in* him the makings of a good story writer.
He has nothing of the hero *in* him.

(g) *indicating ratio*

Not one *in* twenty of the boys could spell this word.

(h) *dress*

a king *in* disguise; *in* blue suit; *in* white shirt;
dressed/clothed *in* rags; a beauty *in* rags

(i) *indicating state or condition*

in good humour; *in* a troubled state; *in* tears; *in* a rage;
in ruins; *in* love; *in* debt; *in* doubt; *in* secret; *in* public;
in a hurry; *in* a trice; *in* fun/jest/joke; *in* earnest

(j) *indicating physical surroundings, circumstances*

sleep *in* the open; go out *in* the rain; grope *in* the dark;

(k) *indicating form, shape, arrangement*

boys sitting *in* rows; words *in* alphabetical order; a novel *in* five parts

(l) *indicating the method of expression, the medium, means, material, etc.*

written *in* ink/pencil; printed *in* italic type; painted *in* oils; cast *in* bronze; carved *in* oak; a statue *in* marble; payment *in* cash/*in* kind

(m) *indicating relation, reference, respect*

in every way; *in* some/all respects; deficient *in* courage; wanting/lacking *in* judgment; six feet *in* length; blind *in* the right eye

(n) *indicating occupation, activity, etc.*

in politics; *in* business; *in* the army; *in* the cabinet;
He was killed *in* action. (while fighting)

(o) *indicating identity*

We have lost an ace pilot *in* Roberts.

FROM

(a) *used to introduce the place, point, person, etc. that is the starting-point*

travel *from* Delhi to Madrid; move *from* place to place;
jump (down) *from* the wall

(b) *used to indicate the starting of a period of time*

from childhood; *from* day to day; *from* the first of April;
from beginning to end

(c) *used to indicate the place, object, etc. whose distance, absence, etc. is stated*

stay away *from* school; five miles *from* the coast;
be/go away *from* home

(d) *showing the giver, sender, etc.*

a book *from* my friend; a letter *from* my father;
a gift *from* my sister

(e) *art, showing the model, etc.*

painted *from* life; painted *from* nature

(f) *showing the lower limit*

There were *from* five to ten clerks absent.

(g) *used to indicate the source from which something is taken*

draw water *from* a well; draw conclusions *from* the evidence;
from this point of view; quotations *from* Tagore

(h) *showing the material, etc. used in a process, the material being changed as a result*

Steel is made *from* iron. Wine is made *from* grapes.

(i) *used to indicate separation, removal, prevention, escape, avoidance, etc.*

When was he released *from* prison?
Take that blade (away) *from* the baby.
What prevented/stopped/hindered him *from* coming?

(j) *used to indicate change*

Things are growing *from* bad to worse.
The price has increased *from* 50 paise to 75 paise.

(k) *showing reason, cause or motive*

suffer *from* starvation and disease; collapse *from* fatigue; do something *from* necessity, not *from* a sense of duty

(l) *showing distinction or difference*

distinct *from* other; different *from* others; differ *from* others

WITH

(a) *to indicate the means or instrument*

cut something *with* a knife; walk *with* a crutch; write *with* a pen; see something *with* your own eyes; take something *with* both hands; *with* the help of your neighbour

(b) *to indicate what is used for filling, covering, etc.*

Fill this bag *with* sugar. The hills are covered *with* snow. Let me stuff this bag *with* sand.

(c) *having; carrying; characterized by*

a jug *with* no handle; a coat *with* three pockets; a girl *with* blue eyes; a beggar *with* no clothes on; *with* your permission

(d) *to indicate accompaniment or relationship*

go for a walk *with* a friend; live *with* your parents; discuss a problem *with* somebody; mix one thing *with* another

(e) *to indicate antagonism, opposition*

fight/struggle/quarrel, etc. *with* somebody;
have an argument *with* somebody; battle *with* the smugglers

(f) *to indicate cause; because of; owing to*

shaking *with* fear; shivering *with* cold; trembling *with* fear; a face wet *with* tears

(g) *to indicate manner*

fight *with* courage; win *with* ease; *with* joy; *with* pleasure; do something *with* an effort/*with* a light heart;
with a roar/a growl/a shout of triumph; receive somebody *with* open arms

(h) *in the same way or direction as; at the same time as*

With the approach of spring, flowers begin to bloom.
A tree's shadow moves *with* the sun.
He rises *with* the sun.

(i) *to indicate care, charge or possession*

I have no money *with* me. Leave the child *with* its nurse. The decision rests *with* you.

(j) *in regard to; concerning*

sympathize *with* the sick; be patient *with* them;
bear/put up *with* somebody or something;
have dealings/business *with* somebody

(k) *to indicate separation*

Let us dispense *with* his services.
I parted *with* him at the college gate.
Why have you broken off *with* your friend?

(l) *to indicate agreement; harmony*

I am *with* you in what you say.
Does this dress go *with* the colour of her skin?

(m) *in spite of; notwithstanding*

With all his faults I still liked him.

(G) WORDS FOLLOWED BY APPROPRIATE PREPOSITIONS

Prepositional mistakes are all too common. Most of us falter when it comes to the correct use of preposition. A thorough study of the rules already discussed and the list of words followed by appropriate prepositions will certainly help you express yourself correctly on most occasions.

VERBS FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS

abide *by* a promise
abound *in* or *with* fish
abstain *from* wine
accede *to* a request
accord *with* or *to* a thing
account *to* a person *for* money entrusted
accuse *of* a crime
acquit (someone) *of* a charge
accuse (someone) *of* a crime
adapt (oneself) *to* circumstances
adhere *to* a plan
admit *of* an excuse, *to* a secret
agree *to* a proposal
agree *with* a person
aim *at* an object
alight *from* a carriage *on* the ground
allot *to* a person
allude *to* a matter
answer *to* a person
answer *for* conduct
apologise *to* a person
apologise *for* rudeness
appeal *to* a person
appeal *for* redress or help
appeal *against* a sentence
apply *to* a person *for* a thing
appoint (a person) *to* a post
apprise *of* a fact
approve *of* an action
argue *with* a person *for* or *against* a point
arrive *at* a place
arrive *in* a country
ask *for* a thing
ask *of* a person
aspire *after* worldly greatness
aspire *to* fame
atone *for* a wrong
attend *to* business
attend *on* a person
avail oneself *of* an opportunity
beg pardon *of* a person
beg *for* help *from* someone
believe *in* a person or creed
belong *to* a person
bestow (something) *on* someone
beware *of* a mad dog
blame a person *for* something
boast *of* something
borrow *from* a person
bow *to* a person or thing
break *into* a house
break bad news *to* a person
break *with* a person
bring a thing *to* light
bring a thing *under* notice
burst *into* flame
buy (something) *from* someone
call *on* a person
call *at* a place, a house
call *for* an explanation
care *for* a person or thing
catch up *with* someone
caution a person *against* a danger
charge a man *with* a crime

clear a man *of* blame
cling *to* a person or thing
come *across* a person or thing
come *by* a thing (obtain)
come *in for* punishment (receive)
come *to* (amount to)
come *to* light (be revealed)
compare *with* (for similar things)
compare *to* (for dissimilar things)
compensate a person *for* his loss
compete *with* a person
compete *for* a prize
complain *against* a person or thing
for something
complain *to* a person
complain *of* a pain, etc.
comply *with* one's wishes, request, order
conceal facts *from* anyone
concede *to* some demand
confer *on* a subject *with* a person *about* something
confide a secret *to* a person
confide *in* a person's honesty
confine *to* a room
conform *to* opinion
congratulate a man *on* his success
consent *to* some proposal
consist *of* something
consult a person *on* or *about* some matter
contribute *to* a fund
converse *with* a person *about* a thing
convict a person *of* a crime
convince a person *of* a fact
cope *with* a situation
correspond *with* a person (write)
cure a man *of* a disease
cut a thing *in* or *to* pieces
cut a thing *in* half
dabble *in* politics
dash *against* anything
deal *in* commodities
deal *with* a person (trade with)
deal *with* a subject (discuss it)
debar *from* doing something
decide *on* something
decide *against* something
decrease *in* size
defend a person *from* an attack
delight *in* something
deliver a person *from* danger
depend *on* a person or a thing
deprive a person *of* a thing
despair *of* success
deviate *from* a certain course
differ *with* a person *on* a subject
differ *from* someone or something
digress *from* a point
dilate *on* a subject
dip *into* a book
disagree *with* a person or thing
disapprove *of* anything
dispense *with* a man's service
dispose *of* a thing
dispute *with* a person *about* anything
dissuade a person *from* doing something
distinguish one thing *from* another
distinguish *between* two things
divide *in* half
divide *into* four parts
drink *to* a person's health
dwell *on* a subject
elicit *from* a person
embark *on* (board the ship)
embark *in* business
encroach *on* one's rights
engage *in* fight
enter *upon* a career
enter *into* an agreement
entrust a person *with* something
entrust a thing *to* a person

escape *from* prison
exchange one thing *for* another
exempt a person *from* a rule
exult *in* victory *over* a rival
fail *in* an attempt
fall *among* thieves
fall *on* the enemy (attack)
fall *in* love with a person
feed *on* something
feel *for* a person *in* his trouble
fight *for* the weak *against* the strong
fight *with* or *against* a person
flirt *with* a person
fly *into* rage
furnish a person *with* a thing
furnish a thing *to* a person
gaze *at* or *on* a thing or a person
get *over* an illness
get *at* facts (find out)
get *by* heart (learn)
get *on* *with* a person
get *out of* debt
get *through* an examination
glance *at* a book
glance *over* a letter
grieve *at* or *for* an event
grumble *at* something
guard *against* a danger
guess *at* something
hanker *after* riches
hear *of* an event
hide *from* someone
hint *at* a fact
hope *for* the best
hunt *after* or *for* anything
impose a fine *on* someone
impress an idea *on* a person
impress a person *with* an idea
increase *in* number
indulge *in* wine
inflict punishment *on* a person
inform (a person) *of* something
initiate a man *into* an order
inquire *into* a matter
inquire *of* a person *about* some matter
insist *on* doing something
interfere *with* a person *in* some matter
introduce a person *to* someone
intrude *on* one's leisure
intrude *into* one's house
invest money *in* some projects
invite (someone) *to* lunch
jeer *at* a person
judge a person *by* his deeds
jump *at* conclusions
kick *against* authority (resist)
knock one's head *against* the wall
lament *for* the dead
languish *for* want of help
laugh *at* a person or thing
lean *against* a wall
lean *on* something
lean *to* a certain opinion
listen *to* complaint
live *at* a place
live *in* a city
live *on* simple food
live *by* honest labour
live *on* an income
live *within* one's means
live *beyond* one's means
long *for* something
look *after* one's goods
look *at* a person or thing
look *into* a matter
look *for* a lost thing
look *through* an account
look *upon* someone as a friend
make *out* the meaning
make *up for* some loss
make *up* one's mind
marry one person *to* another

marvel *at* some sight or report
meddle *with* other men's business
meet *with* success
merge *into* anything
mourn *for* the dead
object *to* some proposal
officiate *for* someone on a post
operate *on* a patient
overwhelm *with* kindness/grief
part *with* a person or thing
partake *of* a meal
pass *from* one thing *to* another
pass *for* a wicked person
pass *over* something (disregard)
pass *by* a man's door
perish *by* the sword
perish *with* cold
persist *in* doing something
pertain *to* a question
pine *for* something
play *on* a musical instrument
play tricks *with* a person
plot *against* a person
plunge *into* a river
ponder *on* or *over* a subject
pounce *on* a thing
pray *for* pardon
prefer one thing *to* another
prepare *for* the worst
preside *at* or *over* a meeting
prevail *on* a person to do something
prevent one *from* doing something
proceed *with* a work
proceed *from* one place *to* another
proceed *against* a person (prosecute)
profit *by* something
prohibit *from* doing something
protect someone *from* danger
protest *against* injustice
provide *against* the evil day
provide *for* one's children
provide oneself *with* something
provoke a man *to* anger
pry *into* a secret
purge the mind *of* false notions
put *up with* somebody or something
quake *with* fear
qualify oneself *for* a post
quarrel *with* someone *over* something
rail *at* or *against* anyone
rebel *against* authority
reconcile oneself *to* a loss
reconcile oneself *with* an adversary
recover *from* an illness
refer *to* a matter, a book
reflect *on* a person or subject
relieve *of* something
refrain *from* doing wrong
rejoice *at* something
relate *to* a matter
rely *on* a person or thing
remind a person *of* a thing
render *from* one language *into* another
repent *of* an action
repose *on* a bed
repose confidence *in* a person
reproach *with* a fault
restrain a person *from* an act
result *from* (a cause)
result *in* (a consequence)
revolt *against* men in authority
rid *of* an unwelcome thing
rob a person *of* something
run *after* a person or a thing
run *into* debt
sail *for* a foreign country
save a person or thing *from* harm
scoff *at* something
search *for* a lost thing
see *into* an affair (investigate)
see *to* business (attend to)
send *for* a person or a thing

share *in* another's troubles
shelter *from* the rain
shoot *at* a target
side *with* a person *in* a dispute
speak *about* or *on* a subject
speak *to* a person
stand *against* an enemy
stand *by* a friend
stand *on* ceremonies
stand *to* one's opinion
stare *at* a person
stare a person *in* the face
stick *to* the point
struggle *for* the right
struggle *against* wrong
strip a person *off* his clothes
submit *to* an authority
succeed *in* something (e.g., exam.)
suffer *from* a disease
supply a thing *to* a person
surrender *to* the enemy
suspect (someone) *of* something
sympathize *with* a person *in* his troubles
take *to* a bad habit
take *in* a person [(i) deceive, (ii) admit]
take *to* a person (like him)
take *on* a task (promise to do)
take revenge *on* a person
take *up* music (study)
talk *of* or *about* an event
talk *over* a matter
talk *to* or *with* a person
tell *about* an event
testify *to* a fact
think *of* or *about* something
think *over* a matter
throw a stone *at* someone
tide *over* a crisis
touch *at* a place
touch *upon* a subject
translate *into* English
trespass *against* rules
trespass *on* a man's time
trespass *into* a man's house
trust *in* a person
trust *to* his honesty
turn verse *into* prose
turn *to* a friend *for* help
vie *with* another person
wait *for* a person or thing
wait *on* a person (attend)
warn a person *of* danger
warn a person *against* a fault
wink *at* one's fault
wish *for* something
weep *for* a misfortune
withdraw *from* a contest
wrestle *with* an adversary
yearn *for* affection
yield *to* a temptation or threat

NOUNS FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS

ability *for* or *in* some work
abundance *of* mangoes
access *to* a person or place
(in) accordance *with* rules
acquaintance *with* a person or a thing
advantage *over* a person *of* something
admission *into* a place
advice *on* some matter
affection *for* a person
agreement *with* someone
agreement *on* something
alliance *with* a person/state/country
anxiety *about* someone
appetite *for* something
appreciation *for/of* something

approach *to* anything
arrival *at* a place
arrival *in* a country
attention *to* something
attitude *toward(s)* something
authority *over* a person
authority *on* a subject
authority *for* saying or doing
aversion *to* something
bar *to* success
basis *for* something
candidate *for* election
capacity *for* something
care *for* his safety
care *of* his books
cause *for* anxiety
cause *of* trouble
chance *of* something e.g., success
choice *of* one thing or another
choice *between* two or more things
command *of* army, subject, situation etc.
comparison *with* something
comparison *between* two things
comparison *of* something *to* something
competition *with* a person
competition *for* a thing
complaint *against* a person
complaint *about* a thing
concern *about* a matter
concern *for* someone or something
concern *in* a business
confidence *in* someone
consequence *of* something
contact *with* something
contempt *for* a person or thing
contrast *between* two things, persons etc.
control *of* something
control *over* someone or a situation
correspondence *with* a person
correspondence *to* a thing
craving *for* something
cure *for* a disease
danger *of* something
demand *for* something
desire *for* something, food, wealth etc.
difference *between* two or more things
difficulty *in* doing something
disagreement *with* someone
disagreement *on/over* something
discussion *on/about* some subject
disgust *at* something
distaste *for* something
distrust *of* a person
doubt *about* something
duty *to* a person
enmity *with* a person
(in phrase) *at* enmity *with*
enmity *to/toward(s)* someone
exception *to* a rule
excuse *for* doing something
experience *in* doing something
experience *of* a thing
expert *in* something
exposure *to* something
expression *of* some thought
facility *for* something
failure *of* a plan
failure *of* a person *in* something
faith *in* a person or thing
fear *of* something
feeling *toward(s)* someone
feeling *about* something
fidelity *to* something or someone
fine *for* an offence
fondness *for* something
(has) a genius *for* figure works
(is) a genius *in* mathematics
grasp *of* something
gratitude *to* a person

gratitude *for* something
guess *at* the truth
hope *of/for* something
hunger *for* something
impression *on* someone
impression *of* something or someone
improvement *in* something
improvement *on* some other thing
influence *on/over* someone
information *about/on* something
interest *in* a subject
interest *with* a person
interference *in/with* something
invitation *to* a party
judge *of* something
knack *for* something
knack *of* doing something
knowledge *of* something, e.g., Sanskrit
lack *of* something, e.g., money
liking *for* something
limit *to* something
look *of* a thing
love *for* something, e.g., songs
lust *for* money
malice *against* a person
match *for* something or someone *in* some skill
method *of* doing something
motive *for* some action
necessity *for* something
need *of* something
(in phrase) *in need of*
need *for* something, e.g., a book, help, etc.
nomination *of* a person
nomination *to* a post
objection *to* something
opinion *on/about* something
order *for/against* doing a thing
payment *for* something
penalty *for* an offence
pity *for* someone /*on* someone
(in phrase) *take pity on*
preference *of* something or someone
prejudice *against* something or someone
preparation *for* something
prevention *against* something. e.g., a disease
proficiency *in* something, e.g., English
progress *in* something, e.g., studies
proof *of* something
provision *for* something
punishment *for* a crime
pursuit *of* something, e.g., knowledge
qualification *for* a post
quarrel *with* another person
quarrel *between* two persons
reaction *to* something
recovery *from* an illness
regard *for* someone
regret *for* something done
relation *with* a person
relief *from* some trouble
remedy *for* an illness, etc.
reply *to* some person or a letter
request *for* a thing
resemblance *to* something or someone
resemblance *between* two things or persons
respect *for* a man or office
response *to* something
result *of* something that has taken place
revenge *on/upon* a person
revenge *for* something done, e.g., an insult
reward *for* something
search *for/after* wealth

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

(in) search *of* a job
sin *against* God
skill *in* something
slur *on* his character
stranger *to* a place
substitute *for* something else
suggestion *for* some course of action
superiority *over* a person
surprise *at* something
sympathy *for* a person
talent *for* something
taste *for* hard work
thankful *to* a person
thankful *for* something
thirst *for* something
tolerance *for* something
triumph *over* an opponent, a difficulty
trespass *against* the law
use *of* something
use *for* something
victim *of* a trick, circumstances
victory *over* his enemy
want *of* money
warrant *for* his arrest
witness *to* something that happens
zeal *for* something
zest *for* something, e.g., life

ADJECTIVES FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS

absorbed *in* thought, work
acceptable *to* a person
accomplished *in* music
accountable *to* a person
accountable *for* a thing
accused *of* a crime
accustomed *to* something
acquainted *with* a person, a subject
acquitted *of* a charge
addicted *to* a habit, etc.
affectionate *to* children, etc.
afraid *of* something
alarmed *at* something
alive *to* a danger
allied *with* a country, party, etc.
allied *to* something
amazed *at* something
angry *with* a person
angry *at* something
annoyed *at* something
annoyed *with* a person *for* saying or doing something
answerable *to* a person
answerable *for* something
anxious *about* something
applicable *to* a person or thing
appropriate *to* an occasion
ashamed *of* something
associated *with* a person or thing
astonished *at* something
averse *to* something, e.g., hard work
aware *of* something
bent *on* something
beset *with* difficulties, dangers, etc.
blessed *with* good health
blind *to* one's own fault
blind *of* an eye
boastful *of* something
born *of* rich, poor parents
bound *for* a place
busy *with* something
capable *of* something
careful *about* one's health, dress, money, etc.
careful *with* one's work
certain *of* something
certain *about* failure
charged *with* a crime
clear *of* blame
committed *to* a course of action
common *to* everyone
comparable *to* something

confident *of* success
concerned *about* something
concerned *with* a person or place
contented *with* something
contrary *to* rule
convicted *of* a crime
convinced *of* a fact
deaf *to* advice
defective *in* workmanship
deficient *in* something
delighted *with* one's success
delighted *at* the news
deprived *of* one's right
determined *on* doing something
devoid *of* something
different *from* something
disappointed *with* a person
disappointed *in* our hopes
disappointed *at* something
disgusted *with* a thing
disgusted *at / with a* person
displeased *with* a person
disqualified *for* a post
disqualified *from* competing
doubtful *of* success
doubtful *about* what to do
eligible *for* appointment
endowed *with* an ability
engaged *in* something
engaged to a person
entitled *to* something
envious *of* someone, something
essential *to / for* happiness
equal *to* the occasion
exhausted *with* work
exposed *to* danger
faithful *to* a person
familiar *to* a person
familiar *with* a language
famous *for* something
fascinated *by* something
favourable *to* a person
fit *for* a position
fond *of* music
full *of* something
foreign *to* something
gifted *with* an ability
glad *of / about* something
good *at* something, e.g., cricket, studies, etc.
good *for* nothing
grateful *to* a person
grateful *for* something
greedy *for* something
guilty *of* a crime
harmful *to* something, e.g., health
honest *in* his dealings
honoured *with* something
hopeful *of* success, gain, etc.
identical *with* something
ignorant *of* something
ill *with* fever
impatient *with* someone
impatient *at* something happening
impatient *of* something, e.g., waiting for a long time
indebted *to* a person
indebted *for* some kindness
inclined to something
independent *of* something
indifferent *to* something
indispensable *to* some task or result
infested *with* something, e.g., rats
informed *of* a fact
innocent *of* a charge
inspired *with* hope
intimate *with* a person
introduce *to* a person
introduce *into* a place
irrelevant *to* something
jealous *of* a person or thing
lame *of* one leg
liable *for* something e.g., debts

liable *to* a fine, illness, etc.
loyal *to* a person
mad *with* anger, rage, etc.
mad *about / at* something e.g., missing the train
mad *for* something
mistaken *for* a thing or a person
moved *to* tears
moved *with* pity
moved *at* the sight
moved *by* requests
negligent *in* work
negligent *of* duties
notorious *for* something bad
obliged *to* a person
obliged *for* something
occupied *with* some work
offended *with* a person
overwhelmed *with* grief, pity, gratitude, etc.
parallel *to* something
partial *to* someone
peculiar *to* a person or a place
polite *to* a person
polite *in* manners
preferable *to* something else
prepared *for* something
proficient *in* something, e.g., music, Sanskrit
profitable *to* a person
proper *for* an occasion
proud *of* something
qualified *for* teaching English
quick *of* understanding
quick *at* mathematics
ready *for* something
ready *in* one's answers
reduced *to* poverty
regardless *of* something
related *to* a person
relevant *to* some matter or subject
repentant *of* one's mistakes
respectful *to* a person
responsible *to* a person
responsible *for* something
restricted *to* place, person, quantity, etc.
rich *in* something
rid *of* trouble
sacred *to* someone
satisfied *with* something
sensitive *to* something, e.g., criticism
serviceable *to* a person
shocked *at* one's behaviour
shocking *to* everyone
short *of* something needed, e.g., money
silent *about* a matter, etc.
similar *to* something
skilful *in* doing something
slow *at* something, e.g., doing sums
slow *in* making up one's mind
sorry *for* someone
sorry *about* something
subject *to* rules, authority, etc.
sufficient *for* a purpose
suitable *for* a purpose, e.g., a post
sure *of* success
suspicious *of* someone
tired *of* doing something
true *to* his conviction
vexed *with* a person
vexed *at* something, e.g., failures
void *of* meaning
wanting *in* something, e.g., commonsense
weak *in* spelling, English, etc.
worthy *of* praise

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

(H) SOME TROUBLESOME PREPOSITIONS

agree with a person—I hope you will *agree with* me on this point. This climate does not *agree with* me. (*suit me*)

agree to a proposal or an opinion—I do not *agree to* your proposal. Nor do I *agree to* your opinion.

agree on a matter or terms—They all *agreed on* the terms fixed.

agree about a subject of discussion—Have they *agreed about* the prices yet?

angry with a person—I am *angry with* you for not helping me.

angry at or *about* something—I am *angry at* your rude behaviour. What is he *angry about*?

apologize to a person—I had to *apologize to* him.

apologize for causing pain or trouble—I *apologized* (to him) *for* stepping on his foot.

bad at something—He is *bad at* studies. She is *bad at* English. I'm *bad at* chess.

capacity of (*ability to contain*)—This room has a *capacity of* fifty seats.

capacity for (*ability to do things*)—We are all praise for his *capacity for* hard work.

clever at something—He is *clever at* figure works.

consist in (*to have its being in*)—The beauty of Venice *consists in* the style of its ancient buildings.

consist of (*be made up of*)—This committee *consists of* three High Court judges.

correspond to (*be similar to*)—Her actions do not *correspond to* her professions.

correspond with (*exchange letters*)—Do you ever *correspond with* your friends in America?

cure of (as a verb)—Dr Verma *cured* me *of* my disease.

cure for (as a noun)—There is no *cure for* gout.

differ with (*disagree with*)—I *differ with* you on this point.

differ from (*unlike, different from*)—My house *differs from* your house in many respects.

dream of (*imagine, think of*)—I often *dreamed of* being an actor when I was a child.

dream about something—What did you *dream about* last night?

engaged in (*busy with*)—I am *engaged in* writing an article.

engaged to (*agreed to marry*)—Rita is *engaged to* Rajesh: they will be married next year.

enquire about (*ask for information about*)—I want to *enquire about* the date of exam.

enquire into (*investigate, examine*)—Let's *enquire into* this matter.

enquire after (*ask about someone's health or welfare*)—He was *enquiring after* your father.

entrust something *to* somebody—Can I *entrust* the task *to* you?

entrust somebody *with* something—I have *entrusted* him *with* this task.

familiar with (*having a good knowledge of*)—I am not very *familiar with* botanical names.

familiar to (*well-known to*)—These subjects are *familiar to* me.

get in (*to*) and *out of* (a car, taxi, or small boat)—When I *got into* the car, I found that the key was missing.

get on (*to*) and *off* (a bus, train, plane, or ship)—We'll be *getting off* the bus at Rajgir.

good at something—He is *good at* studies. You are *good at* English. She is *good at* chess.

ill with (NOT *from*)—He has been *ill with* malaria for weeks.

interfere in something (*take part in it in an unwanted manner*)—I don't *interfere in* his affairs these days.

interfere with something (*get in the way, prevent*)—The sound of the radio *interfered with* my work.

insist on (NOT *to*)—He *insisted on* doing this work.

kind to (NOT *with*)—My neighbours are very *kind to* me.

look at (*point one's eyes at*)—He is *looking at* the glorious lamp of the day.

look after (*take care of*)—A mother *looks after* her children.

look for (*try to find*)—He is *looking for* a good job.

look into (*examine*)—Let me *look into* this matter.

pay in cash—Let me *pay in* cash.

pay by cheque—You can *pay* either *in* cash or *by* cheque.

polite to (NOT *with*)—You must be *polite to* your teachers.

reason for (NOT *of*)—Nobody knows the *reason for* his absence.

rude to (NOT *with*)—You were pretty *rude to* my eldest brother.

run after (*try to catch*)—The dog *ran after* the rabbit.

run into somebody (*meet unexpectedly*)—I *ran into* my old friend in the market yesterday.

sorry for a person—I feel really *sorry for* these street urchins.

sorry about something that has happened—I am really *sorry about* your poor showing in the interview.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

taste of (experience, have a taste of)—The valiant never *taste of* death but once.

taste for (liking for)—I have no *taste for* classical music.

useful to a person—This magazine is very *useful to* me.

useful for a purpose—These things are *useful for* my research project.

write in ink or pencil—Let me *write* either *in* ink or *in* pencil.

write with a pen or pencil—I can *write with a* pen or *with a* pencil.

[**Note**—When you use the preposition 'with', 'pencil' is preceded by an article. And when you use the preposition 'in', the article before 'pencil' is dropped out.]

Look at these charts, too.

(1)

Die	*of*	disease, illness, hunger, thirst, grief
	from	a wound, over-eating
	for	one's ideals, one's country
	in	an accident, battle
	by	violence, one's own hands (i.e., commit suicide)
	through	neglect

(2)

She is sitting	*in*	an armchair, the car
	at	a table, a desk
	on	the chair, the ground, the floor, a horse, that seat

(3)

come go travel	*by*	car bus train boat plane bicycle

(I) APPROPRIATE PREPOSITIONS

1. Here are some verbs which are followed by *about*:

agree	care	forget	moan	talk
argue	chat	fret	muse	tell
ask	complain	fuss	protest	think
boast	consult	groan	rave	warn
brag	disagree	grumble	read	wonder
brood	dream	inquire	speak	worry

2. Here are some nouns which are followed by *about*:

advice	decision	misgivings	row
agreement	fuss	news	
anxiety	idea	opinion	
book	information	phobia	
chat	joke		
concern	judgment	prediction	
consultation	lecture	quarrel	
debate	letter	question	

3. Here are some adjectives which are followed by *about*:

adamant	embarrassed	optimistic	unclear
angry	enthusiastic	passionate	unconcerned
annoyed	fussy	pleased	undecided
anxious	guilty	positive	uneasy
apprehensive	happy	sceptical	unhappy
bothered	ignorant	sensitive	unsure
certain	indignant	sentimental	upset
complacent	miserable	serious	vague
concerned	mistaken	sorry	wary
crazy	nervous	uncertain	worried

4. Here are some verbs which are followed by *against*:

(a)	agitate	compete	play	
	align	conspire	plot	
	ally	fight	side	
(b)	advise	guard	insure	vaccinate
	counsel	immunize	insulate	protect
	fight	inoculate	militate	warn

5. Here are some nouns which are followed by *against*:

(a)	aggression	boycott	crime	victory
	ally	fight	match	
	battle	conspiracy	war	
(b)	battle	campaign	insurance	shield
	blow	defence	legislation	war
	bulwark	fight	safeguard	

6. Here are some transitive verbs which are followed by *as*:

acknowledge	class	designate	name
address	classify	diagnose	nominate
adopt	conceive	disguise	perceive
brand	condemn	elect	project
cast	consider	employ	regard
categorize	construe	establish	stamp
certify	count	hail	use
characterize	denounce	interpret	
choose	depict	label	
cite	describe	mark	

7. Here are some intransitive verbs which are followed by *as*:

act	double	pose
begin	function	serve
come	pass	work

8. Here are some verbs which are followed by *at*:

(a)	gape	glance	look	
	gaze	glare	stare	
(b)	bark	shout	swear	
	scream	snap	yell	
(c)	beam	grin	smile	wave
	frown	scowl	sneer	wink
(d)	aim	grasp	snatch	
	clutch	guess	strike	
	grab	shoot	throw	
(e)	dab	hack	pick	tear
	gnaw	nibble	poke	work
(f)	exclaim	marvel	shudder	
	frown	rail	smile	
	jeer	rave	sneer	
	laugh	scoff	wander	

9. Here are some adjectives which are followed by *at*:

aghast	annoyed	embarrassed	pleased
alarmed	appalled	furious	surprised
amazed	astonished	impatient	unhappy
amused	bewildered	indignant	upset
angry	disappointed	irritated	

10. Here are some nouns which are followed by *between*:

(a)	agreement	consultation	link
	alliance	contact	merger
	antagonism	co-ordination	misunderstanding

balance	correspondence	partnership	
battle	encounter	rapport	
band	feud	relationship	
breach	fight	split	
collision	friendship	truce	
connection	interplay	understanding	

(b)

contrast	disparity	gulf	similarity
difference	distinction	inequality	
discrepancy	gap	parity	

11. Here are some verbs which are followed by *by*:

abide	live	stick
go	stand	swear

12. Here are some verbs which are followed by *between*:

(a)

advertise	bargain	grope	search
aim	fight	hunt	send
apply	fish	look	wait

(b)

appeal	call	hope	lust	press
ask	clamour	hunger	pine	wish
beg	hanker	long	pray	yearn

13. Here are some nouns which are followed by *for*:

admiration	disdain	enthusiasm	nostalgia
affection	dislike	hatred	partiality
affinity	disregard	love	passion
appreciation	disrespect	lust	predilection
contempt	distaste	mania	weakness

14. Here are some verbs which are followed by *from*:

(a)

beg	come	glean	receive
borrow	elicit	inherit	
buy	get	obtain	

15. Here are some verbs which are followed by *from*:

(a)

cut	disconnect	separate
detach	remove	

(b)

change	fall	switch	translate
convert	graduate	transform	turn

16.

(a)

conceal	insulate	shelter
guard	keep	shield
hide	protect	withhold

(b)

ban	deter	dissuade	stop
stop	discourage	keep	
deflect	disqualify	prevent	

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

17. Here are some verbs which are followed by *in*:

assist	fail	intervene	mediate
believe	gain	invest	revel
collaborate	glory	involve	share
dabble	implicate	join	specialize
deal	indulge	luxuriate	wallow
engage	interfere	meddle	

18. Here are some nouns which are followed by *in*:

(a)

belief	decrease	fluctuation	skill
breach	delight	improvement	slump
catch	development	increase	stake
change	exercise	interest	upsurge
confidence	experiment	part	voice
cut	faith	pride	
decline	fall	say	

(b)

difference	equality	similarity
disparity	inequality	variation

19. Here are some verbs which are followed by *into*:

(a)

bully	deceive	galvanize	seduce
coax	delude	pressurize	shame
coerce	frighten	push	trick

(b)

blossom	develop	make
change	divide	transform
convert	evolve	translate
degenerate	grow	turn

20. Here are some intransitive verbs which are followed by *of*:

approve	conceive	dispose	learn	smell
beware	consist	dream	partake	speak
boast	despair	hear	savour	think
complain	disapprove	know	smack	weary

21. Here are some transitive verbs which are followed by *of*:

absolve	avail	cure	make
accuse	cheat	denude	notify
acquit	cleanse	deprive	purge
advise	convict	divest	warn
assure	convince	inform	

22. Here are some adjectives which are followed by *of*:

afraid	beloved	contemptuous	expressive
appreciative	bereft	critical	fond
apprehensive	capable	devoid	forgetful
ashamed	certain	empty	free
aware	characteristic	enamoured	full
bare	conscious	envious	guilty

ignorant	intolerant	scared	uncertain
impatient	jealous	sceptical	unconscious
incapable	nervous	scornful	unsure
independent	oblivious	short	unworthy
indicative	possessed	unafraid	wary
insensible	proud	unaware	worthy

23. Here are some transitive verbs which are followed by *on*:

base	confer	impose	lavish
blame	force	inflict	model

spend

24. Here are some intransitive verbs which are followed by *on*:

bet	count	gamble	intrude
build	depend	impinge	lean
capitalize	embark	impose	plan
check	encroach	improve	prevail
choke	focus	infringe	rely
concentrate	frown	insist	settle

verge

25. Here are some nouns which are followed by *on*:

assault	boycott	embargo	limitation
attack	burden	emphasis	onslaught
attempt	claim	focus	restriction
ban	effect	limit	

26. Here are some nouns which are followed by *on*:

advice	debate	lecture	remark
agreement	decision	legislation	report
book	ideas	outlook	verdict
commit	judgment		

27. Here are some adjectives which are followed by *on*:

adamant	dependent	fair	hooked	intent
bent	easy	hard	incumbent	keen

28. Here are some verbs which are followed by *on*:

advise	elaborate	muse	remark
agree	expand	ponder	report
comment	lecture	pronounce	speculate
decide	meditate	reflect	vote
dwell			

29. Here are some verbs which are followed by *over*:

argue	fight	muse
brood	fret	quarrel
clash	fuss	quibble
disagree	gloat	row
enthuse	grieve	wrangle

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

30. Here are some nouns which are followed by *over*:

anxiety	debate	outcry
battle	fuss	quarrel
concern	misunderstanding	row

31. Here are some verbs which are followed by *through*:

browse	glance	look	thumb
flick	go	run	wade
flip	leaf	skim	work

32. Here are some verbs which are followed by *to*:

(a)	beckon	give	point	signal
	demonstrate	offer	show	wave
(b)	announce	explain	say	
	apologize	mention	speak	
	complain	mutter	talk	
	confide	report	write	
(c)	change	fall	return	
	convert	promote	turn	

33. Here are some adjectives which are followed by *to*:

(a)	courteous	fair	kind	sympathetic
	cruel	faithful	loyal	unfair
	devoted	friendly	nice	unfaithful
	disloyal	indifferent	partial	unkind
(b)	accustomed	identical	proportional	vulnerable
	adjacent	immune	sensitive	
	allergic	impervious	similar	
	central	indebted	subordinate	
	comparable	inferior	superior	
	equal	irrelevant	susceptible	
	equivalent	married	unaccustomed	
	essential	parallel	useful	
	fundamental	preferable	vital	

34. Here are some verbs that are followed by *with*:

(a)	ally	confer	merge
	amalgamate	conspire	negotiate
	associate	dance	share
	chat	debate	speak
	coexist	discuss	trade
	collide	intereact	work
(b)	argue	disagree	row
	bargain	feud	struggle
	clash	fight	vie
	compete	haggle	wrangle

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

35. Here are some adjectives which are followed by *with*:

(a) alarmed, bursting, cluttered, crawling, crowded, draped, embellished, engraved, filled, furnished, heaped, heavy, infested, inlaid, laden, littered, loaded, overgrown, overloaded, packed, painted, patterned, peopled, piled, rich, riddled, studded, stuffed, suffused, swamped, teeming, thick, tinged

(b) angry, annoyed, bored, content, disappointed, displeased, dissatisfied, fascinated, fed up, furious, happy, impressed, infatuated, obsessed, pleased, satisfied, unhappy, unimpressed, unsatisfied

(c) acquainted, afflicted, comparable, compatible, confronted, connected, consistent, conversant, engaged, faced, familiar, frank, free, friendly, impatient, incompatible, inconsistent, infected, intoxicated, level, mixed up, occupied, parallel, patient, popular, unacquainted, unconnected, unfamiliar

Exercises

I. *Select the most suitable preposition from the four choices given for each sentence.*

1. He is born ... rich parents.
   (a) *for* (b) *of* (c) *from* (d) *by*
2. We are committed ... a policy of peaceful co-existence.
   (a) *to* (b) *with* (c) *for* (d) *in*
3. He insists ... leaving immediately.
   (a) *against* (b) *over* (c) *for* (d) *on*
4. His company is greatly sought ...
   (a) *at* (b) *after* (c) *for* (d) *out*
5. He is one person, I count ... in times of difficulty.
   (a) *at* (b) *in* (c) *with* (d) *on*
6. Fate smiles ... him in all his ventures.
   (a) *upon* (b) *at* (c) *with* (d) *for*
7. We are accustomed ... doing hard work.
   (a) *in* (b) *of* (c) *to* (d) *with*

8. Few persons in the world die ... overwork.
(a) *from* (b) *of* (c) *with* (d) *to*

9. A blind man cannot distinguish light ... darkness.
(a) *between* (b) *from* (c) *with* (d) *to*

10. Will you entrust me ... that money?
(a) *to* (b) *for* (c) *with* (d) *by*

II. *Four alternative sets are suggested for each sentence. Choose the correct set.*

1. He arrived ... the airport ... time for the plane.
(a) *in, in* (b) *at, on* (c) *on, in* (d) *at*, in

2. You're always ... a hurry. You drive ... a tremendous speed.
(a) *for, at* (b) *in, at* (c) *on, with* (d) *in, with*

3. I'm interested ... cricket but I'm not very good ... it.
(a) *in, in* (b) *in, with* (c) *in, at* (d) *with, at*

4. What platform does the train ... Delhi leave ... ?
(a) *for, from* (b) *of, from* (c) *in, from* (d) *for, by*

5. She was fined ... parking her car ... a no-parking area.
(a) *for, on* (b) *for, in* (c) *for, at* (d) *for, with*

6. The house is ... fire! Send ... the Fire Brigade.
(a) *in, for* (b) *on, for* (c) *at, for* (d) *on, off*

7. He is not sitting ... his desk but ... his armchair.
(a) *with, on* (b) *on, on* (c) *at, in* (d) *at, on*

8. A hawker goes ... house ... house.
(a) *to, to* (b) *from, at* (c) *by, to* (d) *from, to*

Answers: I. 1. (b) *of* 2. (a) *to* 3. (d) *on* 4. (b) *after* 5. (d) *on* 6. (a) *upon* 7. (c) *to* 8. (a) *from* 9. (b) *from* 10. (c) *with*.

II. 1. (d) *at, in* 2. (b) *in, at* 3. (c) *in, at* 4. (a) *for, from* 5. (b) *for, in* 6. (b) *on, for* 7. (c) *at, in* 8. (d) *from, to*.

BRIEF INTERMISSION

Break	*down*	of taxi, car, bus
	into	a house
	off	relation
	up	a meeting, class, etc.
	with	someone

Bring	*down*	cause to fall
	forth	produce
	forward	produce, supply
	out	publish

Call	*at*	to visit somebody's place
	for	to demand
	in	to send for
	on	to go to somebody's house to meet him
	off	to postpone
	over	to call out the rolls
	up	to remember
	upon	to plead

Die	*of*	a disease
	from	the effect of something
	for	a noble cause
	in	an accident
	through	neglect

Go	*after*	to chase
	against	to oppose
	for	to chase
	into	to look into
	off	to explode

Fall	*out*	to quarrel
	back on	use as a last resort if the main thing fails
	into	to come into close contact
	in with	meet by chance
	on	pounce upon
	upon	come to pass
	through	become unsuccessful
	off	to be shed

Get	*at*	to know
	along	to enjoy the company
	away	to escape
	back	to return
	down	to leave the train, bus or taxi
	on with	to maintain good relation
	over	to surmount

Look	*after*	someone
	at	see intently
	back upon	recall
	down upon	dislike
	into	examine, investigate
	on	consider
	through	study

Put	*at*	lodge and entertain
	across	convey
	aside	save
	forward	advance
	in	submit
	off	delay, postpone
	on	wear
	out	extinguish

Run	*away*	steal and disappear
	back over	reconsider
	down	become weak or exhausted
	after	try to catch
	off	make copies of
	out	come to an end
	over	knock down and pass over
	up against	face, encounter

Take	*back*	withdraw
	down	write down
	off	deduct
	up	absorb, soak

Turn	*down*	reject
	on	switch on
	out	come out for special purposes
	up	arrive

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

CHAPTER 12

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Spelling of Words

It is a scientific law of language that if enough people make a 'mistake', the 'mistake' becomes acceptable usage. That law applies to pronunciation, to grammar, to word meanings, but not to spelling.

—NORMAN LEWIS

English language and literature abounds in words at once simple and complex, plain and labyrinthine. It can be likened to a cobweb whose delicate threads, interwoven dexterously, go to make a beautiful pattern. Once you break the thread, the whole citadel of thought will topple down. The bug-bear of spelling saps a word of its vitality, howsoever lofty be the thought and the flight of imagination. Consequently a study of the proper order and arrangement of letters that form the words is indispensable. You have to impress the image of the word on the mind to avoid silly spelling mistakes which might otherwise discredit you in no small measure.

There is no royal road to spelling. The first thing to do is to find out exactly what kind of error you make in spelling. Form the habit of looking carefully and precisely at these words. Bear in mind the correct pronunciation of those words. A few simple rules of spelling are given below.

Some Spelling Rules

Rule I. Words ending in silent *e* usually drop the silent *e* before adding vowel suffix (e.g., *-ing*, *-able*, *-ary*, *-ous*); as—

Drop *-e*

admire	+ ation	= admiration	desire	+ ous	= desirous
admire	+ able	= admirable	divide	+ ing	= dividing
allure	+ ing	= alluring	dine	+ ing	= dining
arrange	+ ing	= arranging	explore	+ ation	= exploration
arrive	+ ing	= arriving	fame	+ ous	= famous
become	+ ing	= becoming	give	+ ing	= giving
care	+ ing	= caring	hope	+ ing	= hoping
come	+ ing	= coming	imagine	+ ary	= imaginary
compare	+ able	= comparable	imagine	+ able	= imaginable
deplore	+ able	= deplorable	live	+ ing	= living

love	+ able	= lovable	name	+ ing	= naming
lose	+ ing	= losing	note	+ ed	= noted
move	+ able	= movable			

Exceptions

(*a*) The *e* is retained when a suffix beginning with a consonant letter (*e.g., -ment, -ful*) is added.

Retain -*e*

arrange	+ ment	= arrangement	hate	+ ful	= hateful
care	+ ful	= careful	like	+ ness	= likeness
extreme	+ ly	= extremely	lone	+ ly	= lonely
force	+ ful	= forceful	move	+ ment	= movement

(*b*) After *c* or *g*, if the suffix begins with *a* or *o*, the *e* is retained to indicate the soft sound of *c* or *g*. (e.g., *-ous, -able*)

Retain -*e*

advantage	+ ous	= advantageous	outrage	+ ous	= outrageous
change	+ able	= changeable	peace	+ able	= peaceable
courage	+ ous	= courageous	service	+ able	= serviceable
manage	+ able	= manageable	trace	+ able	= traceable
notice	+ able	= noticeable			

Rule II. Words ending in *ee* or *oo* add suffixes without change; as—

Retain -*ee*, -*oo*

agree	+ able	= agreeable	glee	+ ful	= gleeful
coo	+ ing	= cooing	see	+ ing	= seeing
flee	+ ing	= fleeing	woo	+ ing	= wooing

Rule III. Words ending in a consonant preceded by two vowels do not double the final consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel; as—

boor	+ ish	= boorish	meet	+ ing	= meeting
cook	+ ing	= cooking	repeat	+ able	= repeatable
cool	+ ing	= cooling	shout	+ ed	= shouted
look	+ ing	= looking	teem	+ ing	= teeming

Rule IV. When a suffix that begins with a consonant is added to a word that ends in silent *e*, the *e* is, with a few exceptions, retained; as—

(*a*) When the suffix *-ly* is added to an adjective that ends in silent *e*, the *e* is usually retained.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

entire	+ ly	= entirely	nice	+ ly	= nicely
false	+ ly	= falsely	polite	+ ly	= politely
fine	+ ly	= finely	safe	+ ly	= safely
late	+ ly	= lately	sure	+ ly	= surely

(*b*) Exceptions to the retention of *e* when *-ly* is added:

true + ly = truly whole + ly = wholly

(*c*) If the adjective ends in *-le*, the *-le* is dropped when the suffix -ly is added.

gentle + ly = gently; noble + ly = nobly; idle + ly = idly

(*d*) The *-le* is also dropped from adjectives ending in *-able* and *ible* when the suffix *-ly* is added.

comfortable	+ ly	= comfortably	pleasurable	+ ly	= pleasurably
fashionable	+ ly	= fashionably	sensible	+ ly	= sensibly
forcible	+ ly	= forcibly	honourable	+ ly	= honourably

(*e*) When the suffix *-tion* is used to form a noun from a verb ending in silent *e* after *t*, the letters *te* are dropped.

associate	+ tion	= association	create	+ tion	= creation
celebrate	+ tion	= celebration	dictate	+ tion	= dictation
communicate	+ tion	= communication	frustrate	+ tion	= frustration
complete	+ tion	= completion	pollute	+ tion	= pollution

(*f*) When the suffix *y* is added to a noun ending in silent *e* to make an adjective, the *e* is dropped.

bone	+ y	= bony	smoke	+ y	= smoky
ease	+ y	= easy	snake	+ y	= snaky
ice	+ y	= icy	stone	+ y	= stony
noise	+ y	= noisy	taste	+ y	= tasty

(*g*) When the suffixes *-ful*, *-hood*, *-less* and *-ment* are added, the *e* is retained.

hope	+ ful	= hopeful	wire	+ less	= wireless
use	+ ful	= useful	advertise	+ ment	= advertisement
false	+ hood	= falsehood	amaze	+ ment	= amazement
care	+ less	= careless	amuse	+ ment	= amusement
home	+ less	= homeless	announce	+ ment	= announcement
hope	+ less	= hopeless			
tire	+ less	= tireless	excite	+ ment	= excitement
use	+ less	= useless			

Note—When *-ment* is added to *judge*, *acknowledge* and *abridge* two spellings are generally accepted:

judge + ment = judgment, or judgement

acknowledge + ment = acknowledgment or acknowledgement
abridge + ment = abridgment or abridgement

Rule V. Words ending in two or more consonants usually remain unchanged when a suffix is added; as—

call	+ ed	= called	roll	+ ing	= rolling
till	+ ed	= tilled	will	+ ed	= willed
pull	+ ed	= pulled	thrill	+ ing	= thrilling
shell	+ ed	= shelled	toll	+ ing	= tolling

Rule VI. When a word of one syllable ends in a single vowel and a single consonant, the consonant is usually doubled when a suffix with a vowel is added; as—

(*a*) Comparative and superlative suffixes, *-er*, and *-est*

big	bigger	biggest	sad	sadder	saddest
hot	hotter	hottest	thin	thinner	thinnest

(*b*) The suffix *-er*, meaning 'person or thing that does something'

cut	+ er	= cutter	run	+ er	= runner
hit	+ er	= hitter	sin	+ er	= sinner
rub	+ er	= rubber	swim	+ er	= swimmer

(*c*) The suffix *-ing*, present participle and gerund

bid	bidding	drag	dragging
brag	bragging	get	getting
cram	cramming	plan	planning
cut	cutting	run	running
dig	digging	sin	sinning
din	dinning	sit	sitting

(*d*) The suffix *-ed*, past tense and past participle

beg	begged	map	mapped
drag	dragged	rag	ragged
drop	dropped	rub	rubbed
fit	fitted	sin	sinned
hop	hopped	strap	strapped

(*e*) The suffix *-y*, making adjectives from nouns

fog	foggy	mud	muddy
fun	funny	sun	sunny

Rule VII. In a word of one syllable, the final consonant is not doubled before a suffix beginning with a consonant; as—

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

fat	fatness	man	manhood
fit	fitful	sad	sadness
glad	gladness	sin	sinful

Rule VIII. (*a*) Words of more than one syllable, ending in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, if accented on the last syllable, usually double the final consonant before adding a vowel suffix; as—

1

admit	admitted	admitting	admittance
control	controlled	controlling	controller
regret	regretted	regretting	regrettable

2

forbid	forbidden	forbidding
forget	forgotten	forgetting
prefer	preferred	preferring

(*b*) When adding a suffix in words of more than one syllable, the accent is shifted to a preceding syllable, the foregoing rule does not apply.

infer	— inference	combat	— combative

Exception

excel, excellence, excellent

(*c*) In words of more than one syllable, the final consonant is not doubled before a suffix beginning with a consonant; as—

equip	— equipment	profit	— profitless
regret	— regretful	unfit	— unfitness

(*d*) The final consonant is not doubled if the stress is on the first syllable and if the verb ends in *-en* or *-er*; *as*—

happen	happened	happening
listen	listened	listener
open	opened	opener
offer	offered	offering

(*e*) The final consonant is doubled if the stress is on the first syllable of the verb ... if it ends in *-al*, *-el* or *-il*; as—

cancel	cancelled	cancellation
equal	equalled	equalling
level	levelled	leveller
pedal	pedalled	pedalling
travel	travelled	traveller

Exception

parallel	paralleled

(f) If the stress is on the first syllable, and if the verb ends in *-op* or *-ip*, the final consonant is doubled; as—

kidnap	kidnapped	kidnapper
worship	worshipped	worshipper

Rule IX. Words of more than one syllable, ending in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, if not accented on the last syllable, usually do not double the final consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel; as—

bigot — bigoted; despot — despotic; redden — reddened; rivet — riveted.

Exceptions—There are words having two syllables almost equally accented. In such a situation this rule is not applied; as—

handicap — handicapped; outfit — outfitted

Rule X. When a verb ends in *y* with a consonant preceding it, the *y* becomes *i* before the suffixes *-es* and *-ed*. The *y* remains unchanged before the suffix *-ing*; as—

bury	buries	buried	burying
carry	carries	carried	carrying
copy	copies	copied	copying
defy	defies	defied	defying
deny	denies	denied	denying
hurry	hurries	hurried	hurrying
marry	marries	married	marrying
multiply	multiplies	multiplied	multiplying
pity	pities	pitied	pitying
rely	relies	relied	relying
reply	replies	replied	replying
satisfy	satisfies	satisfied	satisfying
study	studies	studied	studying
try	tries	tried	trying

Rule XI. If a verb ends in *y* with a vowel preceding, the *y* generally remains unchanged before the ending *-s*, *-ed* and *-ing*; as—

annoy	annoys	annoyed	annoying
destroy	destroys	destroyed	destroying
enjoy	enjoys	enjoyed	enjoying
obey	obeys	obeyed	obeying
play	plays	played	playing
pray	prays	prayed	praying
stay	stays	stayed	staying

Exceptions

lay	lays	laid	laying
pay	pays	paid	paying
say	says	said	saying

Rule XII. If the suffix *-ing* is added to verbs ending in *ie*, the *i* becomes *y* and the *e* is omitted; as—

die	dies	died	dying
lie	lies	lied	lying
tie	ties	tied	tying

Rule XIII. When a noun or adjective ends in *y* with a consonant preceding the *y* usually becomes *i* when a suffix is added; as—

dry, drier, driest, drily; happy, happier, happiest, happily, happiness; pity, pitiful, pitiless; plenty, plentiful; tidy, tidier, tidiest, tidily, tidiness; twenty, twentieth.

Rule XIV. Words ending in *y* preceded by a consonant use *i* instead of *y* before additions other than those beginning with *i*; as—

beauty	—	beautiful	happy	—	happiness
deny	—	denial	justify	—	justifies
fly	—	flier	study	—	studious

Rule XV. Words ending in *n* do not drop the *n* before adding the suffix *-ness*; as—

clean	—	cleanness	green	—	greenness

Rule XVI. If the adjective ends in *l*, the adverb formed by adding *ly* will contain two *l*'s immediately before the *y*; as—

cool	—	coolly	final	—	finally
formal	—	formally	hopeful	—	hopefully
real	—	really	useful	—	usefully

Rule XVII. If the adjective does not end in *l*, the adverb formed by adding *ly* will contain only one *l* immediately before the *y*; as—

evident	—	evidently	grim	—	grimly
fluent	—	fluently	quick	—	quickly

Rule XVIII. Word ending in *ll* usually drop one *l* when compounded; as—

all	+ most	= almost	dis	+ till	= distil
all	+ ready	= already	doubt	+ full	= doubtful
all	+ though	= although	use	+ full	= useful
all	+ together	= altogether	un	+ till	= until
all	+ ways	= always	well	+ come	= welcome

Rule XIX. In words with *ie* or *ei* when the sound is long *ee*, use *i* before *e* except after *c*; as—

achieve	chief	niece	shield
belief	cashier	piece	shriek
believe	field	pierce	siege
brief	fierce	priest	thief
besiege	grief	relieve	wield

But

ceiling, conceive, conceit, deceit, deceive, perceive, receipt, receive

Exceptions

either; financier; leisure; neither; seize; species

WORDS COMMONLY MISSPELT

1. Compound words with a hyphen:

birth-rate
boarding-house
by-product
copy-book
dog-tired
ex-president
fellow-citizen
football-player
half-dozen
home-made
kick-off
old-fashioned
pre-existence
pocket-knife
printing-house
quarter-mile
re-echo
self-made
self-regard
self-respect
semi-independent
semi-invalid
stumbling-block
tongue-tied
vice-president
well-being
working-man

2. Compound words without a hyphen:

afterwards
almost
already
anybody
anyhow
anyone
anything
anywhere
birthday
cannot
childlike
copyright
downfall
downstairs
everybody
everyone
everything
everywhere
extraordinary
fellowship
football
gatekeeper
handwriting
herewith
householder
however
indoors
into
lifetime
lighthouse
meanwhile
midnight
moonlight
moreover
newspaper
nobody
nonessential
otherwise
ourselves
outside
playwright
postgraduate
posthumous
postman
riverside
schoolboy
shoemaker
somebody
somehow
someone
something
sometimes
somewhat
threadbare
throughout
together
tomorrow
welcome
whatever
whenever
wherever
within
without

3. Words to be written separately:

all right
all round
at least
at once
do not
no one
per cent
some time
up to
well done!
young man

4. Words ending in *-ate*:

accelerate	assimilate	emancipate
accumulate	associate	emulate
accurate	collaborate	enunciate
adulterate	collegiate	eradicate
affiliate	commemorate	evaporate
aggregate	corroborate	exaggerate
alleviate	desperate	initiate
ameliorate	disseminate	inundate
annihilate	effeminate	literate
appreciate	elaborate	meditate
appropriate	elucidate	separate

5. Words ending in *-tion*:

accusation	conviction	institution
affection	description	intention
assimilation	detection	perfection
collection	detention	prevention
combination	dilution	promotion
commotion	evaluation	proportion
compensation	expectation	proposition
conception	fascination	repetition
constitution	frustration	reputation
contention	imagination	resurrection
convention	inclination	situation
conversation	inflation	vindication

6. Words ending in *-sion*:

allusion	decision	precision
apprehension	dimension	pretension
collision	dissension	profusion
comprehension	inclusion	provision
conversion	inversion	tension

7. Words ending in *-ous*:

anonymous	generous	monstrous
boisterous	heinous	poisonous
callous	jealous	ridiculous
credulous	miraculous	synonymous
disastrous	momentous	treacherous
fabulous	monotonous	venomous

8. Words ending in *-ious*:

ambitious	ceremonious	curious
audacious	contagious	delicious
auspicious	copious	delirious

dubious
envious
furious
infectious
ingenious
injurious
illustrious
judicious
luxurious
pernicious
precarious
pugnacious
superstitious
suspicious
victorious

9. Words ending in *-uous*:

arduous
conspicuous
contemptuous
impetuous
presumptuous
strenuous
sumptuous
superfluous
tempestuous

10. Words ending in *-eous*:

courageous
courteous
erroneous
gorgeous
hideous
miscellaneous
outrageous
simultaneous
spontaneous

11. Words ending in *-ise*:

advertise
advise
apprise
chastise
compromise
demise
despise
devise
disguise
enterprise
exercise
franchise
merchandise
supervise
surprise

12. Words ending in *-ar*:

altar
beggar
burglar
calendar
circular
collar
dollar
grammar
molecular
muscular
particular
peculiar
pedlar
pillar
popular
regular
secular
scholar
similar
singular
solar
spectacular
vicar
vulgar

13. Words ending in *-er*:

adviser
alter
barrister
character
debater
defender
diameter
examiner
farmer
interpreter
leather
lecturer
manner
manufacturer
messenger
meter
miner
minister
partner
plotter
premier
prisoner
robber
soldier
summer
tiger
traveller
villager
wri

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

14. Words ending in *-or*:

actor
ancestor
auditor
author
bachelor
benefactor
censor
chancellor
conqueror
contributor
creditor
debtor
dictator
director
doctor
emperor
executor
governor
inspector
inventor
investigator
liquor
manipulator
minor
orator
professor
protector
superior
suitor
surveyor
survivor
tailor
traitor
tutor
visitor

15. Words ending in *-ance*:

abundance
acceptance
accordance
acquaintance
allegiance
alliance
allowance
appearance
arrogance
brilliance
defiance
elegance
endurance
exuberance
guidance
insurance
irrelevance
maintenance
nuisance
predominance
radiance
relevance
reliance
remittance
repentance
resistance
resonance

16. Words ending in *-ence*:

audience
circumference
coherence
coincidence
concurrence
conference
conscience
convenience
correspondence
diffidence
excellence
evidence
indolence
inference
influence
innocence
insistence
obedience
patience
preference
prudence
residence
resilience
reticence
reverence
violence

17. Words ending in *-able*:

acceptable
admirable
adorable
advisable
agreeable
amendable
applicable
available
avoidable
charitable
comfortable
commendable
comparable
dependable
desirable
detestable
fashionable
formidable
implacable
improbable
incurable
indispensable
inevitable
inflammable

innumerable
inseparable
interminable
intolerable
justifiable
laudable
liable
lovable
manageable
marriageable
noticeable
objectionable
palatable
perishable
practicable
profitable
recognizable
respectable
suitable
thinkable
transferable
unconquerable
unmistakable
unthinkable
vulnerable

18. Words ending in *-ible*:

accessible
admissible
contemptible
divisible
eligible
feasible
flexible
forcible
repressible
responsible
horrible
incorrigible
invincible
irresistible
perceptible
permissible
plausible
sensible
tangible
terrible
visible

19. Words ending in *-al*:

annual
canal
cannibal
gradual
jackal
literal
material
medal
menial
metal
pedal
total

20. Words ending in *-el*:

channel
jewel
label
level
nickel
panel
parcel
rebel
satchel

21. Words ending in *-le*:

ankle
cycle
fickle
mettle
middle
muscle
noble
obstacle
paddle
particle
principle
single
title
uncle
vehicle

22. Words ending in *-ure*:

agriculture
enclosure
leisure
literature
manufacture
miniature
nature
signature
venture

23. Words ending in *-ur*:

augur
murmur
sulphur

innumerable
inseparable
interminable
intolerable
justifiable
laudable
liable
lovable
manageable
marriageable
noticeable
objectionable
palatable
perishable
practicable
profitable
recognizable
respectable
suitable
thinkable
transferable
unconquerable
unmistakable
unthinkable
vulnerable

18. Words ending in *-ible*:

accessible
admissible
contemptible
divisible
eligible
feasible
flexible
forcible
repressible
responsible
horrible
incorrigible
invincible
irresistible
perceptible
permissible
plausible
sensible
tangible
terrible
visible

19. Words ending in *-al*:

annual
canal
cannibal
gradual
jackal
literal
material
medal
menial
metal
pedal
total

20. Words ending in *-el*:

channel
jewel
label
level
nickel
panel
parcel
rebel
satchel

21. Words ending in *-le*:

ankle
cycle
fickle
mettle
middle
muscle
noble
obstacle
paddle
particle
principle
single
title
uncle
vehicle

22. Words ending in *-ure*:

agriculture
enclosure
leisure
literature
manufacture
miniature
nature
signature
venture

23. Words ending in *-ur*:

augur
murmur
sulphur

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Miscellaneous Examples:

Set I

abbreviate
accidentally
acclaim
accommodate
accompanied
accompanying
accuse
achievement
acknowledge
acquaintance
acquitted
across
additionally
address
adolescent
affluent
affirm
affright
aggravate
aggression
allegory
allure
allusive
although
altogether
amateur
amiss
amount
analyze
annals
annual
apostle
apparently
appetite
argument
arrangement
athlete
athletics
attitude
auxiliary
awkward
beginning
believed
benefited
breathe
brilliant
bulletin
bureau
bureaucracy
buried
business
cafeteria
campaign
casually
career
carrying
category
ceiling
cemetery
changeable
characteristic
chosen
colleague
colloquial
commission
committee
commodity
communism
comparative
competitive
compulsory
conceive
conceivable
condemn
conquer
conscientious
conscious
continually
convenience
corner
correspond
corrode
corrupt
course
curiosity
courteous
criticism
criticize
curriculum
decision
definitely
definition
demurrage
dependent
describe

Set II

despair
destroy
develop
diagram
dictionary
different
dilapidated
dining
disease
disappeared
disappointment
disastrous
discipline
dissatisfied
dissect
dissertation
dissipate
dissipation
dissolute
divide
division
eccentric
ecclesiastic
efficiency
effusion
egotism
eight

elsewhere
eliminate
elocution
eloquence
embarrass
emissary
emphasize
encyclopaedia
ennoble
enormous
enthusiastic
environment
epidemic
epitaph
epitome
epoch
equalled
equipment
equipped
equivalent
erosion
errand
erroneous
especially
essence
etiquette
evolution
excellence
exceptionally
excitement
exhausted
exhilaration
existence
experience
explanation
extraordinary
familiar
fascinating
February
financial
foreign
formerly
forty
fourth
friend
gauge
generally
genius
geography
government
grammar
grievance
guarantee
guard
guidance
handle
height
hindrance
hitherto
humorous
hurriedly
imaginary
imagination
immediately
impromptu
inaccessible
inadequate
inapplicable
inauspicious

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Set III

incidentally
incredible
indefinitely
independent
inexorable
influential
inimical
inimitable
innocuous
innuendo
intellectual
intelligence
intentionally
interfere
interpreted
interrupted
irrelevant
knack
knight
knot
knowledge
laboratory
legitimate
leisure
librarian
lieutenant
lightning
livelihood
loneliness
manoeuver
marriage
marvellous
mathematics
medicine
minute
mischievous
morale
mysterious
naive
naturally
necessary
nevertheless
niece
ninety
ninth
noisily
notwithstanding
nowadays

obstacle
occasion
occasionally
occurred
occurrence
offspring
omission
omitted
operate
opportunity
optimistic
original
otherwise
outburst
outcast
outright
pamphlet
parallel
parliament
particularly
partner
perseverance
personnel
persistent
perspiration
persuade
phenomenon
physically
physician
pleasant
propelled
propeller
psychology
pursue
quantity
questionnaire
quite
quitting
quiz

Set IV

realize
really
recognize
recommend
recurring
referred
regrettable
reign
relieved
religious
remembrance
renaissance
resource
restaurant
rhythm
rhythmical
ridiculous
running
sacrifice
satisfactorily
scarcely
schedule
secretary
seize
sergeant
severely
sincerely
simultaneous
soliloquy
source
souvenir
specifically
specimen
speech
stopped
strenuously
stretched
subtle
succeed
successful
superintendent
supersede
surgeon
susceptible
synonym
technique
temperament
temperature
theatre
tomorrow
transferred
transferring
tremendous
twelfth
tyranny
unanimous
undoubtedly
unnecessary
unparalleled
until
usual
usually
valley
valuable
varieties
vein
vengeance
view
vigorous
village
villain
warring
weird
wholly
wield
wolf
woman
worrying
writing
written
yawn
yield
yonder

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Exercises

I. *Insert the missing vowel (a, e, i, o, u) in each word.*

1. a—roplane
2. ad—quate
3. bus—ness
4. compar—tive
5. exist—nce
6. myst—rious
7. mischi—vous
8. cat—strophe
9. irr—parable
10. appar—tus
11. defin—te
12. decad—nt
13. p—gnant
14. deap—rate
15. d—spair
16. d—sease
17. d—cease
18. gramm—r
19. suit—rs
20. murm—r
21. Pehru—ry
22. summ—ry
23. long—vity
24. d—scription
25. sep—rate
26. mathem—tics
27. met—cine
28. guid—nce
29. relig—ous
30. sens—tive
31. hum—rous
32. pec—fy
33. resist—nce
34. pi—no
35. d—ficit
36. sumpt—ous

Answers: 1.e 2.e 3.i 4.a 5.e 6.e 7.e 8.a 9.e 10.a 11.i 12.e 13.i 14.e 15.e 16.i 17.e 18.a 19.o 20.u 21.a 22.a 23.e 24.e 25.a 26.a 27.i 28.a 29.i 30.i 31.o 32.i 33.a 34.a 35.e 36.u

II. *Arrange the following words in strict alphabetical order:*

oral	optimism	ordinance	original
opportunity	orchestra	option	opaque
ordinary	organise	omnipresent	official
orchard	opprobrium	omnivorous	oblique
ordnance	obstacles	obligation	ophthalmoscope

III. (a) *Add -ly to the following:*

real, happy, simple, cruel, true, whole, love, actual, noise, merry

(b) *Add -ing to the following:*

travel, begin, run, swim, sit, meet, dig, quarrel, repeat, plan, carry, get

IV. *Add the endings given to the following words:*

Examples: beauty—ful = beautiful
please—ure = pleasure

(a)	war—or	carry—age	rob—er
	wit—y	move—able	mud—y
	visit—or	love—able	glory—ous
(b)	ally—ance	hid—en	arrive—al
	omit—ed	set—ing	advantage—ous
	vary—ous	jewel—er	regret—able

Answers: III. (a) really, happily, simply, cruelly, truly, wholly, lovely, actually, noisily, merrily

(b) travelling, beginning, running, swimming, sitting, meeting, digging, quarrelling, repeating, planning, carrying, getting

IV. (a)

warrior	carriage	robber
witty	moveable	muddy
visitor	loveable	glorious

(b)

alliance	hidden	arrival
omitted	setting	advantageous
various	jeweller	regrettable

V. (a) *Insert-tion or-sion,,-cial or-tial in the blank to complete the correct spelling of the following:*

administra...; confu...; applica...; resolu...; exclu...; explo...; divi...; direc...; ambi...; compul...; ammuni...; associa...; reputa...; arbitra...; deci...; mo...; finan...; essen...; judi...; pala...; spe...; substan...; superfi...; provin...; influen...; preferen...; prejudi...; par...; sacrifi...; pruden...; nup...; residen....

(b) *Add -ary, -ery, -ory or -ry to complete the correct spelling of the following:*

mission...; geomet...; satisfact...; secret...; surg...; prim...; gallant...; jewell...; brav...; machin...; scen...; bound...; contra...; fact...; carpent...; laborat...; liter...; mili...; monast...; myst...; necess...; butch...; second...; sal....

Answers: (a) administration; confusion; application; resolution; exclusion; explosion; division; direction; ambition; compulsion; ammunition; association; reputation; arbitration; decision; motion; financial; essential; judicial; palatial; special; substantial; superficial; provincial; influential; preferential; prejudicial; partial; sacrificial; prudential; nuptial; residential

(b) missionary; geometry; satisfactory; secretary; surgery; primary; gallantry; jewellery; bravery; machinery; scenery; boundary; contrary; factory; carpentry; laboratory; literary; military; monastery; mystery; necessary; butchery; secondary; salary

VI. *Of the following words some are spelt correctly and some incorrectly. Tick the words you consider correct, then rewrite the others as you think they should be spelt.*

1. embarass 2. accommodation 3. development 4. convenience 5. indispensable 6. benifited 7. persuit 8. persuation 9. skillful 10. fullfill 11. conscientious 12. manoeuvre 13. quarreled 14. secracy

15. hypocricy 16. illiterate 17. bachlor 18. barbarous 19. suicide 20. suitclety 21. treacherous 22. commitee 23. impostor 24. pigeon 25. kerosene 26. travellar 27. treacherous 28. arithimatic 29. luxary 30. magazine 31. miniature 32. hierarky 33. psalm 34. incorrigible 35. sceptre 36. muscle 37. channel 38. idiocyncracies 39. mediterranean 40. museem 41. routine 42. omnicience 43. thetre 44. septuagenarin 45. brevement 46. meating 47. solem 48. garantee 49. tiranny 50. syiable.

Answers: 1. embarrass 6. benefited 7. pursuit 8. persuasion 9. skillful 10. fulfil 13. quarrelled 14. secrecy 15. hypocrisy 17. bachelor 22. committee 26. traveller 28. arithmetic 29. luxury 32. hierarchy 40. museum 42. omniscience 43. theatre 44. septuagenarian 45. bereavement 46. meeting 47. solemn 48. guarantee 49. tyranny 50. syllable.

VII. Tick the words with correct spellings.

1. (a) benefactor (b) benifacter
   (c) benafacter (d) benifactor
2. (a) immuenisation (b) imunisation
   (c) immunisation (d) immeunisation
3. (a) enthusism (b) enthusiasm
   (c) enthusiem (d) enthuseam
4. (a) enginnering (b) enginering
   (c) engineering (d) engginnering
5. (a) wellcome (b) welcum
   (c) well-come (d) welcome
6. (a) idosyncracy (b) idiosyncrasy
   (c) idiosencracy (d) idiasyncrasy

Answers: 1. (a) 2. (c) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (d) 6. (b)

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

CHAPTER 13

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Correction of Errors

[Subject-verb Agreement]

Grammar is the basis of a language, the framework on which ideas are hung, and the loftiest imagery or thought can fall flat if ungrammatically expressed.

—J E METCALFE

Agreement of Subject and Verb

S	V
I	worked

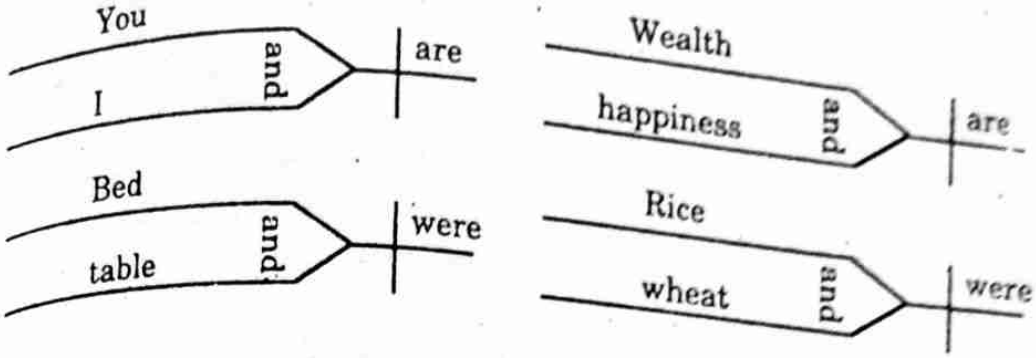
Errors in agreement of subject and verb are most common. They at times pose a difficult problem because they are invariably the result of 'ingrained speech habits'. The difficulties arise when

(a) *several other words intervene between your subject and verb,*
(b) *the subject seems to be singular and plural at the same time,* and
(c) *your word order is such that you may forget what your subject was and so make an error.*

The general principle is this: *The subject must agree with the verb in person and number.* However, very few errors are made because of lack of agreement of person. Most mistakes arise out of your failure to match a singular subject with a singular verb, or a plural subject with a plural verb.

Rule 1: A compound subject joined by *and* generally takes a plural verb; as—

You *and* I *are* working.
Four *and* four *make* eight.
Are not your sister *and* brother ill?
Wealth *and* happiness *are* all Ravi wants.
Bed *and* table *were* both very costly.
Rice *and* wheat, purchased a week before, *were* both rotten.



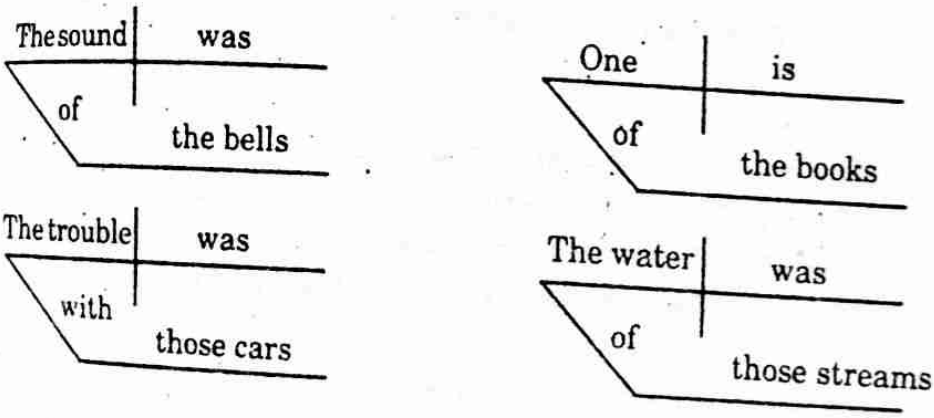
Exception: When several singular subjects represent the same person or thing, or when they form one collective idea, a singular verb is used; as—

Rice and curry is his favourite dish.
Truth and honesty is the best policy.
Slow and steady wins the race.
Bread and butter is our daily need.
Whisky and soda was his only food.
The *crown and glory* of life *is* character.

Rule II: Plural words that come in between a singular subject and its verb do not change the number of the subject; as—

The *sound* of the bells *was* heard by everyone.
One of the books *is* missing.
The *water* of those streams *was* sweet.
The *trouble* with all those cars *was* slow speed.

Fig.



Rule III: When words are added to a singular subject by *with, together with, along with, in addition to, as well as, except, besides, and not,* and *no less than,* the number of the subject remains singular; as—

The ship, with all its passengers, was drowned.
The letter, together with other documents, was lost.
He, along with his parents, is coming today.
A watch, in addition to rupees fifty, was given to Hari.
Ram, as well as Shyam, was laughing.

No one, except a few students, was there.
Milk, besides vegetables, is good for health.
Satish, and not you, has passed.
He, no less than his friends, is guilty.

Note: In informal English, *with* and *together with* are considered as making the subject plural. A plural verb is thus used. The omission of commas is a hint that the subjects are to be treated as more than one, like a compound subject; e.g.,

The servant *together with* his master *were* left standing there.

Rule IV: When two subjects are joined by *'as well as'*, the verb agrees in number and person with the *first* one; as

He, as well as they, is ready to jump.
My *comrades, as well as I, are* visiting Delhi.

Rule V: When two or more nouns or pronouns in the singular are connected by *or* or *nor*, *either...or*, *neither...nor* they take a singular verb; as—

Neither *Dick* nor his *sister is* to blame.
Either the *dog* or the *cat has* been killed.

Rule VI: When one of the subjects joined by *or* or *nor, either...or, neither...nor* is plural, the verb must be plural, and *the plural subject should be placed close to the verb*; as—

Either the *farmer* or his *sons reap* harvest.
Neither *Satish* nor his *sons are* honest.

Rule VII: When the subjects joined by *or, nor, either.... or, neither ... nor* are of different persons, the verb agrees with the nearer subject; as –

Either *he* or *you are* guilty.
Neither *you* nor *I am* to blame.
Neither *you* nor *he is* willing to come.
Neither *he* nor *they are* honest.

Rule VIII: The indefinite pronouns *many a, each, each one, every, everyone, everybody, anybody, nobody, either, neither,* and *no one* take singular verbs; as—

Many a flower *is* born to blush unseen.
Each of them *was* glad.
Everybody wants food.
Everyone who saw his dead body *was* moved.
Anybody with a will to work *is* welcome.
Nobody is willing to help me.
Neither of the statements *is* true.
Either of the two books *is* sufficient.
No one likes to be criticised.

Every new born day *is* teeming with splendid chances.
Each one of you *has* to suffer for it.

Note: 'But in formal situations, especially in conversation, *neither* is often felt to be plural, especially when followed by some phrase like *of them*. The same usage applies to *none*'.

Neither of my sisters *are* married.
None of my friends *are* interested in cricket.

Rule IX: When two nouns are qualified by *each* or *every*, although connected by *and*, they require a singular verb; as—

Every boy and *every* girl *was* given sweets.
Each son and *each* daughter of Ram *was* educated.
Every day and *every* night *brings* its own pleasure.

Rule X: Nouns qualified by *each* and *every* take singular verb; as—

Every man and woman on this earth *has* to die one day.
Each soldier and sailor *is* to march.

It is assumed in the above sentences that the *every* before *woman* and the *each* before *sailor* are understood.

Rule XI: If the subject is a title, the name of a book, a clause, a quotation, or other group of words expressing a single idea, the verb is singular; as—

'Tales from Shakespeare' makes an interesting reading.
Sparks is a well-known weekly.
'All men are created equal' is a truth.
The United States is a rich country.
'Hard Times' has been written by Dickens.

Rule XII: Sometimes the subject of a sentence, though plural in form, denotes some specific quality, or amount or distance considered as a single unit. In all such cases the verb is generally singular; as—

Three thousand miles is a long distance.
Ten pounds is enough for me.
Ten years is sufficient to complete this project.
Three maunds of coal *has* been consumed.
Sixteen annas is equal to one rupee.
Five hours is not much for outdoor work.

Note: Sometimes a plural verb is used if the idea of plurality is dominant. When the subject, says David Green, is a sum of money considered as a whole, the singular verb is used. When the subject is a sum of money and the reference is to the bills or coins considered separately, the plural verb is used; as—

There *were* ten gold coins in her brief case.

A thousand rupees *were* distributed among the flood victims. Five years *have* rolled by.

The first ten years *were* the most nerve-racking.

Rule XIII: Some nouns which are plural in form but singular in meaning, take a singular verb; as—

This *news is* not correct.
Economics is a difficult subject.
Ethics deals with the problem of morality.
Measles is a dangerous disease.
The *wages* of sin *is* death.

Note: Remember the following:—

(*a*) *Physics*, *Mathematics*, *Politics* and *Economics* are singular when they refer to single branches of study.

(*b*) *Tactics* and *acrobatics* are plural when they refer to physical activities.

(*c*) The following words need special care:

I. *Nouns Plural in Form but Singular in Meaning*

There are several nouns, plural in form but singular in meaning. They nearly always require singular verbs. Here is a list of such words:

acoustics	*aesthetics*	*mumps*
aeronautics	*ethics*	*Naples*
Algiers	*gallows*	*news*
alms	*hydraulics*	*optics*
analytics	*hydromechanics*	*phonetics*
Athens	*innings*	*physics*
athletics	*linguistics*	*poetics*
bellows	*magnetics*	*politics*
billiards	*mathematics*	*rickets*
civics	*means* (wealth or way)	*statistics*
classics	*measles*	*summons*
comics	*mechanics*	*tactics*
dynamics	*metaphysics*	*The United Nations*
economics	*molasses*	*The United States*
		Wales

Some of the above words can be plural in special cases; as—

Right : *Politics is* a dirty game.
Right : What *are* your *politics*? (political beliefs)
Right : Every *means has* been tried.
Right : All possible *means have* been tried.
Right : The *headquarters* of the police *is/are* in Hazaribagh.
Right : *Alms is/are* to be given to the poor and the needy.

II. *Plural Nouns Commonly Misused as Singulars*

There are a number of plural nouns which are taken for singulars and used with singular verbs. We must guard ourselves against this mistaken notion. Some of these nouns are plural because of many parts; as—

(i) *articles of dress having two inseparable parts:*

braces, breeches, pants, pantaloons, pyjamas, shorts, trousers, knickers

(ii) *instruments having inseparable parts:*

bellows, compasses, pincers, scissors, tongs, forceps

Tools and articles of dress consisting of two equal parts which are joined constitute summation plurals. Countability can be imposed by means of *a pair of: a pair of scissors, three pairs of trousers.*

—RANDULPH QUIRK & SIDNEY GREENBAUM: University Grammar of English

(iii) *parts of the body:*

bowels, entrails, intestines

(iv) *games:*

cards, billiards, dominoes

Look at some more plural nouns that always take plural verbs. Here is the list:

annals
arms
ashes
assets
auspices
clothes
credentials
customs (tax)
embers
environs
fetters
goods
leavings
links
nuptials
odds
premises
proceeds
remains
riches
savings
socks
spectacles
stairs
statistics (numeral facts collected systematically)
thanks
tidings
vitals
wages
wares

Wrong: Your *clothes is* very expensive.
Right: Your *clothes are* very expensive.
Wrong: Her *scissors is* not very sharp.
Right: Her *scissors are* not very sharp.
Wrong: These *goods is* for sale.
Right: These *goods are* for sale.

Wrong: These *statistics shows* our poor progress.

Right: These *statistics show* our poor progress.

Wrong: His *wages is* Rs 150 a week.

Right: His *wages are* Rs 150 a week.

[In old use it takes a singular verb; as—The *wages* of sin *is* death (reward of requital)]

Wrong: My *spectacles is* very costly.

Right: My *spectacles are* very costly.

Now look at these charts too:

I. *Nouns having one meaning in the Singular and another in the Plural*

Singular	*Meaning*	*Plural*	*Meaning*
Advice	counsel	*Advices*	commercial information
Air	atmosphere	*Airs*	assumed demeanour, behaviour
Force	energy	*Forces*	armed men
Good	benefit	*Goods*	movable property
Iron	a metal	*Irons*	fetters made of iron
Return	coming back	*Returns*	statistics
Sand	a kind of matter	*Sands*	a tract of sandy land

II. *Nouns having two meanings in the Plural against one in the Singular*

Singular	*Meaning*	*Plural*	*Meanings*	
Circumstance	fact	*Circumstances*	condition	facts
Colour	hue	*Colours*	hues	flag of a regiment
Custom	habit	*Customs*	habits	tax
Effect	result	*Effects*	results	goods and chattels
Manner	way	*Manners*	ways	behaviour
Pain	suffering	*Pains*	sufferings	trouble
Part	portion	*Parts*	portions	abilities
Premise	a proposition in reasoning	*Premises*	propositions	buildings
Quarter	a fourth part	*Quarters*	fourth parts	lodgings

III. *Nouns having two meanings in the Singular against one in the Plural*

Singular	*Meanings*		*Plural*	*Meaning*
Abuse	wrong use	reproach	*Abuses*	wrong uses
Foot	a part of the body	infantry	*Feet*	parts of the body
Gain	acquisition	profit	*Gains*	profits
Horse	animal	cavalry	*Horses*	animals
Light	lamp	radiance	*Lights*	lamps
People	a nation	persons	*Peoples*	nations
Powder	mixture	for guns	*Powders*	mixtures
Practice	habit	profession	*Practices*	habits
Wood	timber	forest	*Woods*	forest

IV. *Nouns having two forms in the Plural*

Singular	*Plural*	*Meaning*
Cloth	*Cloths* *Clothes*	kinds or pieces of cloth articles of dress/garment
Die	*Dies* *Dice*	stamps for coinage small cubes used in games
Index	*Indexes* *Indices*	tables of contents signs used in algebra
Shot	*Shot* *Shots*	little balls discharged from a gun photographs
Staff	*Staves* *Staffs*	sticks or poles department in the army, or a business

V. *Nouns having the same form for the Plural as for the Singular*

Singular	*Plural*	*Sentences*
Deer	*Deer*	*Sing*: This *deer is* beautiful. *Plu*: These *deer are* fleet-footed.
Dozen	*Dozen*	*Sing*: He bought *one dozen* eggs. *Plu*: He bought *five dozen* mangoes.
Hundred	*Hundred*	*Sing*: Give me *one hundred* rupees. *Plu*: There are *four hundred* students.
Thousand	*Thousand*	*Sing*: *One thousand* rupees is not much. *Plu*: It cost me *ten thousand* rupees.
Pice	*Pice*	*Sing*: One *pice has been* given to the beggar. *Plu*: Three *pice is* not much.
Sheep	*Sheep*	*Sing*: That *is* my *sheep*. *Plu*: These *sheep are* yours.
Stone	*Stone*	*Sing*: He hit me with *a stone*. *Plu*: He weighs *ten stone*.

Note: But, when 'of' is used we say... *'hundreds of boys', 'thousands of rupees', 'dozens of eggs', 'scores of people'*, etc."

Rule XIV: If the subject of a sentence begins with a fraction, the verb agrees with the noun or pronoun that comes after the preposition *of*, as—

Two-thirds of the book is interesting.
Two-thirds of the books are interesting.
A quarter of it is fresh.
A quarter of them are stale.
Half of it is useful.
Half of them are rotten.

The same principle applies with the phrases: *The rest of*, *Majority of*, *Heaps of*, *Most of*, and *Lots of*. As for example,

Lots of medicine has been prepared.
Lots of soldiers have come.
The rest of the novel is interesting.
The rest of the novels are interesting.

Rule XV: If the subject of a sentence begins with *A number of*, the verb is always plural for *A number of* means 'many'; as—

A number of children *are* playing in the field.
A number of prisoners *have* escaped from the jail.

But if the subject begins with *The number of*, the verb is singular; as—

The number of persons present *is* very small.
The number of students in this college *has* swelled.

Rule XVI: Phrases beginning with *A band of, A chain of, A bouquet of, A galaxy of, A series of, A team of, A herd of, A bevy of, A set of, A crowd of, A regiment of, A flock of, A class of* and *A batch of* take a singular verb though the word after 'of' is plural; as—

A band of musicians has come.
A series of accidents has taken place.
A team of doctors has been called in.
A herd of cattle is in the field.
A set of bangles has been purchased.

Rule XVII: Some of the collective nouns take the verb in the singular or in the plural according as the speaker thinks of the thing as a single whole or of the individuals of which it is composed; as—

Class, Cabinet, Committee, Board, Army, Jury, Mob, Government, Team etc.

The *team* (as a unit) *is* winning.
The *team* (as individuals) *are* fighting for a win.
The *class* (as a unit) *is* marching into the hall.
The *class* (as individuals) *are* debating this point.
The *jury* (as a single body) *has* given its verdict.
The *jury* (as individuals) *were* discussing this point.
The *committee* (as a single body) *has* issued its report.
The *committee* (as individuals) *are* divided in their opinion.

Rule XVIII: Certain nouns, though singular in form, are used as plural and they usually take plural verb; as—

Cattle, Clergy, Gentry, People, Police, Poultry, Public, Swine, Vermin

The *cattle are* grazing in the field.
The landed *gentry were* once all in all.
The *public were* moved by this spectacle.
The *clergy were* unanimous in their opinion.
The *vermin are* harmful.

Note: 'People' is used both in singular and plural when it means 'a nation'; as

The Americans *are* a simple and brave *people*.
Many different *peoples live* in Asia.

Rule XIX: The following nouns are used only in the singular form and the verb that follows them is also singular; as—

abuse, advice, alarm, alphabet, bread, brick, bunting, clothing, folk, furniture, gossip, hair, information, issue, luggage, offspring, poetry, scenery, thunder, etc.

Wrong : The *sceneries* of Darjeeling are very beautiful.
Right : The *scenery* of Darjeeling *is* very beautiful.
Wrong : Their *informations* are based on facts.
Right : Their *information is* based on facts.
Wrong : All my *furnitures* have been burnt.
Right : All my *furniture has* been burnt.
Wrong : Your *hairs* have turned grey.
Right : Your *hair has* turned grey.
Wrong : His *luggages* have been packed.
Right : His *luggage has* been packed.

When more than one language is spoken of, the plural of 'alphabet' is 'alphabets'. When 'abuse' is used in the sense of 'wrong use', the plural is 'abuses'. When 'issue' means 'result', its plural is 'issues'.

Rule XX: The subject of a sentence may begin with any one of the following phrases: *A good deal of, A great deal of, A lot of, Most of,* and *Some of*. In such a situation the verb agrees with the object of the preposition 'of'; as—

A good deal of time has been lost.
A good deal of efforts are needed.
Some of the *music was* boring.
Some of the *children were* hungry.

Rule XXI: When 'and' connects two or more titles or designations of the same person, the verb is always singular; as—

The *Principal* and *Secretary is* on leave.
The *Governor* of Bihar and *Chancellor* of this university *has* given this directive.

When 'and' connects two or more titles or designations with the article 'the' before each of them, the expression refers to two different persons. The verb in such a case is always plural; as—

The Principal *and the* Secretary *are* present.

Rule XXII: If the subject of a sentence begins with *None of*, the verb is generally plural; as—

None of the candidates *have* appeared for an interview.
None of these scientists *are* willing to take up this challenge.

Rule XXIII: If 'none' refers to an uncountable noun, the verb is singular. If it refers to a countable noun in its plural form, the verb can be either singular or plural; as—

I have been waiting for the sugar but *none* (of it) *has* arrived.
I have been waiting for my friends but *none* (of them) *has/have* arrived.

Rule XXIV: Certain adjectives are used with the definite article (*the*) to talk about group of people in a particular condition; as—

The blind, The sick, The deaf, The poor, The young, The old,
The dead, The brave, The coward, The handicapped, The unemployed

These expressions have a plural meaning: *the blind* means 'the blind people', or 'all blind people', but not 'the blind man'. Whenever such an expression forms the subject of a sentence, it takes a plural verb; as—

The blind are helpless. *The rich are* selfish.
The poor are hungry. *The unemployed are* restless.

Rule XXV: Some of the nationality words ending in *-sh* or *-ch* or *-ese* can also be used with a definite article; as—

The British, The English, The French, The Irish, The Dutch

These expressions are plural: *the British* means 'all (the) British people'. When the subject of a sentence is one such expression it takes a plural verb; as—

The French love good food. *The Japanese are* hard-working.
The British have a long history. *The Chinese are* strong-willed.

Rule XXVI: (a) When the article *a* or *an* is used after *Many* the noun that follows it is always singular and consequently the verb is also singular; as—

Many a man *comes* and *goes*. *Many an* animal *lives* on grass.

(b) The collocation *More than one* is treated as a compound of *one*. As a singular noun it is followed by a singular verb; as

More than one passenger *was* killed.
More than one examinee *was* expelled.

Here you can't use *passengers* or *examinees* in place of *passenger* and *examinee*. Nor can you use *were* in place of *was*.

(c) In the sentence pattern: *More + plural noun + than one*... the verb is always plural; as—

More principals than one were present.
More books than one have been burnt.

Rule XXVII: In expressions where the same singular noun is joined by a preposition (*singular noun + Preposition*) the verb used is always singular; as—

Ship after ship is heading towards the shore.
Letter after letter pinpoints the need for hard work

Rule XXVIII: When clauses are introduced by the relative pronouns *who, whom, whose, which,* or *that*, the verb agrees with the antecedent of the relative pronoun in person and number; as—

He made a list of *things that were* required.
I like a *boy who shows* intelligence.

I like *people who are* honest.
The *book which is* on the table *is* not mine.

Rule XXIX: *There* can never be the subject of a verb. Hence look for the subject after the verb in sentences beginning with *there*; as—

There *were* ten *students* in our group.
There *are* always two *sides* to every story.
There *seem* to be three *lions* in the den.
There *is* a *book* on the table.

Rule XXX: When a sentence is built around a linking verb, the verb must agree with the subject, not the complement; as—

The most difficult *thing is* the adjectives.

Rule XXXI: In denials, for persons, *no one* is used as a singular, *none* as a plural; as—

Is there any servant in the house? No, *there is no one.*
Are there any servants in the house? No, *there are none.*

Rule XXXII: There are sentence patterns that depart from the typical subject-verb-complement order. The following situations deserve special attention:

1. The *subject* following the *verb*

Examples:

Imbedded in the concrete walls *was* the *print* of an artist (*print was*).

Stacked against the wall of the shelter *were* eleven boxes of heroin (*boxes were*).

2. Introductory *it*

Introductory *it* is always followed by the singular verb, no matter whether the noun that follows is singular or plural. (e.g., *It is* the people who matter.) *It*, in such cases, has been termed a *dummy subject*. It prepares the way for the real subject to come. Nevertheless it controls the verb. No one would say, "It *are* the people".

Examples:

It is the big *question* that we should keep in mind.
It is the *colleges* that must create an ideal academic atmosphere.

3. Introductory *there*.

The present-day English grammarians are divided in regard to the number of the verb when the dummy *there* introduces a sentence.

In sentences in which the noun that follows the verb is plural in form, most writers and speakers use a plural verb.

Examples:

There *were* eleven *men* in our group.

There *are* two *explanations* of his conduct.
There *seem* to be three *deer* hidden in that bush.
[No literate person would say: *eleven men was, there is two, there seems to be three*]

Exercises

I. *Choose the right ones:*

1. The man and woman (is/are) determined to tell the truth.
2. The horse and carriage (are/is) ready.
3. Five and five (make/makes) ten.
4. Churchill, statesman and writer, (are/is) no more.
5. The house, with its contents, (were/was) burnt down.
6. The father as well as the son (is/are) absent.
7. Dick, together with his friends, (was/were) drowned.
8. Neither Ram nor Gauri (is/are) criminal.
9. Every coolie (carry/carries) (his/their) ration.
10. Neither he nor I (are/am) in the wrong.
11. My friends as well as I (was/were) given books.
12. Each of the wounded soldiers (was/were) given first aid.
13. Either the waiter or the cook (were/was) dishonest.
14. Neither of the plans (were/was) approved.
15. The jury (was/were) divided in (his/their) opinion.
16. A jury (consist/consists) of twelve persons.
17. Everyone of these hostelers (are/is) absent.
18. Physics (is/are) a difficult subject.
19. *Tales from Tagore* (is/are) a nice collection of stories.
20. Twenty miles (is/are) a long distance.
21. My means (are/is) limited.
22. Great pains (has/have) been taken to obtain permit.
23. By (these/this) means I hope to succeed.
24. Much pains (is/are) being taken to maintain law and order.
25. The introduction of reforms (were/was) not liked by him.
26. The state of affairs (are/is) sure to affect his career.
27. I ate four (breads/loaves).
28. He gave me good (advices/advice).
29. His house is built of (brick/bricks)
30. He has written a (poetry/poem).
31. My college has (furnitures/ furniture).
32. He gave me false (information/informations).
33. He has not yet passed (order/orders) on my application.
34. Sixty rupees (is/are) not a big sum.
35. The evil that men do (live/lives) after them.

II. *Supply a verb in agreement with its subject:*

1. The horse and cart ..... at his door.
2. Three Musketeers ..... written by Alexander Dumas.

3. One of the books ..... missing.
4. Bread and milk ..... wholesome food.
5. The officer, along with his clerks, ... in the office.
6. The Prime Minister as well as his entire cabinet ..... there.
7. The President and member ex-officio ..... in the meeting.
8. The philosopher and the statesman ..... required.
9. My friends as well as I ..... joining the army.
10. Neither Ram nor his relatives ..... coming to my place.
11. Either of the two boys ..... willing to work.
12. Nobody ..... helping me.
13. Ten dollars ..... enough for me.
14. Mumps ..... a dangerous disease.
15. I like a man who ..... laborious.
16. I made a list of things that ..... needed.
17. There ..... two hundred students in my class.
18. The cattle ..... grazing in the field.
19. Is there anybody is the office? No, there..... no one.
20. The data ..... incorrect.

Answers:

I. 1. are 2. is 3. make 4. is. 5. was 6. is. 7. was 8. is 9. carries, his 10. am 11. were 12. was 13. was 14. was 15. were 16. consists 17. is 18 is 19. is 20. is 21. are 22. have 23. this 24. is 25. was 26. is 27. loaves 28. advice 29. brick 30. poem 31. furniture 32. information 33. orders 34. is 35. lives

II. 1. is 2. is 3. is 4. is 5 is 6. was 7. was 8. are 9. are 10. are 11. is 12. is 13. is 14. is 15. is 16. were 17. are 18. are 19. is 20. are

---

CHAPTER 1·

Hundreds of Errors: How to Avoid Them

Ignorance is a blank sheet on which we may write; but error is c scribbled one which we must first erase. —COTTON

There are mistakes that we commit and do not know, mistakes that we know and yet commit. It is all because of our ignorance of the fundamenta rules of grammar and current usage. On occasions even the knowledge able, in their weaker moments, trip. It is, in fact, a slippery spot which demands of us a cautious approach.

The following are some of the mistakes commonly made in the use o English language. You will do well to study them together with the clea explanations of how to correct these errors.

1. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
One of my friends *are* an engineer	One of my friends *is* an engineer.
One of my dogs *have* disappeared.	One of my dogs *has* disappeared.

One of is followed by a plural noun phrase. It means 'one of them'. I takes a singular verb because the subject is *one*.

2. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I *don't* know *nothing* about him.	I don't know *anything* about him.
I could *not* find him *nowhere*.	I could not find him *anywhere*.
He does *not* want *none* of that cake.	He does not want *any* of that cake

The use of two negatives to express a single negative idea is wrong Two negatives lead to a positive meaning. One negative word should therefore, be used for the expr ssion of a negative idea.

3. Look at these sentence

Incorrect	*Correct*
I always like *to closely e amine* every proposal.	I always like *to examine closel* every proposal.
He plans *to hurriedly complete* this work	He plans *to complete* this work *hur riedly*.

Both t tences are examples of split infinitive. The infinitive is the 'to" form o: e verb, e.g., "to sing", "to dance", "to finish". If a word is placed between th two words (e.g., "to closely examine"), the infinitive is said to be "split". Such splittings are to be avoided.

4. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I wish I *was* as tall as my father.	I wish I *were* as tall as my father.
If he *was* alive he would help me.	If he *were* alive, he would help me.

The subjunctive mood is used in English specifically in two situations: (a) with the expression of a wish and (b) to express a condition contrary to actual fact. The present subjunctive is conjugated as follows: I *were*; We *were*; You *were*; He *were*; They *were*.

5. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is working hard *with a view to win* this match.	He is working hard *with a view to winning* this match.
I *look forward to meet* old friend next month.	I *look forward to meeting* my old friend next month.

The verb that follows the phrase 'with a view to' or 'look forward to' is to be always in the '-ing' form.

with a view to + V_1 (ing) + ...
look forward to + V_1 (ing) + ...

6. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He *prides* on his wealth.	He *prides himself* on his wealth.
She *absented* from her class.	She *absented herself* from her class.
I *availed* of this opportunity.	I *availed myself* of this opportunity.
I *enjoyed* during the holidays.	I *enjoyed myself* during the holidays. Or, I *enjoyed* the holidays.
He *resigned* to the will of God.	He *resigned himself* to the will of God.

When verbs like *absent, apply, acquit, enjoy, over-reach, resign,* and *pride* are used reflectively (that is, when the subject of the verb is also the receiver of the action, the action is 'reflected') a reflexive pronoun (I—*myself*; you—*yourself*; We—*ourselves*; They—*themselves*; He—*himself*; She—*herself*; One—*oneself*) is used after it.

7. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
cut *me* shaving this morning	I cut *myself* shaving this morning.
We got out of the swimming pool	We got out of the swimming pool and dried *ourselves*.

When the same person is the subject and the object, it is necessary to use the reflexive pronouns: *myself, yourself, herself, himself, itself, ourselves, themselves, oneself.*

8. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I, you and *he* are neighbours.	*You, he* and *I* are neighbours.
You, they and *we* must work together.	*We, you* and *they* must work together.

When first, second and third person singular pronouns (*I, You* and *He*) are used together, they are placed in this order: Second person (*You*), third person *(he)* and then first person *(I)*. In the case of plural pronouns 'we' comes first, then 'you' and then 'they'.

9. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I have read *Shakespeare's works who* was a great dramatist.	I have read *the works of Shakespeare who* was a great dramatist.
Ravi's *dog who* is my friend has died.	The dog of *Ravi*, who is my friend, has died.

Relative pronoun should be placed as close to its antecedent as possible.

10. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Let *he* do whatever he likes to do.	Let *him* do whatever he likes to do.
Let you and *I* solve this riddle.	Let you and *me* solve this riddle.

Pronouns following 'Let' must be in the objective case, and not in the nominative case.

Always keep in mind these forms of *Personal Pronouns:*

Nominative case/Subject pronoun	Objective case/Object pronoun	Possessive case/Possessive pronoun	Reflexive pronoun	Possessive adjective
I	me	mine	myself	my
you	you	yours	yourself	your
we	us	ours	ourselves	our
they	them	theirs	themselves	their
he	him	his	himself	his
she	her	hers	herself	her
it	it	its	itself	its

When the pronoun is the subject of a sentence, the nominative case is used. When the pronoun is the object of a sentence, the objective case is used. And when the pronoun shows possession, the possessive case is used.

11. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
These books are for you and *I*.	These books are for you and *me*.
Between *he* and *I* there is an understanding.	Between *him* and *me* there is an understanding.

When a pronoun is the object of a verb or a preposition it should be in objective case.

12. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is taller than *me*.	He is taller than *I*. (am)
I love you more than *him*.	I love you more than *he*. (loves you)
I love you more than *he*.	I love you more than (I love) *him*.

The case of the pronoun following 'than' and 'as' is decided by mentally supplying the verb and completing the sentence.

13. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
The climate of Ranchi is better than Gaya.	The climate of Ranchi is better than *that* of Gaya.
The roads of Delhi are wider than Allahabad.	The roads of Delhi are wider than *those* of Allahabad.

The objects of comparison are 'the climate of Ranchi' and 'the climate of Gaya'; 'the roads of Delhi' and 'the roads of Allahabad'. To avoid the repetition of a noun in a sentence we use *that* for singular noun and *those* for plural noun.

14. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
One of them has already given up *one's* studies.	*One* of them has already given up *his* studies.
One should not waste *his* time.	One should not waste *one's* time.

When 'one' means 'one in number', the pronoun for it is third person singular pronoun (*he, she, it*). The possessive formed from them can be *his* or *her* or *its*. In the first sentence the meaning is *one taken out of them*. Hence the possessive should be *'his'*. In the second sentence *One* is an indefinite pronoun, meaning 'anyone'. The possessive of *'one'* is *'one's'*. Hence the use of *one's* in place of *his*.

15. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Either the Chief Minister *or* his cabinet colleagues have submitted *his* resignation.	*Either* the Chief Minister *or* his cabinet colleagues have submitted *their* resignation.
Neither the officer *nor* the clerks could get *his* salary.	*Neither* the officer *nor* the clerks could get *their* salary.

When two nouns joined by 'Either.....or' or 'Neither..... nor' differ in number, the pronoun must agree with the plural noun which comes after 'or'/'nor'.

16. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
The father and the son love *one another*.	The father and the son love *each other*.
Those three girls love *each other*.	Those three girls love *one another*.

Each other is used in speaking of two persons or things, *one another* in speaking of more than two.

17. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Neither of the three boys came.	*None* of the three boys came.
None of the two boys came.	*Neither* of the two boys came.
Either of the four boys has done this work.	*Anyone* of the four boys has done this work.
Anyone of the two candidates is fit for this post.	*Either* of the two candidates is fit for this post.

'Either' or 'Neither' is used in reference to two only. 'Anyone' or 'None' is used for more than two.

18. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Each boy and *each* girl was in *their* best dress.	*Each* boy and *each* girl was in *her* best dress.
Every soldier and *every* sailor is in *their* place.	*Every* soldier and *every* sailor is in *his* place.
Every night and *every* day brings *their* own responsibility.	*Every* night and *every* day brings *its* own responsibility.

When two singular nouns are joined by 'and' and preceded by 'each' or 'every', the pronoun is always singular.

19. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
It is not *such* a good book *which* I expected.	It is not *such* a good book *as* I expected.
This is the *same* beggar *who* came yesterday.	This is the *same* beggar *that* came yesterday.
My problem is the *same which* yours.	My problem is the *same as* yours.

The relative pronoun 'as' or 'that' should be used after 'same' or 'such'. Never use 'who' or 'which' after 'same' or 'such'.

20. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is *more wiser* than his brother.	He is *wiser* than his brother.
He is the *most wisest* of all.	He is the *wisest* of all.

Double comparatives and double superlatives must not be used.

21. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is more *wiser* than brave.	He is *more wise* than brave.
He is the *more intelligent* and wiser than his brother.	He is *wiser* and *more intelligent* than his brother.

When two adjectives in the comparative or the superlative degree are used together, the one formed by adding 'more' or 'most' must follow the other adjective.

22. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Your are *wiser* than old.	You are *more wise* than old.
He is *braver* than wise.	He is *more brave* than wise.

When we compare two qualities in the same person or thing, the comparative ending 'er' is not used. In all such cases we should use 'more' before the adjective.

23. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is *as* wise, if not wiser than his brother.	He is *as* wise *as*, if not wiser than his brother.
This book is *as* good, if not better than that book.	This book is *as* good *as*, if not better than that book.

When two adjectives with differing degrees of comparison are used they should be complete in themselves. We should complete the first comparison before taking up the second.

Her *new* house is better than my *old one*.

My *old* watch is in better condition than his *new one*.

33. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
The Victoria Memorial is a *worth seeing building*.	The Victoria Memorial is a *building worth seeing*.
This is a *worth sceing sight*.	This is a *sight worth seeing*.

A compound adjective is sometimes formed by the combination of 'worth' with some participle. It is placed after the noun it qualifies.

34. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Have they heard the *last* news?	Have they heard the *latest* news?
His *last* novel is being published next month.	His *latest* novel is being published next month.
'Edward II' was Marlowe's *latest* play.	'Edward II' was Marlowe's *last* play.

We use *latest* for things which are new. But *last* means either *before it is one* or *at the end of a series*.

35. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I am looking forward to his *nearest* visit.	I am looking forward to his *next* visit.
Excuse me. Where's the *next* railway station?	Excuse me. Where's the *nearest* railway station?

We usually use *next* for time. It means 'nearest in the future'. It is generally used when we think of things coming one after another in a series. *Nearest* is used for place. It means 'most near' or 'closest'.

36. Look at these sentences :

Incorrect	*Correct*
There are not *some* books on the table.	There are not *any* books on the table.
Has he brought *some* books?	Has he brought *any* books?

Some is usually used in affirmative clauses whereas *any* is used in questions and negative. We can use *some* in questions if we expect an affirmative answer, or when we want to encourage people to say 'yes'; as—

Would you like *some* more potato chips?

Could I have *some* ripe mangoes, please?

37. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is not as tall as his brother.	He is not as tall as his brother is.
She is richer than you *are*.	She is richer than you.

When 'than' or 'as' is followed by third person pronoun, the verb is repeated. But the verb is omitted if 'than' or 'as' is followed by first and second person.

38. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is my *older* brother.	He is my *elder* brother.
She is my *oldest* sister.	She is my *eldest* sister
He is the *eldest* man of this place.	He is the *oldest* man of this place.

The words 'elder' and 'eldest' are used for comparing the members of the family. They are often used before words *brother, sister, son, daughter, grandson, granddaughter*. *Older* and *oldest* are used with regard to age and in connection with human family relationship.

39. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Few politician can be relied on.	*A few politicians* can be relied on.
Little learning is a dangerous thing.	*A little* learning is a dangerous thing.
He has *few* interest in politics.	He has *little* interest in politics.

We usually use *few* with plural nouns and *little* with uncountable nouns. *Little* means 'not much/many'. It is rather negative. *A little* is more positive. It means 'some'.

40. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is *enough bold* to take up this challenge.	He is *bold enough* to take up this challenge.
He hasn't got *enough good* voice.	He hasn't got a *good enough* voice.
He is not driving *enough fast*.	He is not driving *fast enough*.

Enough can qualify an adjective or adverb. It usually comes after adjectives and adverbs.

41. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
His all books were burnt.	*All his* books were burnt.
His both hands are skinny.	*Both his* hands are skinny.
Raju's all hopes were gone.	*All Raju's* hopes were gone.

The noun of the possessive case (*Raju's, Sheela's*) or the pronoun of the possessive case (*mine, ours, theirs, his, her*, etc.) comes just before that noun for which it is used.

42. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
This is a *best* book.	This is a *very good* book.
He is a *worst* scholar.	He is a *very bad* scholar.

An adjective of superlative degree is used when the noun it qualifies shows the possession of a quality to a higher degree than any other member of the same class.

43. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He came *latter* than you.	He came *later* than you.
If offered red or white shirt I'd choose the *later*.	If offered red or white shirt, I would choose the *latter*.
I will see you *latter*.	I will see you *later*.

Later is the comparative of *late*. It means *more late in time, afterwards*. But *latter* is the opposite of *former*. It means the second of two people or things just mentioned. *Later* denotes time whereas *latter* denotes position.

44. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Have you any *farther* questions to ask?	Have you any *further* questions to ask?
He made no *farther* remarks.	He made no *further* remarks.
Delhi is *further* from Gaya than Allahabad.	Delhi is *farther* from Gaya than Allahabad.
Let's not walk any *further*.	Let's not walk any *farther*.

Farther means 'at or to a great distance or more distant point'. *Further* means 'more, additional'.

45. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
She sings *beautiful*.	She sings *beautifully*.
This flower smells *sweetly*.	This flower smells *sweet*.

To give more information about the action—to say *how, where* or *when* it is done— we use adverbs with verbs. When the quality of the subject rather than the action of the verb is to be expressed, we use adjective with a verb. It is the smell of the flower that has been described in the second sentence. Hence the use of the adjective *sweet*, not the adverb *sweetly*.

46. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He hit the ball *hardly*.	He hit the ball *hard*.
You have to work *hardly*.	You have to work *hard*.
He has got *hard* any money.	He has got *hardly* any money.
He is *hardly* pressed for time.	He is *hard* pressed for time.

Hard is both an adjective and adverb. Its meaning is quite different from *hardly* which is also an adverb. *Hardly* means 'almost no' or 'almost not'. The correct expression is 'be hard pressed' which means 'be under pressure, strained'.

47. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
The *two first* pages of this book are torn.	The *first two* pages of this book are torn.
The *two first* chapters of this book are good.	The *first two* chapters of this book are good.

The two first is a meaningless expression. It implies that two things may be first. It makes no sense. The correct expression is 'the first two'.

48. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He speaks *well* English.	He speaks English *well*.
I like *very much* skating.	I like skating *very much*. Or, I *very much* like skating.

We should not put adverbs between the verb and its object. These are not generally separated.

49. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I *yesterday* met him.	I met him *yesterday*.
They're *tomorrow* leaving for Paris.	*Tomorrow* they're leaving for Paris.

Adverbs of definite time are put at the beginning or end of a clause. They do not go in mid-position.

50. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
You *well* organised that function.	You organised that function *well*.
She *badly* dances.	She dances *badly*.

When we use an adverb to evaluate, it generally goes in end-position, not in mid-position.

51. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
She is *very* slower than Reena.	She is *much* slower than Reena.
You are *very* older than me.	You are *much* older than me.
She was walking *much* slowly.	She was walking *very* slowly.

Very is used with adjectives and adverbs in the positive degree and with present participle whereas *much* is used with adjectives and adverbs in the comparative degree, and with past participle.

52. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
It is nothing *else than* pride.	It is nothing *else but* pride.
Call me anything *else than* a thief.	Call me anything *else but* a thief.

We usually use the adverb 'but' (not, *than*) after 'else'.

53. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He *seldom or ever* goes to his village home.	He *seldom or never* goes to his village home.
He *seldom or ever* plays cricket.	He *seldom if ever* (*seldom or never*) plays cricket.

Ever usually means 'at any time'. It cannot go with *seldom* which means 'not often, rarely'. The correct expression is *seldom or never*, or *seldom if ever*.

54. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
It is no use to ask her—she is not interested in it.	*It is no use asking* her—she is not interested in it.
Is it any use to try to talk to him?	*Is it any use trying* to talk to him?

In expressions like these, *use* is followed by an *-ing* form. The correct expression is, *it* or *there is no use + -ing form of verb*.

55. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
His mother *kept on to encourage* him to study.	His mother *kept on encouraging* him to study.
Whatever happens, *keep on to try*.	Whatever happens, *keep on trying*.

Keep on is never followed by an infinitive. It is always followed by the *-ing* form of verb.

56. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
She *knows to* sing and dance.	She *knows how to* sing and dance.
He *knows to* prepare French toast.	He *knows how to* prepare French toast.

57. Look at these sentences:

Know is never followed directly by an infinitive. We generally use the expression *know how to*.

Incorrect	*Correct*
He has finished *to mend* the puncture.	He has *finished mending* the puncture.
I enjoy *to travel*.	I enjoy *travelling*.

After some verbs we use an *-ing* form, and not an infinitive. Here is the list of verbs which are followed by an *-ing form*:

avoid	forgive	miss
consider	give up	practise
delay	go	put off
dislike	(can't) help	risk
enjoy	imagine	spend money/time
excuse	keep	suggest
feel like	mind	understand
finish		

58. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Why is she *appearing* so sad?	Why does she *appear* so sad?
I am *owing* a great deal to my parents.	I *owe* a great deal to my parents.
I am not *feeling* well today.	I am not well today.
He is *adoring* that political leader.	He *adores* that political leader.

Some verbs are never used in progressive forms. Here is the list of some of the most important 'non-progressive' verbs:

1. ***Relational Verbs*** : *appear, belong to, consist of, contain, equal, fit, include, owe, require, resemble, seem, suffice*
2. ***Verbs of Emotion*** : *adore, abhor, care, detest, dislike, hate, like, love, wish*
3. ***Verbs of Perception*** : *hear, see, smell, taste*
4. ***Verbs of Possession*** : *have, own, possess*
5. ***Verbs of Cognition*** : *believe, feel, forget, know, mean, mind, realise, recall, recollect, remember, suppose, think, trust, understand*

Note: Some of the verbs noted above are used in progressive form in special cases, as for example:

Appear : (*be published*) When is your next article on this subject *appearing*?

Hear : (*receive information*) I have been *hearing* good news about him.

: (*receive a letter*) I have been *hearing* from him fairly regularly. : (*try* specially in a legal sense) The judge has been *hearing* this case for the last five years.

See : (*imagine, have hallucinations*) She is *seeing* things; there is nothing there.

: (*meet*) I will be *seeing* the Managing Director tomorrow.

Smell : (*inhale the odour of*) He was *smelling* the mango to find out whether it was fresh or stale.

Feel : (*go forward carefully*) The blind beggar is *feeling* his way.

Think : (*reflect upon, recall*) He was *thinking* about days long gone by.

: (*examine the possibility of*) Now I am *thinking* of leaving this place.

59. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I have not and shall not *bear* this trouble.	I have not *borne* and shall not *bear* this trouble.
I have never and will never *do* such a thing.	I have never *done* and shall never *do* such a thing.

The present form of a verb cannot be used for both the present perfect tense and the future indefinite tense. The present perfect tense takes the past participle form of the verb (*bear*: *bore*: *borne*; *do*: *did*: *done*) and the future indefinite takes the present form of the verb.

60. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He *hanged* the lamp on the wall.	He *hung* the lamp on the wall.
He was *hung* for murder.	He was *hanged* for murder.

The word 'hang' has two different meanings: (a) to kill a person by hanging; (b) to suspend from or attach loosely to some other object. The two different forms of the verb 'hang' are:

V_1	V_2	V_3	
Hang :	*hanged* :	*hanged*	(for persons)
Hang :	*hung* :	*hung*	(for things)

61. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
This book *costed* me *half past* twelve rupees.	This book *cost* me rupees *twelve and fifty* paise.
The hens have *lain* no eggs today.	The hens have *laid* no eggs today.
Let me *lay* on the bed.	Let me *lie* on the bed.

Half past twelve is a time expression. We say, 'It is *half past twelve* by my watch.' It is never used for denoting the price of something. We usually say, rupees twelve and fifty paise. The use of the verbs in the sentences above is wrong.

The correct past and perfect forms of certain verbs are:

Present	*Past*	*Perfect*
lie = rest, be down	lay	lain
lay = place, arrange, deposit, put down flat	laid	laid
lie = to tell a lie	lied	lied
leave = go away	left	left
live = be alive, be at home	lived	lived
hang = to put up	hung	hung
hang = to execute the order of death sentence	hanged	hanged
flow (water)	flowed	flowed
fly (bird)	flew	flown
flee = run away (person)	fled	fled
bear = put up with	bore	borne
bore = to make a hole; to make tired or uninterested	bored	bored
find = to discover	found	found
found = to establish	founded	founded
fall	fell	fallen
fell = to cut down (a tree); to knock down (a person)	felled	felled
feel	felt	felt
fill	filled	filled
awake (intransitive)	awoke	awoke
awake (transitive)	awaked	awaked

62. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He has *returned back* from Delhi.	He has *returned* (*come back*) from Delhi.
I *awaited for* his arrival	I *awaited* (*waited for*) his arrival.
He has *repaid back* his loan.	He has *repaid* (*paid back*) his loan.

To avoid such silly mistakes, it is well to remember that:

return = come back; await = wait for; repay = pay back; resume = start again

63. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
The boat was *drowned* in the river.	The boat was *sunk* in the river.
A boy has been *sunk* in the river.	A boy has been *drowned* in the river.

A boat *capsizes* or *sinks*; a ship *sinks*; a person *is drowned*. 'To be drowned' is used only of living things.

64. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Who *invented* America?	Who *discovered* America?
Marconi *discovered* the wireless.	Marconi *invented* the wireless.

To invent is to make something that did not exist before. *To discover* is to find something that existed before but was unknown.

65. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
If I was you I would not have done so.	*If I were* you I would not have done so.
He walks *as if he is* a king.	He walks *as if he were* a king.

When we talk about events which are not certain to happen—which we hope will happen, or imagine might happen or want to happen—we use a special group of verb-forms called the subjunctive (e.g., *I were, She be*, etc.) The subjunctive form *were* is used instead of *was* after *if, as if*, and *I wish*.

66. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Neither his action was just *nor* unjust.	His action was *neither* just *nor* unjust.
I *neither* saw him *nor* her.	I saw *neither* him *nor* her.
Neither it is good *nor* it is bad.	It is *neither* good *nor* bad.

Neither...nor is used to join together two negative ideas. This structure is balanced, so that the same kind of words follow *neither* and *nor*.

67. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Ten students have passed and one failed.	Ten students *have* passed and one *has* failed.
One of the thieves escaped and two caught.	One of the thieves escaped and two *were* caught.

The auxiliary verb is usually repeated if the voice or number of one principal verb is not the same as the voice or number of the other.

68. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Tell me where *are you going.*	Tell me where *you are going.*
He asked me *what was your name.*	He asked me what *my name was.*
Tell me when *are you leaving* for New York.	Tell me when *you are leaving* for New York.

Indirect questions normally have the word-order of affirmative sentences. The auxiliary verb is never put before the subject.

69. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
She *finished* her work when I met her.	She *had finished* her work when I met her.
The train *started* before he reached the station.	The train *had started* before he reached the station.

When two actions take place in the past, the one earlier in time is expressed by a verb in the past perfect tense, while the one later in time by that in the past simple tense.

70. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
They will be delighted if you *will* welcome them.	They will be delighted if you *welcome* them.
I will tell you as soon as I *will* know about it.	I will tell you as soon as I *know* about it.
When I *shall* go to Paris, I shall inform you.	When I *go* to Paris, I shall inform you.

We generally use the present instead of the future after *if* and conjunction of time such as *when, as soon as, after, while, until* and *before.*

71. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
It is time you *go* to bed.	*It is time* you *went* to bed.
It is time you *wash* your face.	*It is time* you *washed* your face.

When we want to say that 'it's time' for somebody else to do something, we generally use the structure: *It's time + subject + past-tense verb.*

72. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
She *knew* that I *am* coming.	She *knew* that I *was* coming.
He *said* that he *wants* to go h	He *said* that he *wanted* to go home.

If there is a past tense in the principal clause, the dependent clause must also be in the past tense.

73. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Both Raju *as well as* his brother were present.	*Both* Raju *and* his brother were present.
Tigers are *both* found in Asia and in Africa.	Tigers are found *both in* Asia *and in* Africa.

The correlative of *Both* is *and* (*Both* ....*and*) and not *as well as*. The same kind of words generally follow *Both* and *and*.

74. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Will I turn the light on?	*Shall* I turn the light on?
Shall he come tomorrow?	*Will* he come tomorrow?
Shall you do me a favour?	*Will* you do me a favour?
Will we attend the party?	*Shall* we attend the party?

In interrogative sentences 'shall' is used in the first person and 'will' in the third person. In the second person *shall* and *will* are used in accordance with the answer expected.

75. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Please excuse *me* being late.	Please excuse *my* being late.
She disliked *me* coming late.	She disliked *my* coming late.

When a noun or pronoun is placed before a gerund, it should be put in the possessive case.

76. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Incorrect*
Unless you *do not* work hard, you will cut a sorry figure.	*Unless* you work hard, you will cut a sorry figure.
Walk slowly *lest* you should *not* fall down.	Walk slowly *lest* you should fall down.

Unless means 'if not'. It should, therefore, be not used in a sentence or clause which is already negative. *Lest* is here a subordinating conjunction expressing a negative purpose. It should not be followed by 'not'.

77. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I *thought* of attending the party, but could not.	I *had thought* of attending the party but could not.

Incorrect	*Correct*
We *hoped* that you would solve this problem.	We *had hoped* that you would solve this problem.
I expected not such a turn of events.	I *had not expected* such a turn of events.

The past perfect tense is used with such verbs as hope, expect, think, intend, mean *(= intend),* suppose *and* want *to indicate that a past hope, expectation, intention, desire, etc., was not realized.* —A S HORNBY

78. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I *had gone* to Chandigarh.	I *went* to Chandigarh. Or, I *had been* to Chandigarh.
I *had slept* for hours.	I *slept* for hours.

We do not usually use past perfect tense singly in a sentence. We can use simple past tense instead. When the verb 'go' is used in the sense of 'go and come back from', 'been' is used in place of 'gone'.

79. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He *needs not* seek my help.	He *need not* seek my help.
She *dares not* walk in the dark.	She *dare not* walk in the dark.

In affirmative sentence the singular form of *dare/need* (that is, *dares/needs*) is used with singular subject. But *need not* and *dare not* admit of no change even if the subject is third person singular.

80. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
There is *a* HE school in my village.	There is *an* HE school in my village.
We have filed *a* FIR.	We have filed *an* FIR.
He is *a* NCC officer.	He is *an* NCC officer.
He has set up a X-ray plant.	He has set up *an* X-ray plant.

Whether *a* or *an* is used before initials depends on how the initial is pronounced. A, E, F, H, I, L, M, N, O, R, S and X all begin with a vowel sound; hence *an* LEA school, *an* MA, *an* MP but *a* BBC production, *a* BA, *a* PhD, etc.

—FT WOOD: CURRENT ENGLISH USAGE

81. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is *an* university professor.	He is *a* university professor.
It is *an* unit of measurement.	It is *a* unit of measurement.
It is *an* universal truth.	It is *a* universal truth.

We use *a* before a consonant sound, even if it is written with a vowel. When a word begins with 'U' and is pronounced as 'yu', or when a word begins with 'EU' and is pronounced as 'yu', or when a word begins with 'o' and is pronounced as 'wa', it is preceded by the article 'a' and not 'an'. Such words are: *unique, united, usual, European, useful, unit, universal, university, useless, one-eyed man, one-rupee note, unilateral, etc.*

82. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He plays violin.	He plays *the* violin.
Can you play tabla?	Can you play *the* tabla?

The definite article *the* is used before musical instruments. When 'play' means 'produce music', its object is always preceded by an article.

83. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Incorrect*
He has no knowledge and interest in music.	He has no knowledge *of* and interest *in* music.
He did not agree but differed from my opinion.	He did not agree *to* but differed *from* my opinion.

Sometimes a single preposition can't be used for two words that take two different prepositions. In such a situation both the prepositions should be used.

84. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
There is no end *of* troubles.	There is no end *to* troubles.
I am busy *in* my work.	I am busy *with* my work.
Send this letter *on* my address.	Send this letter *to* my address.

We usually say, end *to* one's troubles, busy *with* some work, send something *to* someone's address.

85. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Entering the room, the boys were found quarrelling.	Entering the room, *he* found the boys quarrelling.
Walking in the garden, a snake bit him.	While *he* was walking in the garden, a snake bit him.
Barking furiously I led the dog out of the compound.	I led the dog, barking furiously, out of the compound.
Going out of the room, the door was left open by her.	Going out of the room, *she* left open the door.
On examining the answer books, many silly mistakes were detected.	*On examining* the answer books, *we* detected many silly mistakes.

These sentences are examples of unattached participles. When the first word of a sentence is a participle, it must refer to some noun or pronoun it qualifies. That noun or pronoun should be the subject of the main clause.

86. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I saw her *to* go.	I saw her go.
I observed him *to* limp.	I observed him *limp*.

We usually leave out *to*, the sign of infinitive, after sensory verbs like *feel, hear, see, observe, perceive, mark, behold, survey, view, watch.*

87. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He insisted *to go*.	He insisted *on going*.
I am tired *to sing* and *dance*.	I am tired *of singing* and *dancing*.
He succeeded *to win* the match.	He succeeded *in winning* the match.

An infinitive is generally not used after words which take a preposition after them. Such words are:

Verbs: insist, object, prevent, succeed, think
Nouns: insistence, objection, intention, habit, resistance, view
Adjectives: equal, fond, tired, used

The infinitives should be changed into the corresponding gerunds.

88. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Avoid *to go* there.	Avoid *going* there.
Stop *to worry*.	Stop *worrying*.
Keep on *to try*.	Keep on *trying*.
He is busy *to write* letters.	He is busy *writing* letters.

The infinitives are changed into the corresponding gerunds after certain words which do not take prepositions after them. Such words are:

Verbs: *avoid, enjoy, finish, go on, keep on, mind, remember, can't help, stop, give up*
Adjectives: *busy, worth*

89. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Incorrect*
It is no good to cry over spilt milk.	*It is no good crying over spilt milk.*
There is no harm to do this work.	*There is no harm in doing this work.*

The infinitive is changed into the corresponding gerund after such phrases as these: *It is no use, It is no good, Have the pleasure of, There is no harm in.*

90. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Death is *more* preferable *than* dishonour.	Death is preferable *to* dishonour.
I prefer swimming *than* walking.	I prefer swimming *to* walking.

Though *preferable* is not a comparative yet it has a comparative force. It is, therefore, wrong to write 'more preferable'. *Prefer* takes *to*, not *than*.

91. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He regards me his guardian.	He regards me *as* his guardian.
They portrayed Nehru a dictator.	They portrayed Nehru *as* a dictator.

Certain verbs are always followed by 'as'. Such verbs are: *describe, depict, define, mention, portray, regard, represent, treat.*

92. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
She called me *as* a dullard.	She called me a dullard.
He was appointed *as* principal.	He was appointed principal.

Certain verbs are not followed by 'as' or 'to be'. Such verbs are: *appoint, choose, elect, call, consider, make, name, think.*

93. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
She looks *as if* she *suspects* foul play.	She looks *as if* she *suspected* foul play.
You act *as though* everything is in your hands.	You act *as though* everything *was* in your hands.

We usually avoid the use of present tense after 'as if' and 'as though'.

94. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He did nothing but *to play*.	He did *nothing but play*.
She did nothing but *to sing*.	She did *nothing but sing*.
She did no more than *to cry*.	She did *no more than cry*.

We usually use the infinitive without 'to' after the preposition 'but' and 'than'.

95. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
She will wash up before she *will go* to bed.	She will wash up before she *goes* to bed.
You won't know how good pudding is till you *will have tasted* it.	You won't know how good pudding is till you *have tasted* it.

The future simple is not used in time clauses. The simple present tense is used instead. Nor is future perfect tense used in time clauses. The present perfect is used instead.

96. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
It is I who *is* responsible for this mistake.	It is *I* who *am* responsible for this mistake.
It is you who *is* responsible for this mistake.	It is *you* who *are* responsible for this mistake.

The verb governed by 'who' should follow its antecedent. In sentence number one the antecedent is 'I'. Hence the verb 'am'. In sentence number two the antecedent is 'you'. Hence the verb 'are'.

97. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I want an armchair for an old man with sliding back.	I want, for an old man, an armchair with sliding back.
He shot himself dead after bidding his wife goodbye with a pistol.	He shot himself dead with a pistol after bidding his wife goodbye.

Both the sentences are examples of wrong word-order, impeding clarity of expression. It is well to remember that an adjective, adjective-substitute or adjective phrase should be put as near its antecedent as possible. This applies to relative clauses, too.

98. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Nobody has ever helped you, *has he*?	Nobody has ever helped you, *have they*?
Don't do that any more, *do you*?	Don't do that any more, *will you*?
I am taller than him, *isnt* I?	I am taller than him, *aren't I*?

If *anybody, anyone, everybody, everyone, somebody, someone, nobody* or *no one* is the subject of the main clause, the subject of the question tag is normally 'they'. If the main clause is in the form of a negative request or command, the question tag normally begins with 'will'. The question tag after *I am* is *aren't I*.

99. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Bring a *cold glass* of water.	Bring a glass of *cold water*.
He has purchased a *fresh basket* of apples.	He has purchased a basket of *fresh apples*.
I'd love to have a *hot cup* of tea.	I'd love to have a cup of *hot tea*.

In the present context the expressions, 'cold glass', 'fresh basket' and 'hot cup' are meaningless. The adjectives *cold*, *fresh* and *hot* qualify the noun 'water', 'apples' and 'tea' respectively. Hence the correct expressions will be *cold water*, *fresh apples* and *hot tea*.

100. Look at these sentences

Incorrect	*Correct*
He *already* left for Delhi.	He *has* already *left* for Delhi.
He did not speak to me *since* that incident.	He *has* not *spoken* to me *since* that incident.
He did not receive any message *up till* now.	He *has* not *received* any message *up till* now.
So far he did not reach the station.	*So far* he *has* not *reached* the station.

The present perfect tense can alone be used with adverbials such as these: *already, since, yet, so far, up till now*.

101. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
This tragic incident *has taken* place last year.	This tragic incident *took* place last year.
She *has gone* to bed at 9 o'clock.	She *went* to bed at 9 o'clock.
I *have met* him yesterday.	I *met* him yesterday.

Only the simple past can be used with adverbials mentioning a definite time in the past.

102. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Reeta was married by Rakesh.	Rakesh married Reeta.
He married his youngest daughter *with* an engineer.	He married his youngest daughter *to* an engineer.
His youngest daughter was married *with* an engineer.	His youngest daughter was married *to* an engineer.

When 'marry' is used in the sense of 'take as husband or wife', it can never be used in the passive form. It can be used both in the active and passive forms in the sense of 'give in marriage'. It is to be followed by 'to', not 'with'.

103. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
She comes to college *by a bicycle*.	She comes to college *by bicycle*. Or, She comes to college *on a bicycle*.
He came back *by my car*.	He came back *in my car*.

When the name of a vehicle is used in a general sense, the preposition

'by' is used. In all such cases no article is used before the name of the vehicle. If the reference is to a particular vehicle, 'by' is not used. We use 'in' or 'on' instead.

104. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Supposing if he does not come, what will you do?	*Supposing* he does not come, what will you do? Or, *If* he does not come, what will you do?

Supposing and *If* are not used together. Either of the two should be used.

105. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*correct*
He *informed* that everybody had gone against him.	He *informed me* (us, him, them, etc.) that everybody had gone against him.
She *told* that she was interested in chess.	She *told me* (us, him, them, etc.) that she was interested in chess.
He *assured* that every help would be given.	He *assured me* (us, him, them, etc.) that every help would be given.

The verbs *assure*, *inform*, *remind* and *tell* are not immediately followed by that–clause as their object. There has to be an indirect object between the verb and the clause.

106. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Flour is made *of* wheat.	Flour is made *from* wheat.
Your chair is not made *from* wood.	Your chair is not made *of* wood.

When reference is made to the material of which something is made, we use 'of'. The original material of which something is made can still be recognised. But we use 'from' when something is changed beyond recognition.

107. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
I *think* you *haven't* met my father.	I *do not think* you have met my father.
I *believe* you *haven't* seen the Taj Mahal.	I *don't believe* you have seen the Taj Mahal.

When negative ideas are introduced with *think*, *believe*, *suppose* and *imagine*, we make the first verb (*think*, *believe*, etc.) negative, not the second.

108. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
Do sit down, *will you?*	Do sit down, *won't you?*
Give me sufficient time, *won't you?*	Give sufficient time, *will you?*
Shut up, *can you?*	Shut up, *can't you?*

After imperatives we use (a) *won't you?* — to invite people to do things. (b) *will you?/would you?/could you?/can't you?* — to tell people to do things.

109. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He pays more attention to films than books.	He pays more attention *to* films than *to* books.
I can rely more on you than her.	I can rely more *on* you than *on* her.

When there is comparison between two objects, the preposition is placed before each of the two objects.

110. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
He is *declared to pass* in the first division.	He is *declared to have passed* in the first division.
She is *supposed to commit* this murder.	She is *supposed to have committed* this murder.

Perfect infinitive is used if it refers to a time prior to that which is expressed by the finite verb.

111. Look at these sentences:

Incorrect	*Correct*
A: How do you do?	A: How do you do?
B: Fine, thanks.	B: How do you do?

Don't confuse *How do you?* with *How are you?* It is a formula used when people are formally introduced. The reply is exactly the same: *How do you do?*

Correct Usage

Here are two lists of such words and expressions as are commonly misused. Their correct forms will help you avoid mistakes you occasionally commit.

(1)

Incorrect	*Correct*
advices	advice/pieces of advice
arm (Weapon)	arms
auspice	auspices

Incorrect	*Correct*
blotting	blotting paper
boarding	boarding house, hostel
bowel	bowels
breads	*pieces/slices/loaves* of bread
cattles	cattle
earning	earnings
equipments	equipment
furnitures	furniture/pieces of furniture
gentries	gentry
lecturership	lectureship
machineries	machinery/machines
offsprings	offspring
outskirt	outskirts
poetries	poems
sceneries	scenery/scenes
scissor	scissors
stationeries	stationery
traffics	traffic
trouser	trousers

a coward man	a cowardly man/a coward
a miser person	a miserly person/a miser
a man of his words	a man of his word
a flight of stair	a flight of stairs
a man of letter	a man of letters
Arrear Bill	Arrears Bill
a serial of lectures	a *series* of lectures
birth date	date of birth
cousin brother/sister	cousin
custom duty	customs duty
family members	members of his family
famous criminal	notorious criminal
head pain	headache
stomach pain / tooth pain	stomachache / toothache

(He has *a* headache / toothache / stomachache.)

in class tenth	in class ten or in the tenth class
in the campus	on the campus
in the committee	on the committee
in leave	on leave
mutual friend	common friend
no place (in a bus, train etc.)	no room (in a bus, train etc.)
passing marks	pass marks
Tennis field	Tennis court
cheque of Rs. 200	cheque for Rs 200

Incorrect	*Correct*
The back side of a building	The back of a building
The front side of a building	The front of a building
today morning	this morning
today afternoon	this afternoon
today evening	this evening
today night	tonight
two dozens pens	two dozen pens
three thousands people	three thousand people

(But we say, *dozens* of pens, *thousands* of people to denote unspecified number).

Saving Bank	Savings Bank
sworn enemies	avowed enemies
vacant vessels	empty vessels
white hair	grey hair
worth seeing sight	a sight worth seeing
9.30 o'clock train	9.30 train
details upon details	detail upon detail
miles after miles	mile after mile
with bag and baggage	bag and baggage
with black and blue	black and blue
with heart and soul	heart and soul
with tooth and nail	tooth and nail
good *in* studies	good *at* studies
clever *in* figure works	clever *at* figure works
bad *in* studies	bad *at* studies
in trice	in *a* trice
in hurry	in *a* hurry
What to speak of	Not to speak of

(2)

Incorrect	*Correct*
abstain *to speak* ill of ...	abstain *from speaking* ill of ...
aim *to do* good	aim *at doing* good
bent *to do*	bent *upon doing*
desirous *to go*	desirous *of going*
do the needful	do whatever is necessary
(have) passion *to read*	(have) passion *for reading*
persist *to say*	persist *in saying*
refrain *to go*	refrain *from going*
repent *to do*	repent *of doing*
succeed *to win*	succeed *in winning*
take pride *to do*	take pride *in doing*
think *to do*	think *of doing*

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Incorrect	*Correct*
build a home	build a house
cut jokes	*crack* jokes
cut the pencil	*sharpen* the pencil
cook bread	*bake* bread
describe *about*	describe
discuss *about*	discuss
drink tea	*take* tea
excel *to speak*	excel *in speaking*
give a speech	*deliver* a speech
give goodbye	*bid* goodbye
give the examination	*take* the examination; *appear at* the examination; *sit for* the examination
eat the poor	*feed* the poor
give *order*	give *orders*
make a lecture	*deliver* a lecture
make a goal	*score* a goal
make noise	make *a* noise
open the knot	*untie* the knot
pray God	pray *to* God
rise the lid	*raise* the lid
see the pulse	*feel* the pulse
speak a lie	*tell* a lie
stick the button	*sew* the button
take out one's shoes	*take off* one's shoes
to have headache	to have *a* headache
to have temperature	to have *a* temperature
to steal in the examination	to use unfair means in the examination

TEST YOURSELF

Directions: Each of the following sentences is divided into group A, B, C. Read the sentences to find out whether there is any error in any part. If there is no error, write 'D'.

1. The girl (A) resembles (B) to her father. (C) No error (D)
2. Ram (A) as well as (B) his parents were present. (C) No error (D)
3. He (A) does not (B) know to swim. (C) No error (D)
4. I shall not forgive you (A) unless (B) you do not apologise to me. (C) No error (D)

5. I am afraid neither of them are coming. No error
A B C D

6. A good teacher always advices his students to work hard. No error
A B C D

7. Our telephone is out of order. No error
A B C D

8. He repeats the same story over and over again. No error
A B C D

9. A bird in hand is better from two in the bush. No error
A B C D

10. One should take care of his health. No error
A B C D

—INDIAN BANK RECRUITMENT TEST 1978

11. Mohan Lal is my cousin brother. No error
A B C D

12. Mr Sharma that has five sons is very poor. No error
A B C D

13. My all family is going to visit the Taj. No error
A B C D

14. Have you any money on you? No, I haven't none. No error
A B C D

15. Of the VIPs which attended the function the PM was the tallest.
A B C

No error
D

—SBI, PO, 1980

16. I do not percieve some small change in me. No error
A B C D

17. I promised to write to you regularly and I shall do it. No error
A B C D

18. This property was to be divided equally between all the brothers.
A B C

No error
D

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

19. This umbrella is mine, that one is her's. No error
A B C D

20. Duty is superior than love. No error
A B C D

21. I set my watch with the office clock. No error
A B C D

22. This show is better than yesterday. No error
A B C D

23. Did you listen what he said? No error
A B C D

24. Neither of us have been selected. No error
A B C D

25. He is the cleverest of the two. No error.
A B C D

—INSPECTOR OF INCOME-TAX & EXCISE INSPECTOR EXAM, 1983

Directions: In each of the following sentences four words or phrases have been designated A, B, C, D. *Only one part in each sentence is incorrect. If there is no mistake, mark* 'E'.

26. All the ships were (A)/unloaded at Bombay and (B)/sent by train to Delhi. (C)/No error. (E)

27. None of these (A)/men was there (B)/when I had reached (C)/the place. (D)/ No error. (E)

28. He has (A)/a special room (B)/for test tubes (C)/into which he slips at odd times. (D)/No error. (E)

29. Hardly had he returned (A)/than he was (B)/called out again (C)/by the officer. (D)/No error. (E)

30. The king (A)/with the rest of the Royal Family (B)/were present (C)/at the ceremony. (D)/No error. (E)

31. The ten first pages (A)/of the book (B)/were missing (C)/when I bought it. (D)/No error. (E)

32. Return it back to (A)/my today (B)/if you (C)/do not need it. (D)/No error. (E)

33. He won't go (A)/to the pictures (B)/without you (C)/come too. (D)/No error. (E)

34. Will you recommend (A)/me a clerk (B)/who you think (C)/is competent? (D)/No error. (E)

35. The quality of films (A)/today are inferior (B)/to the films (C)/produced in the past. (D)/No error. (E)

—S.B.I., P.O EXAM., 1981

36. The train that was reported running (A)/on time (B)/had not reached the station (C)/even after two hours of the scheduled time. (D)/No error. (E)

37. India's policies (A)/in the spheres of foreign affairs (B)/are strictly based at (C)/the principles of Panchsheel. (D)/No error. (E)

38. The situation of law and order (A)/cannot allow to be degenerated any more (B)/and an action on part of authorities concerned (C)/is imminent. (D)/No error. (E)

39. The defender counsel (A)/moved for court (B)/inspection of the (C)/disputed premises. (D)/No error. (E)

40. If the passengers travelling on roofs and (A)/foot-boards of the train (B)/come across fatal accidents (C)/whose default it is? (D)/No error.(E)

41. It was sincerest most (A)/on part of Jawaharlal Nehru (B)/to strive for a (C)/socialistic pattern. (D)/No error. (E)

42. Let we learn English Grammar (A)/in an applied manner (B)/in order to (C)/speak and write correctly. (D)/No error. (E)

43. Sita is a laborious girl (A)/and preparing hardly (B)/to secure first class (C)/in the Higher Secondary Examination. (D)/No error. (E)

—SBI, PO EXAM, 1982

44. In spite of (A)/all his faults (B)/I cannot help (C)/but like him. (D)/No error. (E)

45. Between you and I(A)/he is incapable of (B)/achieving anything (C)/in life. (D)/No error. (E)

46. Each one of you (A)/who considers this report (B)/will make up their mind (C)/as I did. (D)/No error. (E)

47. In his middle age (A)/even he preferred (B)/working hard (C)/than to amuse himself. (D)/No error. (E)

48. On reckoning up (A)/ twenty pounds were discovered (B)/to be missing (C)/by the cashier. (D)/No error. (E)

49. We thought to find (A)/the ledger (B)/which was lost (C)/but which we could not do. (D)/No error. (E)

50. He refused to (A)/against our advice (B)/admit that his profit was higher (C)/than that of the last year. (D)/No error. (E)

—CBI, PO EXAM, 1984

Answers: 1. (C); delete 'to', for 'resemble' does not take any preposition. 2. (C); use 'was' in place of 'were'. 3. (C); write 'how to swim'. 4. (C); delete 'do not'. 5. (C); replace 'are' by 'is'. 6. (B); replace 'advices' by 'advises'. 7. (D); No error. 8. (D); No error. 9. (B); use 'than' in place of 'from'. 10. (B); use 'one's in place of 'his'. 11. (C); delete 'brother'. 12. (B); use 'who' in place of 'that'. 13. (A); delete 'all'. 14. (C); use 'any' in place of

'none'. 15. (B); 'which' should be replaced by 'who'. 16. (B); use 'any' in place of 'some'. 17. (A); use 'promise' in place of 'promised'. 18. (C); use 'among' in place of 'between'. 19. (B); delete 'one'. 20. (C); use 'to' in place of 'than'. 21. (C); use 'to' in place of 'with'. 22. (C); write 'than that of yesterday'. 23. (B); 'to' should be used after 'listen'. 24. (B); replace 'have' by 'has'. 25. (B); write 'cleverer'. 26. (A); 'goods' are sent by train, not 'ships'; Hence replace 'ships' by 'goods'. 27. (C); delete 'had'. 28. (D); The word-order in this sentence should be like this: He has a special room, into which he slips at odd times, for test tubes. 29. (B); replace 'than' by 'when'. 30. (C); write 'was' in place of 'were'. 31. (A); write 'The first ten pages' in place of "The ten first pages'. 32. (A); delete 'back'. 33. (C); replace 'without' by 'unless'. 34. (B); replace 'me a clerk' by 'a clerk to us'. 35. (B); use 'is' in place of 'are'. 36. (E); No error. 37. (C); use 'on' in place of 'at'. 38. (B); write 'cannot be allowed to degenerate any more'. 39. (A); write 'defence' instead of 'defender'. 40. (D); replace 'default' by 'fault'. 41. (A); use 'good' instead of 'sincerest most'. 42. (A); use 'us' in place of 'we'. 43. (B); use 'hard' in place of 'hardly'. 44. (D); write 'liking him' in place of 'but like him'. 45. (A); use 'me' in place of 'I'. 46. (C); use 'his' in place of 'their'. 47. (B); use the word 'Even' in the beginning of the sentence. 48. (A); write 'As he reckoned up' in place of 'On reckoning up'. 49. (D); delete 'which' and 'do'. 50. (B); This part of the sentence should be in the beginning. Rewrite the sentence like this: Against our advice he refused to admit that this year his profit was higher than that of the last year.

BRIEF INTERMISSION

Direction : *The following ten pairs of words have three letters in common. Fill in the blank spaces to make twenty different words, according to the definitions below :*

....tor	1	ter....
...tor.	2	.ter...
..tor..	3	..ter..
.tor...	4	...ter.
tor....	5	....ter
tor....	6	....ter
tor...	7	...ter.
..tor..	8	..ter..
...tor.	9	.ter...
....tor	10	ter....

Hints (Definitions)

1. a person who betrays a friend, is disloyal to a cause, his country, etc.
2. success (in war, a contest, game, etc.)
1. to frighten, to fill with fear
2. lasting for ever

3. led, guided, instructed, or coached
4. (space used for, money paid for) the storing of goods
5. infliction of severe bodily, or mental suffering
6. violent, rushing stream of liquid (especially water)
7. plural of story (a short narrative, tale)
8. obtain by violence, threats, etc.
9. give a false account of; twist out of the truth
10. a motor-plough

3. to the full extent, totally
4. perfect model; ornamental design
5. person, or thing that fights, especially a fast airraft
6. the largest planet of the solar system
7. earthenware; pots
8. spoke, described
9. adjective of uterus (womb)
10. insect, found chiefly in tropical areas, very destrutive to timber, textile, etc.

Left	Right
1. Tritor	1. terrify
2. Victory	2. eternal
3. Tutored	3. utterly
4. Storage	4. pattern
5. Torture	5. fighter
6. Torrent	6. Jupitor
7. Stormed	7. pottery
8. Extorts	8. uttered
9. Distort	9. uterine
10. Tractor	10. termite

0. PALINDROMES are words or sentences that read the same backwards and fowards; e.g.,

(a) DEED, DEIFIED, ERE, LEVEL, MADAM, NOON

(b) 'Was it a car, or a cat I saw ?'
'Yawn a more Roman way.'

PAIRS OF WORDS

There are, in English, some idioms and phrases that give quite a different meaning when the words forming those idioms and phrases are ycked together in the reverse order. As for example, *break out* and *outbreak*. The first one means 'appear, start suddenly' and the second one stands for 'breaking out'.

Loot at the following pairs of expressions:

1. back out (*withdraw*)—He promised to help and then *backed out*.

   outback (the more remote and sparsely populated areas)—Have you visited that *outback*.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

2. break off (*stop talking*)—He *broke off* in the middle of a sentence.
   off-break (*a type of spinner*)—He is an *off-break* bowler.
3. break out (*appear, start suddenly*)—Cholera has *broken out* in this locality.
   outbreak (*breaking out*)—The *outbreak* of cholera took everybody by surprise.
4. bring up (*rear, educate*)—Who *brought* this orphan *up*?
   upbring (*training and education during childhood*)—Do you know anything about his *upbringing*?
5. fall out (*happen, come to pass*)—It so *fell out* that I could not get there in time.
   outfall (*a plae where water falls, or flows out; outlet*)—There is waterlogging for want of *outfall*.
6. fight out (*advance, go forward*)—I must *fight* this case *out*.
   outfight (*fight better than*)—The champion *outfought* his opponent.
7. flow out (*send*)—Gold *flowed out* of the country.
   outflow (*flowing out*)—Look at her *outflow* of tears.
8. go out (*extinguish*)—The light has *gone out*.
   outgo (*that which goes out, or is paid out*)—The *outgo* on this project is very high.
9. go for (*go to fetch*)—Shall I *go for* a doctor?
   forgo (*to leave*)—He will *forgo* his claim.
10. hold up (*delay*)—They were *held up* by fog.
    uphold (*support, or approve*)—I cannot *uphold* such conduct.
11. keep up (*go forward at the same speed*)—He couldn't *keep up with* the class.
    upkeep (*keeping something in good order and repair*)—The *upkeep* of this large garden is more than I can afford.
12. look out (*be on the watch for*)—He is on the *look out* for a good job.
    outlook (*view on which one looks out*)—His *outlook* is quite different from that of yours.
13. pour out (*to let the liquid flow out*)—He *poured* coffee *out* of the saucepan into the jug.
    outpour (*pouring out*)—It is the *outpouring* of his inmost heart.
14. put in (*submit*)—*Put in* a claim for damages.
    input (*what is put in, or supplied*)—The *input* of electricity is meagre.
15. put out (*cause to be out of joint, dislocated*)—She fell off a horse and *put* her shoulder *out*.

output (*quantity of good, etc., produced*)—The *output* of this factory is not up to the mark.

16. run out (*go out*)—The tide is *running out*.
outrun (*run faster, or better than*)—His ambition *outran* his ability.

17. set up (*establish*)—Let us *set up* a new college here.
upset (*trouble*)—This news has *upset* me.

18. shoot off (*sever by*)—He had his arm *shot off*.
offshoot (*stem, or branch growing from a main stem*)—It is an *offshoot* of a plant. *Offshoot* of a wealthy family.

19. shot up (*increased*)—The price of gold has *shot up*.
upshot (*outcome*)—What will be the *upshot* of it all ?

20. stay out (*remain outdoors*)—Tell the children they mustn't *stay out* after dark.
outstay (*stay longer than*)—A few guests *outstayed* after the dinner.

21. turn over (*cause to fall over*)—The car *turned* right *over*.
overturn (*cause to turn over, upset*)—He *overturned* the boat.

22. vote out (*stripped of power*)—He was *voted out* of power.
outvote (*win, obtain more votes than*)—He is firmly entrenched. You cannot *outvote* him.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Idioms and Phrases

A *phrase*, says Donald W Emry, is a group of words which does not contain a subject and a finite verb in combination and which functions within a large unit as a substantive, as a modifier or an independent unit. It is, in fact, a succession of words whose meaning must be learnt as a whole, e.g., *give way, in order to, in the garden*. But *idiom* may be defined as expression peculiar to a language. It implies peculiar uses of a particular word, and also particular phrases or forms of expression which, from long usage, have become stereotyped in English. As for example, *fall in, fall out, break off, break up*.

There are (a) *Idiomatic Pairs of Nouns*, such as, *flesh and blood*: human nature; *loaves and fishes*: worldly benefits; (b) *Idiomatic Pairs of Adjectives*, such as *null and void*, ineffective, invalid; *all and sundry*: everybody without distinction; (c) *Idiomatic Pairs of Adverbs*, such as; *few and far between*: very small in number; *out and out*: completely; (d) *Phrases composed of an Adjective and a Noun*, such as; *a laughing-stock*: an object of ridicule; *an unearthly hour*: the most inconvenient time; (e) *Idiomatic Verbal Expressions*, such as; *To be in petty pass*: to be in a difficulty: *to take a leaf out of another's book*: to take a hint from another's mode of action; (f) *Phrasal-Prepositional Verbs*, such as, *boil down to*: have as its essence; *go back on*: fail to keep a promise. And so on and so forth.

(1)

to add fuel to the flames	:	to excite the fury
to back the wrong horse	:	to help the wrong person
to bark at the moon	:	to rail uselessly at men in high places
to bark up the wrong tree	:	to direct one's attack, criticism or efforts in the wrong quarter
to bask in the sunshine of	:	to enjoy the favour or good graces of
to bear a charmed life	:	to be almost incredibly fortunate, to be invulnerable
to bear the brunt of	:	to endure the shock of
to bear the palm	:	to win

to beat about the bush	:	to approach a matter in a roundabout way
to beg the question	:	assume the truth of the matter that is in question
to beggar description	:	to be so extraordinary as to make description impossible
to bell the cat	:	to take great personal risk
to be in the driving seat	:	in control
to be taken for a ride	:	to be cheated or deceived
to be tied to somebody's apron string	:	too long or too much under somebody's control
to be left out in the cold	:	be ignored or neglected
to bide one's time	:	wait for a favourable opportunity
to bite the dust	:	to suffer defeat or humiliation
to bite off more than one can chew	:	attempt too much
to blow hot and cold	:	to be inconsistent and unreliable
to blow off steam	:	to find an outlet, by action or speech, for pent-up energy and emotion
to blow one's own trumpet	:	to speak highly of oneself
to break new ground	:	to begin operations or a new course
to break the back of something	:	to finish the hardest or larger piece of work
to break the ice	:	to commence conversation where there has been an awkward silence
to break the news	:	to disclose information tactfully
to bring down the house	:	to call forth general and loud applause
to bring to the book	:	to punish; to call to account
to burn one's boats / bridges	:	to destroy all means of going back, so that one must go forward
to burn the candle at both ends	:	use up too much of energy; work very early and very late
to call a spade a spade	:	to speak the plain truth
to call one's shot	:	to state exactly what one intends to do
to call it a day	:	to stop work or an activity
to carry everything before one	:	be completely successful
to carry the day	:	to be victorious
to cast aspersions on somebody	:	slander him; say false things about him
to cast into the shade	:	to eclipse
to cast one's net wide	:	to spread one's efforts in all directions
to cast pearls before swine	:	to offer people things that they are incapable of appreciating

to catch a person napping	: to take a person unawares
to catch a Tartar	: to deal with too troublesome an opponent
to catch at a straw	: to avail oneself of even the slightest chance of rescue
to cause a flutter	: to cause excitement
to change colour	: to shift allegiance to
to chew the cud	: to reflect, to meditate
to clear the deck	: to get ready for action
to clip a person's wings	: to reduce his power or authority
to close in upon	: to approach and surround
to come a cropper	: to fail completely
to come full circle	: end at the starting point
to come of age	: to mature, to reach the age of twenty-one
to come off with flying colours	: to emerge from an affair splendidly and creditably
to come to the crunch	: a difficult moment when something important must be decided
to come to a head	: to reach a crisis
to come through / off with flying colours	: make a great success of something
to come to grips	: to master the difficulties in dealing with a situation
to create a scene	: to make an exhibition of excited feelings
to cross swords	: to enter into a dispute or an argument
to cry from the house-tops	: to announce to one and all
to cry over spilt milk	: to repent for the wrong that cannot be corrected
to cudgel one's brain	: force oneself to think hard
to curry favour,	: to try to win attention by insincere means
to cut a figure	: to make a conspicuous appearance
to cut a sorry figure	: to create poor impression
to cut no ice	: to make no impression
to cut someone down to size	: to show someone to be less good and important than they think they are
to cut the Gordian knot	: to solve a difficult problem
to dance attendance on / upon a person	: to be constantly in his company, paying attention to his every wish and whim

to die in harness	:	to die while actively engaged in one's regular work
to dole out	:	to distribute at intervals in small quantities with a suggestion of charity
to do something off one's own	:	do it without help
to draw a blank	:	get nothing (after hoping to win or find something)
to drive a hard bargain	:	try to force an agreement favourable to oneself
to drive a nail into somebody's coffin	:	do something that will bring his death or ruin nearer
to drive at	:	to employ, to hint
to drive mad	:	to cause one to become mad
to drive one to the wall	:	to force one to a helpless or desperate position
to eat humble pie	:	to submit meekly and apologetically to blame or humiliation
to egg on	:	to urge on, to incite
to end in fiasco	:	to end in confusion
to fall back upon	:	to depend upon
to fall flat	:	to fail to meet with any response
to fall in with	:	to agree with
to fall to pieces	:	to break up completely
to feather one's nest	:	to take advantage of one's opportunities, to benefit oneself
to fight with one's back to the wall	:	to make a final, desperate struggle
to fill/fit the bill	:	do all that is required or expected
to find a snug berth	:	an easy or pleasant job
to flog a dead horse	:	to pursue an argument when the matter is settled
to foot the bill	:	to pay the bill
to force an issue	:	to compel a decision to be reached
to gatecrash	:	to attend a party without having been invited
to get down to brass tacks	:	to come to the really important facts or business
to get in the way	:	to obstruct
to get into hot water	:	to get into difficulties
to get into somebody's good graces	:	to try and make a favourable impression on somebody

to get no change out of somebody	:	get no help, information, or advantage from
to get off somebody's back	:	stop being a burden or hindrance
to get on one's nerves	:	to make one irritated
to get the hang of	:	to understand a situation, scheme, story, etc.
to get the jitters	:	to become nervous
to get the sack	:	to be dismissed from employment
to get/grow too big for one's boots	:	become conceited
to get wind of	:	to catch the scent or hear rumours of
to gird up one's loins	:	to brace oneself up for vigorous action
to give a free hand to	:	to allow a person complete liberty
to give a good account of oneself	:	to show worth, to impress favourably
to give a person a piece of one's mind	:	to scold; to tell him in strong terms one's unfavourable opinion of his conduct or character
to give a person rope	:	to allow him freedom to act independently and take initiative
to give a person the sack	:	to dismiss a person from employment
to give a wide berth to	:	to keep one at a distance from, to avoid
to give no quarter to	:	to attack relentlessly, to offer no shelter
to give somebody a blank cheque	:	full power to act as he thinks best
to give the slip	:	to escape and remain uncaptured
to give vent to	:	to express openly
to gloss over	:	to try to minimise by ignoring or excusing
to go abegging	:	to go in vain
to go against the grain	:	against human nature
to go at it hammer and tongs	:	to engage in an undertaking or quarrel with energy
to go back on	:	to betray, to desert
to go berserk	:	to go uncontrollably wild
to go down the drain	:	to be wasted
to go off the air	:	stop broadcasting
to go pit-a-pat	:	(applied to one's heart) to beat irregularly through fear
to go places	:	to be increasingly successful

to go through fire and water	:	to pass through difficulties
to go through thick and thin	:	to go through both good and bad times
to go to dogs	:	to be ruined
to go to rack and ruin	:	implies wreckage, decay and destruction
to go to the winds	:	to be utterly lost
to go wool gathering	:	to become absent-minded
to hang by a thread	:	to be in an extremely delicate condition
to hang fire	:	to hesitate; to delay
to harp on the same string	:	to dwell persistently on one subject
to have an affair with somebody	:	have an emotional (and sexual) relationship with somebody to whom one is not married
to have a bash at something	:	attempt it
to have a bowing / nodding acquaintance with	:	have some acquaintance with a person or a subject
to have a cold feet	:	feel afraid or reluctant to do something involving risk
to have a field day	:	to get the greatest possible advantage
to have one's name bandied about	:	be talked about in an unfavourable way
to have somebody at one's beck and call	:	have somebody always waiting to obey one's order
to have the ball at one's feet	:	make a good chance of attaining success
to have one's back to the wall	:	being in a difficult position; forced to defend oneself
to have a card up one's sleeve	:	have a secret plan in reserve
to have a chip on one's shoulder	:	have a defiant air, ready to accept a challenge
to hold / keep one's card close to one's chest	:	be secretive
to have one's cake and eat it	:	preserve something unchanged and allow it to change (that is, an impossibility)
to have a bee in one's bonnet	:	be obsessed by an idea
to hit below the belt	:	give an unfair blow
to hit the nail on the head	:	to guess right; to come to the right conclusion
to hit the headlines	:	get into the news
to hit the jackpot	:	to have a big success
to hold a man to ransom	:	keep him as captive and ask for ransom
to hold no brief for	:	not to support or be in favour of

to hold all the cards : to have a very strong advantage
to hold out the olive branch : to make a gesture of peace
to hold water : to be sound
to husband one's resources : to use economically all the capital one has
to join forces with : to become associated with
to join issue with : to take an opposite position in a dispute
to jump to a conclusion : to assume rashly and without justification on a conclusion
to keep abreast of : to keep oneself up-to-date
to keep a straight face : to remain intentionally inexpressive or serious
to keep at bay : to keep in check
to keep body and soul together : to manage a bare existence
to keep late hours : to be late in retiring to bed at night
to keep one's powder dry : to be prepared for action
to keep the ball rolling : to continue or maintain some progress
to keep the pot boiling : to secure means to live
to keep the wolf from the door : to avoid starvation or acute poverty
to keep track of : to keep oneself informed
to keep up appearances : to maintain outward show
to kick against the pricks : to struggle against what cannot be prevented
to kick up a row : to create a disturbance
to knit one's eyebrows : to frown
to knock the bottom out of : to make a scheme, arrangement etc. ineffective; to make a theory invalid
to know where the shoe pinches : to know the circumstance that is the cause of trouble
to lay down one's arms : to surrender one's weapons as a conquered person
to lead a cat-and-dog life : to quarrel constantly
to let oneself go : to allow full freedom to emotion
to lick someone's boots : humble oneself to gain someone's favour
to lick the dust : to yield to abject subjection
to lick the ground : to be abjectly subservient
to lie in ambush : to conceal oneself for the purpose of attacking
to lie in state : said of a corpse of a royal or distinguished person that is displayed to the general public

to live fast : to lead a life of dissipation
to live on slops : to live on bare minimum
to look askance at somebody / something : look at with suspicion
to look black at somebody : look at him angrily
to look blank : to seem puzzled or distressed
to look off colours : seem unwell, in low spirit
to look through coloured spectacles : to see things not as they are
to look sharp : to hurry, to act promptly
to lose one's bearings : to get lost, to be bewildered
to make a clean breast of : to confess the whole truth
to make a clean sweep of : to get rid of or dispose of everything concerned
to make a face : to show a strong distaste by a contortion of the features
to make a hash of : to make a mess of, to bungle
to make a mess of : to muddle
to make a mountain out of a molehill : to exaggerate a small matter
to make amends for : to compensate for some injustice or wrong
to make an ass of oneself : behave stupidly so that one is ridiculed
to make both ends meet : to live within one's income
to make capital out of : to take advantage of
to make good : to repair or replace what has been destroyed or injured or is deficient
to make much ado about nothing : to exaggerate
to make no scruples : to have no hesitation
to make one's blood boil : to make one furiously angry
to make one's blood creep : to fill one with terror
to make one's blood run / cold : to frighten
to make one's brain reel : to stagger mentally
to make one's flesh creep : to give one a feeling of fear and horror
to make the best of a bad bargain : to try to get any good out of unfortunate circumstances
to meet half-way : to compromise
to mince matters : not to talk plainly and frankly
to miss the bus : to be late for, to lose the last chance when it comes

to muster strong	:	to assemble in large numbers
to nip in the bud	:	to destroy before it develops
to out-herod Herod	:	to exceed in wickedness even the most notoriously wicked character
to pat someone on the back	:	to show him appreciation
to pay a man back in the same / his own coin	:	treat him as he has treated you
to pay lip service	:	to pretend to be faithful
to pin faith to	:	to rely on
to pin one's faith on	:	to put complete belief in
to play a person false	:	to deceive
to play fast and loose with	:	to say one thing and do another
to play into the hands of another	:	to act in such a way as to benefit another
to play one's trump card	:	to make one's most powerful or effective move
to play second fiddle	:	to play subordinate role
to pay through the nose	:	to pay an excessive price
to play to the gallery	:	to aim at impressing the vulgar crowd
to play truant	:	to absent oneself from school
to pull one's weight	:	to do one's share in contributing to a result
to put a spoke in one's wheels	:	to stand in the execution of one's design
to put on airs	:	behave in an unnatural way in the hope of impressing people
to put / turn something to good account	:	use money, abilities, talent etc. profitably
to put one's cards on the table	:	make one's plan, intentions, etc. known
to put someone through his paces	:	to make someone do something in order to show his abilities
to put the cart before the horse	:	to reverse the natural or proper order
to rest on one's oars	:	to stop work for a while and rest
to ride roughshod over	:	to treat without any consideration of hurting a person's feelings
to ring a bell	:	recall to memory something half-forgotten
to ring down the curtain	:	to bring an affair to an end
to rise from the ranks	:	to be a self-made man
to rule the roost	:	to have full power and authority over others
to run counter to	:	to be opposed to

to run amuck	: to go mad, run about wildly and act violently
to scotch the rumour	: to destroy the cause of evil
to see no farther than one's nose	: to be lacking in mental vision
to see something in its true colours	: see a thing as it really is
to sell like hot cakes	: very fast
to separate the sheep from the goats	: to divide the good or useful people from the bad or useless
to shed crocodile tears	: shed insincere tears
to shilly-shally	: to waver
to show a clean pair of heels	: escape from pursuit
to show one's mettle	: to show one's spirit
to sit on the fence	: to hesitate between what to do and what not to do
to snap one's fingers at	: to defy
to speak volumes	: to reveal a great deal in a few words
to spill the beans	: to give away information, specially something not intended to be made known
to spin a yarn	: to make up a story
to split hairs	: to make subtle and useless distinction
to stand in good stead	: to prove useful
to stand in the way	: to obstruct
to stand one's ground	: to refuse to change one's statement or opinion
to start from scratch	: to start again from the beginning
to start with a clean slate	: to begin anew
to steal a march on	: to surpass
to steer clear of	: to avoid, to evade
to stew in one's own juice	: to suffer the results of difficulties one has got into
to stick in one's throat	: to be extremely offensive to one
to stick to one's colours	: refuse to change one's opinion or party
to stick to one's guns	: to remain faithful to the cause
to stir up a hornet's nest	: to excite the adverse criticism of many
to stoop to conquer	: to humiliate oneself to achieve success in the end
to strike a bargain	: to reach a final compromise
to sweep something under the carpet	: hide/ignore something in order to delay action

to take a back seat	:	to occupy a subordinate position
to take a man at his word	:	to believe a man's word
to take heart	:	to cheer oneself up
to take something amiss	:	take offence at it
to take something with a pinch of salt	:	feel some doubt whether it's altogether true
to take the bitter with the sweet	:	accept misfortune as well as good fortune
to take the bread out of one's mouth	:	to deprive one of the means of livelihood
to take the rough with the smooth	:	to accept bad things as well as good things without complaining
to take time by the forelock	:	to act promptly
to take to heart	:	to be deeply affected
to take up the cudgels	:	to defend tenaciously
to talk shop	:	to discuss one's business or professional affairs on ordinary social occasions
to tell things or persons apart	:	distinguish one from the other
to tell upon	:	to affect
to throw down the gauntlet	:	to throw a challenge
to thrust down a person's throat	:	to force on a person's attention an opinion, a fact or an act that is unwelcome
to tilt at wind mills	:	to waste energy in combating imaginary evils
to tread stately measure	:	to walk majestically
to turn a blind eye to something	:	to pretend not to see it
to turn one's coat	:	to change loyalty
to turn over a new leaf	:	to change for the better
to turn the corner	:	to overcome the critical stage in a difficulty or trouble
to turn tail	:	to withdraw cowardly
to welcome somebody with open arms	:	warmly, with enthusiasm
to win laurels	:	to acquire distinction or glory
to work against the clock	:	work fast to finish before a certain time
to work around the clock	:	work all day and night
to worship the rising sun	:	to honour the man who is rising in power
to write off	:	to reduce or wipe out a debt

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

(2)

ABC	: Basic facts of a subject, to be learnt first
a beast of burden	: one who has to carry a lot of burden
a black sheep	: a good-for-nothing person
a bolt from the blue	: something unexpected and unpleasant
a bone of contention	: something that causes contention
a burning question	: a live issue
a close call	: almost an accident, disaster or failure
a close shave	: a narrow escape from collision or accident
a cold-blooded murder	: pitiless murder
airs and graces	: foolish, exaggerated ways of behaving
a fair-weather friend	: a person who ceases to be a friend when one is in trouble
apple of discord	: cause of quarrel
a shot in the dark	: a guess unsupported by arguments
a sleeping partner	: a silent partner
a slow coach	: a person who thinks, moves or acts slowly
at one's wit's end	: not knowing what to do or say
at sixes and sevens	: confused and disordered
at snail's pace	: very slow speed or rate of activity
a turncoat	: one who deserts one party to join another for safety and advantage
a wet blanket	: person who by being gloomy himself prevents others from enjoying themselves
a wild goose chase	: a search, expedition etc.
a white elephant	: something which is costly but useless and unwanted
at full blast	: with maximum activity
at the eleventh hour	: at the latest possible time
be-all and end-all	: the most important
bird's eye view	: wide view seen from high up, with full details
blow-by-blow account (of the match or meeting)	: minutely detailed account
by fits and starts	: in short periods, not regularly
by hook or by crook	: by one means or another
by leaps and bounds	: very rapidly

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

cakes and ale	: merry-making
cheek by jowl (with)	: very close together; closely connected
chip of the old block	: son who is very like his father
few and far between	: few and widely scattered or separated
flesh and blood	: one's relation
for want of	: lack
from pillar to post	: from one resource to another
in the long run	: in the end
in the teeth of	: against the strength of
on pins and needles	: in a state of anxious expectation
on the cards	: likely or possible
on the horns of a dilemma	: having to choose between two unpleasant things or courses
the apple of one's eye	: somebody or something dear to one
storm in a tea cup	: much excitement over something trivial
with no holds barred	: not keeping to any rules or limits

(3)

back out (fail to keep a promise; प्रतिज्ञा से मुकर जाना)—He promised to help me but soon *backed out*.

back up (support; समर्थन करना)—You must *back up* my claim to this property.

bear away (win; जीतना)—Who *bore away* the first prize in that competition?

bear down (crush by force; नाश करना)—During her lifetime Mrs Indira Gandhi *bore down* all opposition.

bear out (confirm, सत्यापित होना)—His confession *bears out* the truth of my statement.

bear with (tolerate, endure; सहना)—I am no saint. Please *bear with* me.

blow out (extinguish; फूँककर बुझाना)—Let me *blow out* this candle.

blow over (pass away; गुजर जाना)—The storm of misfortune will soon *blow over*.

blow up (explode; विस्फोट करना)—They are trying to *blow up* this bridge.

break away (टूटना)—They do not want to *break away* from the tradition of the past.

break down (stop because of mechanical defect; चलते-चलते रुक जाना)—The Patna-bound bus *broke down* at Fatwa.

break into (जबरदस्ती घुसना)—A thief has *broken into* that house.

break off (to stop abruptly; अचानक समाप्त होना)—The talks between the Punjab and Harayana chief ministers have *broken off*.

break out (spread; फैलना)—Cholera has *broken out* in Ranchi.

break up (end, disperse; भंग होना)—Our college *breaks up* at 5 pm.

break with (quarrel; संबंध तोड़ना)—Why did you *break with* your neighbour?

bring about (introduce; परिवर्तन लाना)—Our Prime Minister wants to *bring about* changes in our education policy.

bring forth (produce; पैदा करना)—This tree *brings forth* sweet fruits.

bring out (publish; प्रकाशित करना)—He has *brought out* a new book of essays.

bring round (cause to regain consciousness; होश में लाना)—Dr Raj *brought* the patient *round*.

bring under (suppress; कुचलना)—Macbeth *brought under* the rebellion of the Thane of Cowder.

bring up (nourish; लालन-पालन करना)—Who *brought* this child *up*?

call at (visit; किसी के घर पर मुलाकात करना)—I *called at* Sanjeev's place this morning.

call for (demand or require; अपेक्षा करना)—The present situation *calls for* a drastic change in our policy.

call in (बुलाना)—Let us *call in* Dr Verma.

call on (किसी के घर जाकर भेंट करना)—I shall *call on* my ailing friend this evening.

call off (postpone; समाप्त होना)—The teachers have *called off* their strike.

call over (read out; पुकारना)—My class teacher *called over* the names of students.

call up (recollect; याद करना)—I cannot *call up* memories of my childhood.

call upon (invoke; किसी से किसी कार्य की अपेक्षा करना)—The Principal *called upon* the students to serve the country.

carry away (elope with; अपहरण करना)—Prithivi Raj *carried away* Sanyogita.

carry on (continue; जारी रखना)—He *carried on* his work despite his ill health.

carry out (execute; आदेश पालन करना, पूरा करना)—You must *carry out* my orders.

come across (meet; मिलना)—I *came across* my old friend in the Sonepur fair.

come by (get; प्राप्त करना)—How did you *come by* such a beautiful diamond?

come down (decrease; मूल्य में ह्रास होना)—The price of gold has *come down*.

come out (appear; उगना)—The sun has not yet *come out*.

come round (regain consciousness; होश में आना)—He fainted but soon *came round*.

come upon (meet with; अचानक सामने आ जाना)—I *came upon* a wild bear in this forest.

cut down (curtail; कटौती करना)—He had to *cut down* his expenses due to price-rise.

cut off (to shut off, to die; बन्द होना, मर जाना)—The telephone operator *cut me off*. How sad! He was *cut off* when he was still very young. Swami Vivekanand was *cut off* in the prime of life.

do away with (abolish, get rid of; उन्मूलन करना)—Let us *do away with* these social evils.

do up (बाँधना)—Let me *do* my shoes *up*.

draw back (retreat; पीछे हटना)—He will not *draw back* whatever the difficulties.

fall back (retreat; पीछे हट जाना)—The advancing Chinese army had to *fall back*.

fall back upon (depend upon; निर्भर करना)—My neighbour has nothing to *fall back upon*.

fall in (go on parade; पंक्तिबद्ध होना)—The captain asked the soldiers to *fall in*.

fall in with (concur; सहमत होना)—I did not *fall in with* his views.

fall on (attack; टूट पड़ना)—He *fell on* the pick-pocket and overpowered him.

fall out (quarrel; झगड़ पड़ना)—The two friends *fell out* this afternoon.

fall through (come to nothing; असफल होना)—The scheme *fell through* for want of money.

fall upon (attack; हमला करना)—The vultures *fell upon* the dead body.

get along (be friendly; ठीक से साथ चलना)—The two neighbours are *getting along* quite nicely.

get at (reach; समझना)—It is not easy to *get at* the truth.

get away (leave; भाग जाना)—I want to *get away* from this nasty place.

get back (return; लौटना)—You should *get back* by 5 pm.

get down (leave; उतरना)—He is too weak to *get down* the stairs.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

get on with (live together pleasantly; सहयोग करना)—He does not know how to *get on with* his neighbours.

get over (overcome; कठिनाई को जीतना)—He easily *got over* these difficulties.

give away (distribute; बाँटना)—Who *gave away* the prizes?

give out (emit; देना)—This flower *gives out* sweet smell.

go after (chase; पीछा करना)—The cat *went after* the rats.

go against (oppose; विरोध करना)—The party workers have *gone against* their leader.

go for (chase, टूट पड़ना)—My dog always *goes for* the strangers.

go into (examine; जाँचना)—Let us *go into* the causes of rise in crime.

go off (explode; फट पड़ना)—A powerful bomb has just *gone off*.

hold in (restrain; नियंत्रित करना)—The horse grew restive but he managed to *hold* it *in*.

hold off (remain at a distance; दूर होना)—The rain *held off* for three months.

hold on (stand firm; डटे रहना)—He *held on* despite attack from all sides.

hold out (offer; उम्मीद करना)—He *holds out* hopes of doing well in life.

hold up (stop; रोकना)—The traffic constable *held up* the traffic.

keep down (hold under control; दबाकर रखना)—Our government must *keep down* the price of grains.

keep on (continue; जारी रखना)—He *kept on* trying despite repeated failures.

keep to (adhere to; निभाना)—He *kept to* his word. *Keep to* the point.

keep up (maintain; बनाकर रखना)—He *kept up* his courage even in the face of difficulties.

look after (take care of; देखरेख करना)—There is none *to look after* this child.

look for (search; ढूँढ़ना, खोजना)—What is he *looking for*?

look up (consult; खोजना)—*Look up* the meaning of this word in your dictionary.

look upon (regard; मानना, समझना)—I *look upon* you as my younger brother.

make for (move towards; किसी चीज की ओर बढ़ना)—The ship *made for* the port.

make out (understand; पता लगाना)—Can you *make out* the meaning of this passage?

put down (subdue; दबाना)—It is not easy to *put down* a rebellion.

put out (extinguish; बुझाना)—Let me *put out* the light.

put up (stay; रहना)—Where is he *putting up* these days?

put up with (tolerate; सहन करना)—I cannot *put up with* this insult.

run after (pursue; पीछा करना)—Why do you *run after* money?

run down (become weak and exhausted; दुर्बल होना)—On account of overwork he is *run down*.

run over (crush; वाहन द्वारा कुचला जाना)—An old man was *run over* by a taxi.

run into (कर्ज में डूब जाना)—He has *run into* debt.

set off (start; यात्रा आरंभ करना)—He *set off* for Bombay this evening.

set in (begin; शुरू होना)—The winter season has *set in*.

set up (establish; स्थापित करना)—Who has *set up* this college?

take after (resemble; मिलता-जुलता होना)—A son *takes after* his father.

take down (note down; लिखना)—Let me *take down* your name and address.

take to (become addicted to; बुरी आदत पड़ जाना)—He has *taken to* drinking wine.

take up (occupy; ले लेना)—You have *taken up* too much of my valuable time.

turn against (become hostile to; विरोधी होना)—Why have you *turned against* me?

turn down (reject; अस्वीकार करना)—I *turned down* his request.

turn up (come; हाजिर होना)—About fifty candidates *turned up* for interview.

work out (solve; हल करना)—Can you *work out* this sum?

work up (excite; उत्तेजित करना)—Do not *work up* the mob.

Exercise

I. *Complete these phrases with the words given at the end:*

(a) Heart and .....
(b) Hue and .....
(c) Time and .....
(d) Tooth and .....
(e) Odds and .....
(f) Out and .....
(g) Far and .....
(h) Part and .....
(i) Rack and .....
(j) Bag and .....

nail, again, out, parcel, wide, soul, cry, ends, baggage, ruin.

II. *Complete these phrases by adding one word in the space left:*

(a) A dark .....
(b) Once in a blue .....
(c) ..... and fast
(d) In no .....
(e) Wear and .....
(f) ..... a hurry
(g) A man of .....
(h) To bring to .....
(i) ..... in hand
(j) ..... and sound

Answers:

I. (a) soul (b) cry (c) again (d) nail (e) ends (f) out (g) wide (h) parcel (i) ruin (j) baggage

II. (a) horse (b) moon (c) hard (d) time (e) tear (f) in (g) letters (h) light (i) Hand (j) Safe

Directions: *Each of the following idioms is followed by alternative meanings of which one is correct. Put a cross (×) in the answer-box ☐ against the correct meaning.*

(1)

Example I

To wrangle over an ass's shadow:

(A) to do something funny
(B) to quarrel over the possession of an ass
(C) to act in a foolish way
(D) to quarrel over trifles

Sample Answer

A	B	C	D
☐	☐	☐	☒

The correct meaning of this idiom is (D) that is , "to quarrel over trifles". You should, therefore, put a cross in the appropriate box (D).

Example II

Between the devil and the deep sea:

(A) in a dilemma
(B) a man who is drowning
(C) a deep-sea diver
(D) to be evil tempered

Sample Answer

A	B	C	D
☒	☐	☐	☐

The correct meaning of this idiom is (A) that is, "in a dilemma". You should, therefore, put a cross in the appropriate box (A).

Now solve the following in the same way.

1. To blaze a trail
   (A) to set on fire
   (B) to blow the trumpet
   (C) to be annoyingly noisy
   (D) to initiate work in a movement

2. To rise like a phoenix
   (A) to rise with a new life
   (B) to rise with anger
   (C) to get up with a start
   (D) to stand up with royal gait

3. To fish in troubled waters
   (A) to indulge in evil conspiracies
   (B) to aggravate the situation
   (C) to catch fish in disturbed waters
   (D) to benefit from other people's troubles

4. To flog a dead horse
   (A) to waste one's efforts
   (B) to beat a horse that is dead
   (C) to revive interest in an old subject
   (D) to act in a foolish way

5. To look a gift-horse in the mouth
   (A) to appreciate a gift or favour
   (B) to accept something ungratefully
   (C) to be indifferent
   (D) to acknowledge something greatly

6. To let the grass grow under one's feet
   (A) to miss the opportunity
   (B) to let things go on in their natural way
   (C) to waste no time in doing something
   (D) to idle away the time; to delay and linger

7. A snake in the grass
   (A) a treacherous or hidden enemy (B) not a reliable person
   (C) recognizable danger (D) unexpected happening

8. To wash one's dirty linen in public
   (A) to quarrel in the open (B) to do some ugly work in public
   (C) to discuss private matters before strangers
   (D) to wash one's clothes in the open

9. To smell a rat
   (A) to smell bad smell (B) to see hidden meaning
   (C) to suspect a trick or deceit (D) to misunderstand

10. To show the white feathers
    (A) to be fashionable (B) to show fear and cowardice
    (C) to capitulate (D) to possess the white feathers

11. To have one's head in the clouds
    (A) to be concealed from the view
    (B) to find oneself in a comfortable position
    (C) too concerned with one's own problems to be aware of the real situation
    (D) to fly deep in the clouds

12. To fly off the handle
    (A) to dislocate (B) to be indifferent
    (C) to lose one's temper, self-control (D) to be airborne

13. The Alpha and Omega
    (A) the beginning and the end (B) a Greek song
    (C) a Swiss watch (D) a beautiful object

14. To be a good Samaritan
    (A) a religious person
    (B) a genuinely charitable person
    (C) a citizen of Samaritana (D) to be law-abiding

15. To fight tooth and nail
(A) making effort to win (B) to fight cowardly
(C) to fight heroically & fiercely (D) to fight a losing battle

16. To meet one's Waterloo
(A) to die fighting (B) to die an ignoble death
(C) to meet one's final defeat (D) to meet a strong adversary

17. Give up the ghost
(A) to make false appearance (B) to die
(C) to leave useless pursuits
(D) to terrify others by acting in a suspicious manner

18. Will O' the wisp
(A) to act in a childish way (B) to have desires unbacked by efforts
(C) anything that eludes or deceives (D) yearning of the spirit

19. To be vacant in upper storey
(A) to be feeble-minded
(B) to indulge in meaningless imaginative flights
(C) to have the upper portion of the house empty
(D) not keeping anything in the upper storey of the house

20. To beat the air
(A) to act foolishly (B) to move vigorously
(C) to move sluggishly (D) to make efforts that are useless or vain

21. To make one's flesh creep
(A) to frighten or horrify (B) to throw out
(C) to behave in an unbecoming manner (D) to jeer at

22. To throw the gauntlet
(A) to stay criminal action (B) to give a challenge
(C) to be subjected to unpleasant criticism or attack
(D) to pay the charges

23. To give one a long rope
(A) to allow a man to continue his mistakes or crimes
(B) to speak ill of (C) to dismiss (D) to get into trouble

24. To be born with a silver spoon in one's mouth
(A) to be born of rich parents
(B) to depend on what is going to happen
(C) to come into being
(D) to thrust milk with a silver spoon

25. A cock-and-bull story
(A) a true story (B) a foolish and concocted story
(C) a story of animals (D) a story of mammals

26. To play ducks and drakes
(A) to play a game (B) to keep birds as pet
(C) to spend money foolishly (D) to act foolishly

27. Over head and ears
(A) completely (B) over one's body
(C) fruitless (D) beyond one's reach

28. A queer fish
(A) a new fish (B) a variety of fish
(C) a selfish person (D) a strange person

29. A dark horse
(A) a black horse (B) a wicked fellow
(C) a lucky horse (D) an unexpected winner

30. Hobson's choice
(A) excellent choice
(B) no choice at all because there is only one thing to take or do
(C) choice to live or die (D) the choice of a teacher

31. To have one's hand full
(A) to be excessively wicked (B) to be extremely busy
(C) to live within one's means (D) to conceal one's secret

32. To set the Thames on fire
(A) to do something remarkable (B) to try to do the impossible
(C) to burn something to ashes (D) to fling ironical remarks

33. To face the music
(A) to attend musical performance (B) to make merry
(C) to face the consequences (D) to attend a function

34. To read between the lines
(A) to read minutely (B) to waste time
(C) to look for meanings that are not actually expressed
(D) to see through one's design

35. To plough the sand
(A) to make the desert bloom (B) to work in vain
(C) to do a difficult work (D) to make the desert fertile

36. To give somebody the cold shoulder
(A) to snub him (B) to mollify him
(C) to humiliate him (D) to receive him warmly

37. To put somebody in his (proper) place
(A) to make him humble (B) to give him due respect
(C) to honour him (D) to turn him out

38. To rack one's brain (s)
(A) to make great mental efforts (B) to work very hard
(C) to rake up old memory (D) to ruminate

39. To go the whole hog
(A) to go through rubbish (B) to do something thoroughly
(C) to go the whole distance (D) to accept an offer gleefully

40. A laughing-stock
(A) a stock of laughter (B) a laughing matter
(C) an object of ridicule (D) a happy-go-lucky man

41. Once in a blue moon
(A) once in a month (B) bi-weekly
(C) on rare occasions (D) every now and then

42. To turn the tables
(A) to change completely the position of disadvantage
(B) to make the tables upside down
(C) to create chaos (D) to change the sorry scheme

43. To take the bull by the horns
(A) to make frontal attack (B) to face a difficult situation boldly
(C) to make a direct appeal (D) to accept the challenge

44. On the cards
(A) uncertain (B) probable
(C) an opportunity (D) to miss the bus

45. To turn over a new leaf
(A) to turn over the pages (B) to create new opportunities
(C) to change for the better (D) to start a work anew

46. To pay off old scores
(A) have one's revenge (B) to settle a dispute
(C) to repay the old loan (D) to equal an old score

47. To plough a lonely furrow
(A) to walk all alone
(B) to do something which no one has attempted
(C) to work without help or support
(D) to till the land all by oneself

48. To rub shoulders with
(A) to have troublesome itching
(B) to meet and mix with people
(C) to establish close contact with someone
(D) to kick against the prick

49. To take a leaf out of somebody's book
(A) to steal something valuable
(B) to conform to other's standard
(C) to follow the dictates of someone
(D) to take him as a model

50. To play truant
(A) to shirk duty, etc. (B) to play chess
(C) to befool (D) to follow the rules of the game

51. To hit the nail on the head
(A) to hit the nail hard
(B) to pick out the real point at issue
(C) to attack the enemy (D) to give a retort

52. To make both ends meet
(A) to move between two opposite poles
(B) to meet the needs of the body and the soul
(C) to live within one's income
(D) to do something impossible

53. To hold a brief for
(A) to carry somebody's brief case
(B) to stay on for a brief period
(C) to defend someone (D) to help someone

54. To draw the line somewhere
(A) to earmark a place for oneself (B) to set some limit
(C) to stop somewhere (D) to agree to a line of demarcation

55. To bury the hatchet
(A) to hide the arms (B) to bury the valuables
(C) to make peace (D) to start life anew

56. To fight to the bitter end
(A) to fight to the end despite difficulties of enemy position
(B) to die fighting (C) to carry on a contest
(D) to fight a losing battle

57. To carry the day
(A) be victorious (B) to continue the work
(C) to drag on (D) to work round the clock

58. To let the cat out of the bag
(A) to tell a secret without intending to do so
(B) to miss a golden opportunity
(C) to show compassion
(D) to give latitude

(2)

IV. Directions: *Four alternative meanings of the idiom are given below the sentence. Choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the idiom in italics. Put a cross (x) in the correct box.*

Example I

A hen-pecked husband *plays second fiddle to* his wife.

(A) fondles with
(B) humours
(C) plays a subordinate role
(D) pleases

Sample Answer

A	B	C	D
☐	☐	☒	☐

The correct answer to the italicized phrase is (C) that is, "plays a subordinate role."

Example II

He *stuck to his guns* even in the face of stiff opposition.

(A) held on against attack or argument
(B) clung to his weapon
(C) kept arguing
(D) followed the chosen path

Sample Answer

A	B	C	D
☒	☐	☐	☐

The correct meaning of the italicized phrase is "held on against attack or argument." The correct answer is, then, (A).

Now solve the following in the same way.

59. You cannot *throw dust into my eyes.*
(A) terrify me (B) cheat me
(C) hurt me (C) abuse me

60. His hard-earned money *has gone down the drain.*
(A) has been wasted (B) has been collected
(C) has been spent (D) has been reserved

61. Do not *get in the way of* others.
(A) create obstacle (B) walk side by side
(C) push and pull (D) heckle

62. He is *on the wrong side of fifty.*
(A) not yet fifty (B) over fifty years old
(C) a sinner (D) old and haggard

63. He works hard in order *to keep the pot boiling.*
(A) to keep the machine working
(B) to boil the pot
(C) to earn enough money to buy one's food
(D) to lead a comfortable life

64. It's *a wild-goose chase*.
(A) a hunting expedition (B) a vain pursuit
(C) a hectic campaign (D) a zoological survey

65. *He got hold of the wrong end of the stick.*
(A) misjudged a situation (B) fixed wrong priorities
(C) committed a blunder (D) felt uneasy

66. He is *hard-up* these days.
(A) is hard-pressed (B) is in trouble
(C) is short of money (D) is disciplined

67. He is *talking through his hat*.
(A) talking wildly or foolishly (B) talking sense
(C) working secretly (D) moving suspiciously

68. You will *get into hot water* if you commit the same mistake again.
(A) be in a fix (B) be in trouble
(C) suffer (D) incur loss

69. He has *turned the tables on his* enemy.
(A) created obstacle for (B) set the tables for
(C) hit (D) changed possible defeat into victory

70. Do not *ride rough shod over* the poor.
(A) hate (B) pamper
(C) give undue importance (D) treat harshly

71. There is *a snag* in it somewhere.
(A) an insect (B) flaw
(C) profit (D) enemy

72. *Give* the members of the winning team *a big hand*.
(A) denounce (B) applaud
(C) garlands (D) another chance

73. Take it *with a pinch of salt*.
(A) unconditionally (B) with spices
(C) with reservation (D) gleefully

74. Unless you *grease his palm*, he will not listen to you.
(A) flatter him (B) abuse him
(C) bri n (D) beat him

75. Nobod c ld *see through the design* of that wily fellow.
(A) know the secret (B) be aware of the trick
(C) know the antecedents (D) learn the aim

76. He *has designs on* that young girl.
(A) wants to rape (B) wants to cheat
(C) wants to be intimate with her (D) desires to be alone with

77. It is a *moot point* whether we should stop work or struggle on.
(A) a debatable point (B) a burning question
(C) a fixed belief (D) all too clear

78. He has *stolen a march on* his rival.
(A) gained an advantage (B) deceived
(C) stolen the goods of (D) pushed back

79. He is a *person after my own heart.*
(A) an object of envy (B) a happy-go-lucky fellow
(C) a reliable man (D) exactly to one's own liking

80. Don't *blow your own trumpet.*
(A) boast (B) produce music
(C) speak what one likes (D) raise a hue and cry

81. Beware of him; he is *a wolf in sheep's clothing.*
(A) a rich man (B) a dangerous man
(C) a politician (D) a criminal

82. Do not *look down your nose at him.*
(A) harass him (B) leave him in the lurch
(C) regard with displeasure or contempt
(D) put too much trust in him

83. He *played ducks and drakes with* the hard earned money of his father.
(A) squandered (B) saved
(C) utilised (D) spent

84. The meeting of the Big Three on Nuclear proliferation *ended in fiasco.*
(A) in confusion (B) in complete failure
(C) succeeded (D) in acrimonious debate

85. An irresponsible speaker has, at times, *to eat his words.*
(A) to withdraw his remarks (B) to stammer
(C) to think seriously (D) to rack his brain

86. A good athlete has to work hard; he cannot afford *to rest on his laurels.*
(A) depend on others (B) hark back to the past
(C) be contented with one's successes
(D) be overjoyed

87. Most of the present day politicians *have an axe to grind.*
(A) have personal end to serve (B) have weapons to protect
(C) open up old wounds (D) have obstacles to face

88. Never *hit* a man *below the belt.*
(A) hit at the weak spot (B) attack him unfairly
(C) attack him suddenly (D) criticise him openly

ANSWER SHEET

	A	B	C	D
1.				X
2.	X			
3.				X
4.	X			
5.		X		
6.				X
7.	X			
8.			X	
9.			X	
10.		X		
11.			X	
12.			X	
13.	X			
14.		X		
15.			X	
16.			X	
17.		X		
18.			X	
19.	X			
20.				X
21.	X			
22.		X		
23.	X			
24.	X			

	A	B	C	D
25.		X		
26.			X	
27.	X			
28.				X
29.				X
30.		X		
31.		X		
32.		X		
33.			X	
34.			X	
35.		X		
36.	X			
37.	X			
38.	X			
39.			X	
40.			X	
41.			X	
42.				X
43.		X		
44.		X		
45.			X	
46.		X		
47.			X	
48.		X		

	A	B	C	D
49.	X			
50.	X	X		
51.		X		
52.		X	X	
53.		X		
54.		X	X	
55.				
56.	X			
57.	X			
58.	X			
59.		X		
60.	X			
61.	X			
62.		X		
63.			X	
64.		X		
65.	X			
66.			X	
67.	X			
68.		X		

	A	B	C	D
69.				X
70.				X
71.		X		
72.		X		
73.			X	
74.			X	
75.		X		
76.	X			
77.	X			
78.	X			
79.				X
80.	X			
81.		X		
82.			X	
83.	X			
84.		X		
85.	X			
86.			X	
87.	X			
88.		X		

SOME COMMONLY USED WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

(1)

Ad-man : a composer of advertisement

A fibber : a liar

Blue-eyed boy : (derogatory) someone's favourite (male) person

Chatter-box : a person who talks a lot, especially about things that are unimportant

Copycat	:	(derogatory) person who always imitates others
Doubting Thomas	:	a person who tends to doubt and does not easily believe things
Don Juan	:	lady-killer
Killjoy	:	a person who throws gloom over those who are enjoying themselves
Mr Know all	:	a person who knows or claims to know everything
Lame duck	:	person or business that is helpless or ineffective
Lilliputian	:	very small (the native of Lilliput, the country described in Swift's *Gulliver's Travels*)
Peeping Tom	:	(derogatory) a person who secretly looks at others who think they are not being watched, especially when they are undressing
Prince Charming	:	a man who as a lover fulfils the dreams of a young girl
Small fry	:	young or insignificant creatures; persons of no importance
Stormy petrel	:	(fig.) person whose coming causes social or industrial unrest
Tiny tot	:	a very small child
Top brass	:	people in positions of high rank
Top dog	:	persons in the highest or most important position, especially after a struggle or effort
Top-notch	:	of highest rank or quality; being one of the best possible
Trigger-happy youth	:	too ready to use violent methods; too ready to shoot
Underdog	:	a weaker person, country, etc., that is always treated badly by others

(2)

Blue film	:	a film about sex, especially one that is shown at a private club; a pornographic film
Credibility gap	:	the difference between what someone, especially a politician, says and what he really means or does
Down-and-out	:	suffering from lack of money, work, etc., and unable to change the situation
Down-at-heel	:	(of a person) dressed in old worn-out clothes whose condition suggests lack of money

Down-to-earth	: practical and honest
Down under	: (colloq.) in the antipodes (the other side of the world): Australia or New Zealand
Eavesdropping	: Listening secretly to private conversation
The haves and the have-nots	: the rich and the poor (of people and countries)
Hooch tragedy	: (US slang) alcoholic (especially inferior) liquor causing death
Low-key speech	: controlled in style and quality
Low profile	: inconspicuous way of behaving, so as to avoid public attention
Male chauvinism	: unreasonable belief that the male sex is better than the other sex
Old Wives' Tales	: an ancient and not necessarily true belief
Oedipus complex	: an unconscious sexual desire by a young boy for his mother combined with hatred of his father
Open secret	: something supposed to be a secret but in fact known to everyone
Open Sesame	: an absolutely certain way to a desired end that would otherwise be beyond one's reach
Poetic Justice	: well-deserved punishment or reward
Saving grace	: the one good thing that makes something acceptable
Seamy side	: sordid; unpleasant
The Second Coming	: the future coming of Christ to Earth from heaven, expected by many Christians
Small Screen	: television
Shangri-La	: a distant, beautiful, imaginary place where everything is pleasant
Sour grapes	: the fact of pretending to dislike what one really desires, because it is unobtainable
The Fourth Estate	: newspapers and the people who write for them, especially considered with regard to their political influence
Third World	: the industrially less developed countries of the world considered as a group
A tidy sum	: a large sum

Treasure trove : money, gold, jewels, or other valuable objects found hidden usually in the ground, and claimed by no one

Women's lib : movement for the liberation of women from social and economic inequalities

(3)

Box-office success/hit : a financial success

Burgeoning population/
Galloping population : rapidly increasing population

Cliff-hanger : story or contest whose outcome is uncertain

Collision course : a course (of action) likely to end in collision

Counter-productive : tending to work against a desired aim; having an opposite effect from the one intended

Dicey situation : risky and uncertain situation

Hit list : a list of people or organisations against whom some bad action is planned

Inflationary trend : a trend of continuing rise in prices

Money scam : a clever and dishonest plan or course of action involving a huge amount

Off-beat clothes/ideas: unusual, not conventional clothes/ideas

Pep talk : short talk intended to encourage the listener especially to work harder or win

Personality cult : the officially encouraged practice of giving too great admiration, praise, love, etc., to a particular person, especially a political leader

Price-hike : Price-rise

Raw deal : a case of unfair or cruel treatment

Red alert : a condition of readiness to deal with a dangerous situation

Razzmatazz : noisy, showy activity intended to attract attention and admiration

Social milieu : social surroundings

Space odyssey : a long adventurous journey in space

Tall order : a request or piece of work that is unreasonably difficult to perform

Tall story : a story that is difficult to believe

Teething troubles : problems happening during the early stages of an activity or operation

Tip-off	:	warning or piece of secret information
Tittle-tattle	:	(usually derogatory) talk about other people's lives, activities, etc.
Tongue-tied	:	unable to speak freely
Tongue-twister	:	a word or phrase that is difficult to speak correctly or quickly
Toss-up	:	an even chance; an uncertainty
Touch-and-go	:	risky, of uncertain result
Track record	:	the degree to which someone or something has performed well or badly up to now
Trouble spot	:	a place where especially political trouble often happens
Trump card	:	a clear and unquestionable advantage that will help one to win
Utopian scheme	:	an idealistic scheme, one that can't be put into practice
Vested interests	:	an interest in which the holder has a strong personal commitment
Vital statistics	:	(mod. Colloq.) woman's measurements at bust, waist and hips
Wild cat scheme	:	(esp. in business & finance) reckless or risky

(4)

(a different) ball game	:	(a different) state of affairs; situation
Build bridges	:	to try to establish a connection or friendly relationship esp., between opposing groups or ideas
Buy something for a song	:	buy at a very low price
Countdown	:	an act of counting backwards in seconds to zero
To have a go at something	:	make an attempt
To have plenty of go	:	be full of energy, enthusiasm
Horse-trading	:	the process by which two sides try to reach agreement with each other; e.g. Each side got what it wanted by clever political *horse-trading*.
To be/get into hot water/ To be in the soup	:	to be in trouble
Not care a hang	:	not care at all

Flair for something	:	natural ability to do something well
Razor's edge	:	a difficult or dangerous position between two opposite states
Raring to go	:	eager to start
The moment of truth	:	the moment when something very important will happen, on which a lot depends
The point of no return	:	point at which one becomes committed to an action or a decision that cannot be reversed
To bat on a sticky wicket	:	(fig.) in a situation that is difficult to deal with
Stick-in-the-mud	:	(derogatory) a person who will not change or accept new things
(within) striking distance	:	very close to
Trick of the trade	:	a quick or clever way to do something or get a desired result
When the crunch comes	:	when the decisive moment comes
Witch-hunt	:	(mod. colloq. use) searching out and persecution (e.g., of persons said to be disloyal or untrustworthy)

Foreign Words and Phrases

'Language', says RW Emerson, *'is a city, to the building of which every human being brought a stone'*. How true of English! It has words gathered from all ages, all lands and all climes. We have *tomato* from Mexico, *maize* from the West Indies, *coffee* from Turkey, *tea* from China, *bamboo* from Malaya, *umbrella* from Italy, and *pyjama* from India. From the French have come *elite, etiquette, garage* and *chauffeur;* from the Spanish, *cargo, cask, armada, cannibal, mosquito* and *potato*; from Portuguese, *molasses* and *coconut*; from the Germans, *strafe* and *blitz*; from the Africans, *apartheid*; from the Russians, *sputnik*; and from the Americans have come, *tornado, rugged, cockroach, loafer, package deal* and *gimmick*. And so *ad infinitum*!

The following is a list of some of the foreign words and phrases commonly used in English:

[Lat. = Latin; Fr. = French; Sp. = Spanish; Gr. = Greek; It. = Italian; US = American; Ger. = German; Norw. = Norwegian]

ab absurdo (Lat.)	:	from absurdity
ab imo pectore (Lat.)	:	from the bottom of the heart
ab initio (Lat.)	:	from the beginning
ab origine (Lat.)	:	from the origin
addendum (Lat.)	:	an appendix; a thing or things added
ad arbitrium (Lat.)	:	at will
ad extremum (Lat.)	:	to the extreme
ad hoc (Lat.)	:	for this purpose without consideration of wider application
ad infinitum (Lat.)	:	to infinity; without limit; for ever
ad interim (Lat.)	:	for the time being
ad libitum (Lat.)	:	at pleasure; as much as you like

ad nauseam (Lat.)	: to the point of disgust; to a sickening or disgusting degree
ad valorem (Lat.)	: in proportion to the estimated value of the goods (of taxes)
ad verbum (Lat.)	: to a word, verbally
affaire d'amour (Fr.)	: a love affair
affaire d'honneur (Fr.)	: a matter of honour
agent provocateur (Fr.)	: a secret agent who, pretending sympathy with a cause, betrays it
aide-de-camp (Fr.)	: a subordinate staff officer personally assisting a field-commander etc.
aide-memoire (Fr.)	: a reminder; a memorandum
a la carte (Fr.)	: according to the menu, a selected meal
a la mode (Fr.)	: in the manner of; in the fashion
al fresco (It.)	: in the open air; outdoor
alias (Lat.)	: otherwise; applied to a second name bestowed upon himself by a person
alibi (Lat.)	: elsewhere; the legal defence that a person was *elsewhere* when the crime was committed
allegro (It.)	: lively, sprightly; a musical direction
Alma Mater (Lat.)	: Gracious mother; a term of respect used by students for their old university or college
alpha and omega (Lat.)	: from beginning to end
Apropos (Fr.)	: at an opportune time; with regard to
alter ego (Lat.)	: one's other self, very intimate friends
alter idem (Lat.)	: another exactly similar; second self
altum silentium (Lat.)	: profound silence
amor vincit omnia (Lat.)	: Love conquers all (difficulties).
amour propre (Fr.)	: self-love; vanity
annus mirabilis (Lat.)	: a year of wonders; a year in which great events take place
apologia (Gr.)	: a written justification of one's conduct and actions
a posteriori (Lat.)	: reasoning based on observed facts
a priori (Lat.)	: from cause to effect; deductive
arbitrium (Lat.)	: power of decision
avant garde (Fr.)	: vanguard of an army; radical leader of any movement
beau monde (Fr.)	: the fashionable world

bella donna (It.) : a pretty woman
belles-lettres (Fr.) : literary studies and writings
bete noire (Fr.) : a special object of dislike
blitz (Ger.) : violent aerial attack
blitzkrieg (Ger.) : lightning war; a swift, sudden attack
bona fide (Lat.) : in good faith, without fraud
bonanza (US) : Gold mine, an oil well, that is prospering greatly (bringing good luck and prosperity)
bon mot (Fr.) : a witticism
bon ton (Fr.) : the height of fashion
Bon voyage! (Fr.) : Pleasant journey to you! (wish)
bourgeoisie (Fr.) : the middle classes
cadre (Fr.) : a frame, scheme; a list of officers
canard (Fr.) : a rumour; a hoax
cap-a-pie (Fr.) : from head to foot
carte blanche (Fr.) : full powers; a free hand
chauffeur (Fr.) : professional driver of motor car
charge d' affaires (Fr.) : a subordinate diplomat
communique (Fr.) : official note or intimation
commune bonum (Lat.) : the common, general good
corrigendum (Lat.) : corrections in a book
coup d'etat (Fr.) : sudden overthrow of government unconstitutionally
coup de grace (Fr.) : a finishing stroke; a death-blow
coup de main (Fr.) : a bold attempt
crescendo (It.) : progress towards a climax
cuisine (Fr.) : the kind of cooking produced
debut (Fr.) : first appearance in the society or on stage as performer
de facto (Lat.) : in fact, in reality
de jure (Lat.) : in law; rightful; by legal right
denouement (US) : catastrophe, final solution, conclusion in a play, novel, etc.
de novo (Lat.) : again; anew, afresh
de profundis (Lat.) : out of the depths of sorrow and despair
desideratum (Lat.) : something wanting and required or desired
detente (Fr.) : relaxation of strained relations between states
detenu (Lat.) : prisoner
detour (Fr.) : a way round, not the direct one

dictum (Lat.) : judgement; saying
double entendre (Fr.) : double meaning
dramatis personae (Lat.) : characters in a drama
dulce domum (Lat.) : Home, sweet home!
elan (Fr.) : dash; spirit
El Dorado (Sp.) : the golden land of one's dreams; the imaginary golden land
elite (Fr.) : the pick; the best
emeritus (Lat.) : from merit
en bloc (Fr.) : in a lump; taken all together
en famille (Fr.) : as one of the family; with one's family
enfant terrible (Fr.) : a precocious child; anyone who causes disturbance
en fete (Fr.) : in festivity
en masse (Fr.) : in a body
ennui (Fr.) : boredom
en rapport (Fr.) : in sympathy with
en route (Fr.) : on the way
en suite (Fr.) : in company; in succession
entente (Fr.) : friendly understanding between states
entourage (Fr.) : surroundings; also applied to one's subordinates
entrepreneur (Fr.) : a contractor; an organizer
esprit de corps (Fr.) : spirit of comradeship
et al (Lat.) : and other people
et tu Brute ! (Lat.) : You too, Brutus!
Eureka ! (Gr.) : I have found it!
exempli gratia (Lat.) : for example; for instance
ex gratia (Lat.) : as an act of grace
ex officio (Lat.) : by virtue of one's office
ex parte (Lat.) : from one side; from a partisan
ex tempore (Lat.) : without preparation
facsimile (Lat.) : a perfect copy
factotum (Lat.) : a man of all work; one who does all
fait accompli (Fr.) : a thing done without reference to interested parties
faux pas (Fr.) : a false step; a social blunder
genre (Fr.) : kind, style
gratis (Lat.) : free of charge

habeas corpus (Lat.) : writ of the court requiring arrested person to be bodily brought before it to investigate the legality of his detention

homo homini lupus (Lat.) : Man is a wolf to man

homo sapiens (Lat.) : Man as a thinking animal

honoris causa (Lat.) : honorary

hors de combat (Fr.) : unfit to fight

il penseroso (It.) : the care-ridden man

impasse (Fr.) : deadlock; blind alley

in camera (Lat.) : in secret

in cognito (It.) : in disguise

in extenso (Lat.) : at full length

in extremis (Lat.) : at the point of death; in the last extremity

infra dignitatem / infra dig (Lat.) : beneath one's dignity

in initio (Lat.) : in the beginning

in memoriam (Lat.) : in memory of

in status quo (Lat.) : in its former, its original state

inter alia (Lat.) : among other things

inter se (Lat.) : amongst themselves

interim (Lat.) : serving for interval

in toto (Lat.) : entirely, in full

ipso facto (Lat.) : virtually; in the fact itself

ipso jure (Lat.) : by unquestioned right; by the law itself

jure divino (Lat.) : by God's law

jure humano (Lat.) : by man's law

lacuna (Lat.) : a gap, hiatus

laisser-faire (Fr.) *laissez faire* : letting things find their own level; let alone; non-interference

l'allegro (It.) : the cheerful, unreflective man

lapsus calami (Lat.) : a slip of the pen

lapsus linguae (Lat.) : a slip of the tongue

lapsus memoriae (Lat.) : a slip of the memory

leitmotif (Ger.) : a recurring theme in a musical composition

lingua franca (It.) : any language spoken or understood by various people

littera scripta manet (Lat.): What is written is permanent.

locus standi (Lat.) : the right to appear before a court

literati (Fr.) : literary men

magnum bonum (Lat.) : a great good
magnum opus (Lat.) : a great work, masterpiece
mala fide (Lat.) : with bad faith
mandamus (Lat.) : a writ issued by a higher court to a lower one commanding something
matinee (Fr.) : a morning performance; actually an afternoon one
melee (Fr.) : mixed fight
menage (Fr.) : an establishment
minutiae (Lat.) : minute particulars; trifles
modus operandi (Lat.) : mode of operation; the way of working
modus vivendi (Lat.) : the way or mode of living
Monsieur (Fr.) : French equivalent for *Mr*
mutatis mutandis (Lat.) : after making the necessary changes
ne plus ultra (Lat.) : nothing beyond it; perfection
noblesse oblige (Fr.) : Rank has its obligation.
nom de plume (Fr.) : pseudonym
nonchalance (Fr.) : indifference
non compos mentis Lat.) : of unsound mind
obiter dictum (Lat.) : a thing said in passing
omnia vincit amor (Lat.) : love conquers all
omnia vincit labor (Lat.) : work conquers all
par excellence (Fr.) : pre-eminently
parole (Fr.) : word of honour, especially prisoner's
peccavi! (Lat.) : I have sinned!
per annum (Lat.) : by or in the year
per capita (Lat.) : for each person
per cent; per centum (Lat.) : per hundred
per contra (Lat.) : contrariwise
per diem (Lat.) : by the day
per mensem (Lat.) : per month
persiflage (Fr.) : banter; chaff
persona grata (Lat.) : a welcome visitor; an acceptable person
persona non grata (Lat.) : a person whose status or position is not accepted or recognised
piazza (It.) : a public square
piece de resistance (Fr.) : the best item; main course at a dinner
post mortem (Lat.) : after death; an examination of the body of the deceased

potpourri (Fr.)	:	a musical medley, a mixture of dried petals and spices kept for its perfume
prima facie (Lat.)	:	at first sight, on the surface
protege (Fr.)	:	dependent, patronised by others
pro tem (Lat.)	:	for the time being
pro tempore (Lat.)	:	for the time being
pros and cons (Lat.)	:	for and against
quantum? (Lat.)	:	How much?
quantum libet (Lat.)	:	as much as you like
quid pro quo (Lat.)	:	tit for tat
quo vadis? (Lat.)	:	Whither goest thou?
raison d'etre (Fr.)	:	reason for existence
reductio ad absurdum (Lat.)	:	to carry consistency so far that the result is nonsensical
religio loci (Lat.)	:	the spiritual feeling of a place
rendezvous (Fr.)	:	meeting-place, an appointment
resume (Fr.)	:	an abstract or summary
sanctum sanctorum (Lat.)	:	the holy of holies
sangfroid (Fr.)	:	self-possession; coolness
savoir faire (Fr.)	:	tact; knowing how to behave
simplex munditis (Lat.)	:	simple and elegant
sine die (Lat.)	:	indefinitely
sine qua non (Lat.)	:	indispensable condition
sobriquet (Fr.)	:	a nickname
sotto voce (It.)	:	in an undertone, a whisper
status quo (Lat.)	:	as things were before
sub judice (Lat.)	:	under judicial consideration; not yet decided
sub rosa (Lat.)	:	under the rose; privately, secretly
summum bonum (Lat.)	:	the highest good
tableau (Fr.)	:	a picture; a set piece
table d'hote (Fr.)	:	the set meal of a hotel
terra firma (Lat.)	:	solid earth; a firm footing
terra incognita (Lat.)	:	an unknown land
tete-a-tete (Fr.)	:	face to face; a private conversation between two people
tour de force (Fr.)	:	a feat of strength or skill
Ultima Thule (Lat.)	:	the utmost boundary or limit
ultra vires (Lat.)	:	beyond the powers possessed

vendetta (It.)	: a blood fued
veni, vidi, vici (Lat.)	: I came, I saw, I conquered.
versus (Lat.)	: against
via (Lat.)	: through, by way of
via media (Lat.)	: a middle course
vice versa (Lat.)	: the order being reversed
vide (Lat.)	: see
vis-a-vis (Fr.)	: face to face; opposite
viva voce (Lat.)	: by oral testimony
volte-face (Fr.)	: a sudden or complete change in conduct or policy
vox populi (Lat.)	: the voice of the people
wanderlust (Ger.)	: the love of travel
am (*ante meridiem*)—Lat.	: before noon
pm (*post meridiem*)—Lat.	: afternoon
e.g. (*exempli gratia*)—Lat.	: for example
ibid (*ibidem*)—Lat.	: in the same place, in the same book
i.e. (*id est*)—Lat.	: that is
NB (*nota bene*)—Lat.	: note well
AD (*Anno Domini*)—Lat.	: In the year of our Lord, in the year of Christian era
inst. (*instant*)—Lat.	: of this month
ult. (*ultimo*)—Lat.	: of last month
proximo (Lat.)	: of next month
etc. (*et cetera*)—Lat.	: and the rest
op cit (*opere citato*)—Lat.	: in the work quoted
loc cit (*loco citato*)—Lat.	: in the place quoted
RSVP (*Repondez s'il vous plait*) (Fr.)	: Reply, if you please.
viz. (*videlicet*)—Lat.	: one may see, namely, that is to say

Exercises

I. *Match foreign words in A with their meaning in B.*

A	B
1. *lingua franca*	a. per head
2. *mala fide*	b. oral test
3. *per capita*	c. bad intention
4. *viva voce*	d. one-sided

A	B
1. [illegible]	a. in reality
2. [illegible]	f. a common language
3. [illegible]	g. evening party
4. [illegible]	h. genuine
5. [illegible]	
6. [illegible]	
7. [illegible]	
8. [illegible]	

II. Each of these foreign words is followed by four alternative meanings. Put a tick (√) against the correct meaning:

1. *ad hoc*
   (a) temporary ☐ (c) full strength ☐
   (b) for the purpose ☐ (d) half-boiled ☐

2. *en bloc*
   (a) in the bloc ☐ (c) in distress ☐
   (b) full bench ☐ (d) wholesale ☐

3. *incognito*
   (a) recognise ☐ (c) in disguise ☐
   (b) recommend ☐ (d) in plain clothes ☐

4. *résumé*
   (a) summary ☐ (c) rearrange ☐
   (b) start again ☐ (d) assume ☐

5. *via media*
   (a) through publicity ☐ (c) midday sun ☐
   (b) a middle course ☐ (d) midday meal ☐

6. *sub judice*
   (a) privately ☐ (c) judicious selection ☐
   (b) under judgment ☐ (d) jaundice ☐

7. *per annum*
   (a) per month ☐ (c) annual fee ☐
   (b) per cent ☐ (d) per year ☐

Answers: I. 1. f 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. g 6. d 7. h 8. e

II. 1. (b) 2. (d) 3. (c) 4. (a) 5. (b) 6. (b) 7. (d)

CHAPTER 17

Cloze Test (Word Choice Test)

Language is a medium through which we express our thoughts and feelings. We can put our ideas across by using the right words in the right places. A slight shift in the order of words brings about a sea-change in the meaning. Thus, an *oil lamp* has a different meaning from *lamp oil*. So is the case with *flower garden* and *garden flower*. In both the cases the words used are the same but the order in which they are used determines the meaning in each case.

The choice of words is of paramount importance. Words, says Norman Lewis, are the exciting and mysterious tokens of our thoughts. They are the tools with which ideas are dug up and communicated. If words are not sharp and functional, the expression will be neither clear nor intelligible. Clarity is, therefore, the first prerequisite of language as a vehicle of expression. And this comes through a fairly good knowledge of grammar and usage besides an uncanny knack of using the right word in the right place and in the right context.

Many Multiple Choice Exercises have been designed to test vocabulary along with other aspects of language proficiency. *Cloze Test* is one of them. Here a passage is taken and words are deleted at intervals. These could be words of a particular class like nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs or prepositions. Four or five words are generally given. You have thus a number of options, only one of which is correct (the answer), the others (the detractors) being wrong. You have to supply the missing words by choosing them from the words listed.

Let us take an example and see how *Cloze Test* is designed and how we can make the right choice of words.

Directions: *In the following sentence there are five blanks, each of which has been numbered. The numbers are printed below the sentence and against each, four words are suggested, one of which fits the blank appropriately. Find out the appropriate words.*

He finally (1) ... to our request, though he was initially (2) ... and averse (3) ... the proposal (4) ... before him by a (5) ... of his friends.

1.	(A) conceded	(B) accepted	(C) acceded	(D) approved
2.	(A) adamant	(B) wary	(C) reluctant	(D) indifferent
3.	(A) for	(B) to	(C) on	(D) from
4.	(A) put	(B) placed	(C) kept	(D) thrown
5.	(A) host	(B) herd	(C) brood	(D) litter

We *concede* a demand, *accept* or *approve* (of) a suggestion or proposal. None of these words *(concede, accept, approve)* takes the preposition 'to'. We, in fact, 'accede to' someone's request. So, the correct choice for blank space number (1) is (C), that is, 'acceded'. The word 'averse' is followed by the preposition 'to'. Hence the right word for blank space number (3) is 'to'. The correct choice is, then, (B). This helps us in choosing the right word for blank space number (2). The common preposition for the word in blank space number (2) and 'averse' is 'to'. None of the words (*adamant, wary, reluctant*) except 'indifferent' takes 'to'. Hence the correct choice is (D) that is, 'indifferent'. We know it all too well that proposals are neither *put* nor *kept* nor *thrown*. They are *placed* before someone. So, the correct choice for blank space number (4) is (B) that is, 'placed'. Let us now take the four nouns of multitudes *(host, herd, brood, litter)* and consider their suitability in the given context. We say, a *herd* of *cattle*, a *brood* of *chickens*, a *litter* of *puppies*. None of these is applicable to 'friends'. The correct expression is '*a host of friends*'. So, the correct answer for blank space number (5) is (A) that is, 'host'.

EXAMPLES TO BE WORKED OUT

Directions: ***In the following passage there are blanks, each of which has been numbered. These numbers are printed below the passage and against each, four or five words are suggested, one of which fits the blank appropriately. Find out the appropriate words.***

(1)

Jawaharlal Nehru was probably the first important public leader to realize that if India were to (1) ..... its problems, it would have to (2) ..... the age of science. The Government of free India was one of the first in the world to set up a department of science and technology. The (3) ..... the Government has attached to science is also clear (4) ..... the fact that the portfolio of science and technology has always been (5) ..... by the Prime Minister himself.

1.	(A) usher	(B) work	(C) solve	(D) face	(E) raise
2.	(A) enter	(B) come	(C) continue	(D) direct	(E) evolve
3.	(A) depth	(B) weight	(C) budget	(D) policy	(E) importance
4.	(A) for	(B) when	(C) above	(D) from	(E) to
5.	(A) offered	(B) held	(C) charged	(D) appointed	(E) regarded

(2)

Since you have never had to (1) ..... me for anything, perhaps you wouldn't be (2) ..... sticking (3) ..... me now that I have run (4)

..... debt, and (5) ..... these people that it is (6) ..... no way a (7) ..... on my character.

1.	(A) approach	(B) reproach	(C) assert	(D) pester
2.	(A) averse to	(B) deprived of	(C) indifferent to	(D) desirous of
3.	(A) at	(B) on	(C) for	(D) to
4.	(A) in	(B) into	(C) with	(D) on
5.	(A) alluding	(B) making	(C) convincing	(D) informing
6.	(A) in	(B) by	(C) for	(D) on
7.	(A) projection	(B) reflection	(C) indictment	(D) covering

(3)

Human nature has an extraordinary power of (1) ..... Social and political institutions are (2) ..... to the same laws of (3) ..... to which all other things in the world are subject. If we have (4) ..... in the (5) .....of human nature, the healing power of time, the (6) ..... of social and political institutions and above all the (7) ..... of the people, the problems which divide us so (8) ..... today may appear to be purely (9) ..... after some time.

1.	(A) resistance	(B) resilience	(C) patience	(D) toleration
2.	(A) set	(B) tuned	(C) subject	(D) equal
3.	(A) gravitation	(B) mutation	(C) acceleration	(D) change
4.	(A) confidence	(B) belief	(C) trust	(D) faith
5.	(A) resilience	(B) patience	(C) perseverance	(D) toleration
6.	(A) working	(B) mutability	(C) flexibility	(D) dynamics
7.	(A) generosity	(B) magnanimity	(C) goodwill	(D) sincerity
8.	(A) foolishly	(B) fiercely	(C) acutely	(D) powerfully
9.	(A) academic	(B) intellectual	(C) unproductive	(D) inane

(4)

Perhaps, we Americans do not yet fully understand the great (1)..... that India has to teach in thus (2) ..... her freedom. (3) ..... her mighty triumph of a (4) ..... revolution our War of Independence (5) ..... in size and concept. India has taught humanity a lesson, and it is (6) ..... our peril if we do not learn it. The lesson ? That war and killing (7) ..... nothing (8) ..... loss, and that a noble end is assured only if the (9) ..... to attain it are of a (10) ..... with it and also noble.

1.	(A) message	(B) lesson	(C) moral	(D) instruction
2.	(A) attaining	(B) obtaining	(C) getting	(D) winning
3.	(A) Beside		(B) Besides	
	(C) Despite		(D) Notwithstanding	
4.	(A) bloody	(B) blood-free	(C) bloodless	(D) non-violent
5.	(A) pales	(B) shrinks	(C) squeezes	(D) reduces
6.	(A) to	(B) for	(C) in	(D) on
7.	(A) bring	(B) get	(C) achieve	(D) secure

8. (A) except (B) beside (C) besides (D) but
9. (A) measures (B) means (C) technique (D) method
10. (A) piece (B) peace (C) harmony (D) conformity

(5)

Within the (1) ..... we are more friendly to each other than are many (2) ..... of animals but in our attitude towards those outside the herd, in spite of all that has been done by moralists and (3) ..... teachers, our emotions are as (4) ..... as those of any animal, and our (5) ..... enables us to give them a scope which is (6) ..... to even the most savage beast.

1. (A) society (B) caste (C) herd (D) institution
2. (A) species (B) kinds (C) types (D) specimens
3. (A) college (B) school (C) religious (D) social
4. (A) uncontrolled (B) hostile (C) wild (D) ferocious
5. (A) intellect (B) intelligence (C) knowledge (D) exuberance
6. (A) relegated (B) denial (C) denied (D) conceded

(6)

Science (1) ..... the average man and woman in two ways already. He or she benefits by its (2) ....., driving in a motor-car or omnibus instead of a horse-drawn (3) ....., being treated for disease by a doctor or surgeon rather than a priest or a (4) ....., being (5) ..... with an automatic pistol or a shell in (6) ..... of a dagger or battle-axe. It also affects his or her opinions. Almost everyone believes that the earth is (7) ....., and the heavens nearly (8) ....., instead of solid. And we are beginning to believe in our animal (9) ..... and the possibility of vast improvements in (10) ..... nature by biological methods.

1. (A) effects (B) affects (C) helps (D) alienates
2. (A) implication (B) applications (C) use (D) admission
3. (A) automobile (B) carriage (C) vehicle (D) cart
4. (A) quack (B) magician (C) swindler (D) witch
5. (A) hacked (B) killed (C) murdered (D) gagged
6. (A) lieu (B) spite (C) place (D) want
7. (A) flat (B) oval (C) opaque (D) round
8. (A) hollow (B) empty (C) vacant (D) hallow
9. (A) ancestry (B) progeny (C) lineage (D) sociation
10. (A) humane (B) human (C) animal (D) basic

(7)

Every society depends on energy (1) ..... from one source or another to supply its needs. In the past the energy of beasts and water power from water-mills was used to (2) ..... what man could not do alone. Modern society (3) ..... above all on heat-based energy. This produces electricity, cooks food a (4) ..... motor cars, ships and planes. The (5)

..... source is oil. Without it industry would (6) ....., standard of living would drop. Oil is no longer so cheap and (7) ..... as it was. Existing supplies will not last (8) ..... Yet world energy demand goes (9) ..... increasing.

1.	(A) got	(B) obtained	(C) generated	(D) derived
2.	(A) compliment	(B) complement	(C) supplement	(D) augment
3.	(A) draws	(B) bases	(C) depends	(D) stands
4.	(A) moves	(B) drives	(C) propels	(D) pushes
5.	(A) principal	(B) principle	(C) only	(D) main
6.	(A) ruin	(B) collapse	(C) wreck	(D) perish
7.	(A) available	(B) aplenty	(C) plentiful	(D) luxuriant
8.	(A) infinitely	(B) indefinitely	(C) eternally	(D) always
9.	(A) by	(B) from	(C) on	(D) None of these

(8)

Human society is a (1) ..... growth, an unfoldment in terms of (2) ..... . If so, it must be based on ever-increasing restraint upon the demands of the (3) ..... Thus marriage must be considered to be a (4) ..... imposing discipline upon the (5)....., restricting them to the physical (6) ..... only among themselves and for the purpose only of (7) ..... when both the partners desire and are prepared (8) ..... it.

1.	(A) perennial	(B) continual	(C) ceaseless	(D) continuing.
2.	(A) spirit	(B) spiritual	(C) spirituous	(D) spirituality
3.	(A) body	(B) flesh	(C) sex	(D) ego
4.	(A) sacrament	(B) contract	(C) contact	(D) union
5.	(A) couples	(B) partners	(C) set	(D) duo
6.	(A) union	(B) contact	(C) penetration	(D) rapport
7.	(A) creation	(B) procreation	(C) multiplication	(D) adjustment
8.	(A) in	(B) about	(C) for	(D) No word

(9)

Books introduce to us the best (1) .....; they bring us (2) ..... the presence of the greatest (3) ..... that have ever lived. We hear what they said and did; we see them as if they were (4) .....alive; we share their (5) ....., we sympathize with them, (6)..... with them in the scenes which they describe. The great and the good do not (7) ..... even in this world. (8) ..... in books, their spirits walk (9) ..... The book is a living (10) .....; it is an (11) ..... to which one still listens.

1.	(A) social	(B) society	(C) company	(D) atmosphere
2.	(A) before	(B) in	(C) into	(D) through
3.	(A) man	(B) minds	(C) intellect	(D) scholars
4.	(A) actually	(B) really	(C) decidedly	(D) indeed
5.	(A) thoughts	(B) ideas	(C) feelings	(D) observations
6.	(A) enjoy	(B) grieve	(C) exult	(D) sorrow
7.	(A) die	(B) dye	(C) disappear	(D) eclipse

8.	(A) Kept	(B) Maintained	(C) Preserved	(D) Embalmed
9.	(A) about	(B) away	(C) around	(D) abroad
10.	(A) sound	(B) echo	(C) voice	(D) word
11.	(A) intellect	(B) enigma	(C) aura	(D) record

(10)

An equally (1) ..... and vital task for us is to (2) ..... the spirit of discord that is (3) ..... in India. Out of mutual conflict we shall never build the (4) ..... of India's freedom (5) ..... which we have dreamt so long. All of us in this land have to live and work together whatever political (6) ..... might take place. Hatred and violence will not (7) ..... this basic fact nor will they (8) ..... the changes that are taking place in India.

1.	(A) immediate	(B) urgent	(C) forceful	(D) rigid
2.	(A) conquer	(B) control	(C) check	(D) maintain
3.	(A) abode	(B) abound	(C) inherent	(D) abroad
4.	(A) bungalow	(B) flat	(C) house	(D) apartment
5.	(A) of	(B) for	(C) about	(D) on
6.	(A) progress	(B) scenario	(C) developments	(D) somersault
7.	(A) altar	(B) alter	(C) block	(D) blur
8.	(A) stop	(B) impede	(C) check	(D) cheque

(11)

India is (1) ..... the move and the old order passes. Too long have we been (2) ..... spectators of events and the (3) ..... of others. The (4) ..... comes to our people now and we shall make the history of our (5) ..... Let us all join in this mighty (6) ..... and make India, the (7) ..... of our heart, great among nations, foremost in the arts of peace and progress. The door is open and destiny (8) ..... to all. There is no question of who wins and who (9) ....., for we have to go forward and together as comrades and either all of us win or we all (10) ..... together.

1.	(A) for	(B) on	(C) in	(D) at
2.	(A) passive	(B) silent	(C) detached	(D) impartial
3.	(A) toys	(B) hireling	(C) playthings	(D) subordinates
4.	(A) initiative	(B) charge	(C) opportunity	(D) offer
5.	(A) desire	(B) need	(C) dream	(D) choice
6.	(A) work	(B) venture	(C) task	(D) project
7.	(A) heaven	(B) pride	(C) cynosure	(D) seat
8.	(A) calls	(B) beckons	(C) summons	(D) reiterates
9.	(A) loses	(B) falls	(C) fails	(D) stumbles
10.	(A) fall down	(B) lie down	(C) perish	(D) go down

(12)

Put all your knowledge, learning and (1) ..... in one scale and truth and (2) ..... in the other and the (3) ..... will by far (4) ..... the former. The (5) ..... of moral impurity has today spread among our school-going

children and like a hidden (6) ..... is working (7) ..... among them. I, therefore, appeal to you, boys and girls, to keep your minds and bodies (8)..... All your scholarship, all your study of the (9) ..... will be in vain if you fail to translate their teachings (10) ..... your daily life.

1.	(A) showmanship	(B) thoughts	(C) scholarship	(D) experiences
2.	(A) honesty	(B) purity	(C) sincerity	(D) falsehood
3.	(A) later	(B) latter	(C) least	(D) last
4.	(A) outweigh	(B) outsmart	(C) outscore	(D) outshine
5.	(A) evil	(B) filth	(C) virus	(D) stink
6.	(A) epidemic	(B) disease	(C) cancer	(D) pestilence
7.	(A) harm	(B) vengeance	(C) havoc	(D) discord
8.	(A) free	(B) pious	(C) pure	(D) healthy
9.	(A) Bible	(B) Ramayan	(C) arts	(D) scriptures
10.	(A) in	(B) into	(C) on	(D) for

(13)

The chief business of war is to (1) ..... human life, to (2) ..... down and burn cities, to turn fruitful fields into (3) ....., to scourge nations (4) ..... famine, to (5) ..... widows and orphans. Are these honourable deeds? Grant that a (6) ..... for them may exist; it is a dreadful necessity, such as a good man must (7) .....; and though it may (8) ..... these deeds from guilt, it cannot turn them into glory. We have thought that it was honourable to heal, to save, to (9) ..... pain, to snatch the sick from the (10) ..... of death. We have placed among the revered (11) ..... of the human race, the discoverers of arts which (12) ..... human sufferings, which prolong comfort, (13)..... and cheer human life, and if these arts are honourable, where is the glory of multiplying and (14) ..... tortures and death?

1.	(A) spoil	(B) desecrate	(C) destroy	(D) burn
2.	(A) batter	(B) shatter	(C) cut	(D) raze
3.	(A) wasteland	(B) deserts	(C) paradise	(D) hell
4.	(A) from	(B) on	(C) into	(D) with
5.	(A) amplify	(B) add	(C) multiply	(D) petrify
6.	(A) necessity	(B) possibility	(C) demand	(D) urge
7.	(A) prevent from	(B) avail of	(C) avoid	(D) recoil from
8.	(A) exempt	(B) remove	(C) avoid	(D) prevent
9.	(A) lessen	(B) escalate	(C) mitigate	(D) kill
10.	(A) jaws	(B) mouth	(C) teeth	(D) clutch
11.	(A) benefactors	(B) well-wishers	(C) guardians	(D) leaders
12.	(A) aggravate	(B) exaggerate	(C) alleviate	(D) mitigate
13.	(A) adorn	(B) embellish	(C) vivify	(D) satisfy
14.	(A) adding	(B) alleviating	(C) captivating	(D) aggravating

(14)

In (1) ..... there is always a feeling of want. It is this which makes man (2) ..... for things which he cannot get and feels sad upon the past, and looking forward (3) ..... future. This with the past and future does not allow man to live (7) ..... in the present. Thus, there is always a pain in man's (8) ....., always a sense of (9) ..... in the moment of enjoyments. That is why the best poetry of man (10) ..... Our sweetest songs are those that tell of (11) ..... has been rightly said.

1. (A) man's	(B) our	(C) human	(D) humane
2. (A) sad	(B) disappointed	(C) unhappy	(D) mundane
3. (A) looks	(B) pines	(C) hankers	(D) aspires
4. (A) at	(B) for	(C) back	(D) No word
5. (A) into	(B) to	(C) the	(D) for
6. (A) preoccupation	(B) engagement	(C) connection	(D) relation
7. (A) carelessly	(B) blissfully	(C) happily	(D) honourably
8. (A) laugh	(B) smile	(C) laughter	(D) heart
9. (A) want	(B) loss	(C) fulfilment	(D) scarcity
10. (A) pain	(B) dejection	(C) sorrow	(D) joy
11. (A) saddest	(B) laziest	(C) happiest	(D) sorrowful

(15)

In life there are no (1) ..... without pains. Life indeed would be (2) ..... if there (3) ..... no difficulties. Games lose their (4) ..... if there is no real (5) ....., if the result is a (6) ..... conclusion. Both (7) ..... and loser enjoy a game must if it is closely (8) ..... to the last. No victory is a real triumph unless the (9) ..... is worthy of the (10) ..... Whether we like it or not, life is one (11) ..... competitive examination.

1. (A) earning	(B) profit	(C) gains	(D) relief
2. (A) dull	(B) stale	(C) colourless	(D) cheerful
3. (A) is	(B) are	(C) was	(D) were
4. (A) zest	(B) enthusiasm	(C) charm	(D) attraction
5. (A) fight	(B) contest	(C) struggle	(D) obstacle
6. (A) known	(B) foregone	(C) expected	(D) predictable
7. (A) victor	(B) victorious	(C) winner	(D) gainer
8. (A) fought	(B) contested	(C) watched	(D) balanced
9. (A) rival	(B) adversary	(C) foe	(D) enemy
10. (A) prize	(B) steal	(C) steel	(D) contest
11. (A) regular	(B) continuous	(C) continual	(D) severe

(16)

How (1) ..... is the spirit of man! In spite of (2) ..... failings, man, throughout the ages, has (3) ..... his life and all he held dear for an (4) ..... for truth, for faith, for country and honour. That ideal may change

but that (5) ..... for (6) ..... continues, and because of that, much may be (7) ..... to man, and it is impossible to (8) ..... hope for him. In the midst of (9) ....., he has not lost his dignity or his faith in the values he (10) ..... Plaything of nature's mighty forces, less than a (11) ..... of dust in this vast universe, he has (12) ..... defiance at the (13) ..... powers, and with his mind, the (14) ..... of revolution, sought to master them.

1. (A) intriguing (B) amazing (C) mystifying (D) unpredictable
2. (A) innumerable (B) limitless (C) countless (D) enormous
3. (A) offered (B) sacrificed (C) spoiled (D) endangered
4. (A) idea (B) motive (C) mission (D) ideal
5. (A) capacity (B) ability (C) urge (D) knack
6. (A) self-effacement (B) self-sacrifice (C) hardship (D) patriotism
7. (A) forgotten (B) forbidden (C) forgiven (D) credited
8. (A) lose (B) loose (C) loss (D) forego
9. (A) obstacles (B) disaster (C) tragedy (D) danger
10. (A) cherished (B) desired (C) liked (D) entertained
11. (A) piece (B) slice (C) speck (D) iota
12. (A) thrown (B) hurled (C) shown (D) plunged
13. (A) elemental (B) supernatural (C) superhuman (D) heavenly
14. (A) seat (B) spring (C) cradle (D) fountain-head

(17)

It is not good for man that his life should be all joy and (1) ..... The lands which only know sunshine and never rain become (2) ..... The most beautiful countries are those which are (3) ..... visited by both sunshine and rain. It is in these lands that (4) ..... and fruits grow and sweet birds sing. There is nothing more beautiful than a (5) ..... If life is to be rounded and many-coloured (6) ..... the rainbow, both joy and sorrow must come to it. Those who have never known (7) ..... but prosperity and pleasure become hard and (8) ..... but those whose prosperity has been mixed with (9) ..... become kind and (10) ..... .

1. (A) adversity (B) pain (C) prosperity (D) sorrow
2. (A) deserts (B) garbage (C) marshy (D) fallow
3. (A) regularly (B) interminably (C) occasionally (D) fairly
4. (A) flowers (B) hedges (C) vegetables (D) bowers
5. (A) sky (B) flower (C) rainbow (D) rain
6. (A) like (B) so (C) as (D) by
7. (A) nothing (B) something (C) anything (D) No word
8. (A) cruel (B) harsh (C) shallow (D) stern
9. (A) adversity (B) hardship (C) poverty (D) tragedy
10. (A) gracious (B) meek (C) gentle (D) generous

(18)

Civilization, like (1) ....., fall, not so much because of the (2) ..... of the enemy outside, as through the weakness and (3) ..... within. Rome fell not because of the (4) .....; they merely knocked (5) ..... something that was already dead. The heart of Rome had (6) ..... beating when the arms and legs were cut (7) ..... We see something of this (8) ..... in India and China and in the case of the Arabs. The (9) ..... of Arabian civilization was sudden even as their rise had been. In India and China the process is long-drawn (10) ..... and it is not easy to (11) ..... it.

1.	(A) states	(B) kingdom	(C) empires	(D) buildings
2.	(A) weakness	(B) strength	(C) power	(D) tenacity
3.	(A) disease	(B) decease	(C) decay	(D) fortitude
4.	(A) barbarity	(B) barbarous	(C) barbarians	(D) Romans
5.	(A) off	(B) on	(C) down	(D) No word
6.	(A) seized	(B) rotated	(C) ceased	(D) started
7.	(A) down	(B) off	(C) up	(D) No word
8.	(A) process	(B) procedure	(C) spectacle	(D) scene
9.	(A) downfall	(B) death	(C) collapse	(D) dismemberment
10.	(A) out	(B) up	(C) upon	(D) No word
11.	(A) find	(B) single	(C) spot	(D) pick

(19)

There is only one cure for the evils which newly (1)..... freedom produces; and that cure is freedom. When a prisoner first leaves his (2) ....., he cannot (3) ..... the light of day; he is unable to (4) ..... colours or recognise faces. But the remedy is not to (5) ..... him into his (6) ..... but to (7)..... him to the (8) ..... of the sun. The blaze of truth and liberty may at first (9) ..... and bewilder nations which have become half blind in the house of (10) ..... But let them gaze on, and they will soon be able to (11) ..... it. In a few years men will learn to reason.

The extreme violence of opinion (12) ..... Hostile theories correct each other. The (13) ..... elements of truth cease to (14) ....., and begin to (15) ..... And at length a system of justice and order is deduced out of (16) .....

1.	(A) acquired	(B) attained	(C) achieved	(D) obtained
2.	(A) prison	(B) barrack	(C) cell	(D) gaol
3.	(A) bear	(B) stand	(C) beer	(D) tolerate
4.	(A) distinguish	(B) discriminate	(C) separate	(D) decipher
5.	(A) push	(B) throw	(C) remand	(D) dash
6.	(A) quagmire	(B) dungeon	(C) precipice	(D) ditch
7.	(A) adopt	(B) accustom	(C) reconcile	(D) habituate
8.	(A) rays	(B) raise	(C) twilight	(D) glare
9.	(A) glitter	(B) blaze	(C) blind	(D) dazzle
10.	(A) prison	(B) bondage	(C) slaughter	(D) slaves
11.	(A) bear	(B) tolerate	(C) assimilate	(D) assuage

12. (A) recedes (B) lessens (C) mitigates (D) subsides
13. (A) battered (B) scattered (C) separate (D) displaced
14. (A) contest (B) cooperate (C) contend (D) adjust
15. (A) coalesce (B) mix (C) amalgamate (D) integrate
16. (A) agitation (B) hubbub (C) chaos (D) revolution

(20)

It is not luck but (1) ..... that makes men. Luck, says an American writer, is ever waiting for something to turn (2) .....; labour with keen eye and strong (3) ..... always turns up something. Luck lies in bed and wishes the postman would bring him news of a (4) .....; labour turns out at six and with busy pen and (5) ..... hammer lays the foundation of a (6)..... Luck relies on chance; labour on (7) ..... Luck slips downwards to (8) .....; labour (9) ..... upwards and aspires (10) ..... independence. The conviction, therefore, is extending that diligence is the (11) ..... of good luck; in other words, that a man's success in life will be (12) ..... to his efforts, to his industry, to his attention to small things.

1. (A) work (B) diligence (C) labour (D) experiences
2. (A) on (B) up (C) down (D) off
3. (A) will (B) power (C) resourcefulness (D) grit
4. (A) windfall (B) treasure (C) legacy (D) wealth
5. (A) swinging (B) ringing (C) moving (D) powerful
6. (A) competence (B) knowledge (C) skill (D) learning
7. (A) work-culture (B) character (C) hon[illegible]e
8. (A) self-indulgence (B) self-effacement (C) selfishness (D) self-gratification
9. (A) jumps (B) strides (C) climbs (D) ascends
10. (A) after (B) for (C) to (D) on
11. (A) progeny (B) father (C) offspring (D) mother
12. (A) equal (B) proportionate (C) subject (D) match

(21)

Neglect of small things is the (1) ..... on which the great majority of people have (2) ..... Human life consists of a (3) ..... of small events each of which is (4) ..... unimportant, and yet the happiness and success of every man depend upon the (5) ..... in which these small events are dealt (6) ..... Character is (7) ..... upon the little things, little things well and (8) ..... done. The success of a man (9) ..... business depends on his attention to little things. The comfort of a (10) ..... is the result of small things well-arranged and duly provided (11) ..... Good government can only be (12) ..... in the same way by (13) ..... provisions for the doing of little things. (14) ..... of knowledge and experience of the most valuable kind is the result of little (15) ..... of knowledge and experience carefully (16) ..... up.

1. (A) bed (B) precipice (C) stone (D) rock
2. (A) spoiled (B) split (C) died (D) splashed
3. (A) series (B) chain (C) succession (D) plethora
4. (A) comparatively (B) relatively (C) awfully (D) generally
5. (A) manner (B) way (C) fashion (D) style
6. (A) on (B) with (C) by (D) in
7. (A) formed (B) shaped (C) built (D) set
8. (A) skilfully (B) honourably (C) cheerfully (D) adroitly
9. (A) of (B) in (C) with (D) None of these
10. (A) household (B) house (C) family (D) group
11. (A) with (B) by (C) for (D) in
12. (A) accomplished (B) formed (C) set up (D) run
13. (A) well-organised (B) well-regulated (C) well-modulated (D) well-arranged
14. (A) Acquisition (B) Gaining (C) Gathering (D) Accumulation
15. (A) specks (B) pieces (C) bits (D) shreds
16. (A) garnered (B) treasured (C) gathered (D) amassed

ANSWER

1.	1 (C)	2 (A)	3 (E)	4 (D)	5 (B)		
2.	1 (B)	2 (A)	3 (D)	4 (B)	5 (C)	6 (A)	7 (B)
3.	1 (B)	2 (C)	3 (B)	4 (D)	5 (A)	6 (B)	7 (C)
	8 (B)	9 (A)					
4.	1 (B)	2 (D)	3 (A)	4 (C)	5 (B)	6 (A)	7 (C)
	8 (D)	9 (B)	10 (A)				
5.	1 (C)	2 (A)	3 (C)	4 (D)	5 (B)	6 (C)	
6.	1 (B)	2 (B)	3 (C)	4 (D)	5 (B)	6 (C)	7 (D)
	8 (B)	9 (A)	10 (B)				
7.	1 (D)	2 (C)	3 (C)	4 (C)	5 (A)	6 (B)	7 (C)
	8 (B)	9 (C)					
8.	1 (C)	2 (D)	3 (B)	4 (A)	5 (B)	6 (A)	7 (B)
	8 (C)						
9.	1 (B)	2 (C)	3 (B)	4 (B)	5 (A)	6 (B)	7 (A)
	8 (C)	9 (D)	10 (C)	11 (A)			
10.	1 (B)	2 (A)	3 (D)	4 (C)	5 (A)	6 (C)	7 (B)
	8 (A)						
11.	1 (B)	2 (A)	3 (C)	4 (A)	5 (D)	6 (C)	7 (B)
	8 (B)	9 (A)	10 (D)				
12.	1 (C)	2 (B)	3 (B)	4 (A)	5 (C)	6 (A)	7 (C)
	8 (C)	9 (D)	10 (B)				

13.	1 (C)	2 (A)	3 (B)	4 (D)	5 (C)	6 (A)	7 (D)
	8 (A)	9 (C)	10 (A)	11 (A)	12 (C)	13 (A)	14 (D)
14.	1 (C)	2 (C)	3 (B)	4 (C)	5 (A)	6 (A)	7 (C)
	8 (C)	9 (A)	10 (C)	11 (A)			
15.	1 (C)	2 (A)	3 (D)	4 (A)	5 (C)	6 (B)	7 (C)
	8 (B)	9 (C)	10 (C)	11 (B)			
16.	1 (B)	2 (A)	3 (B)	4 (D)	5 (A)	6 (B)	7 (C)
	8 (A)	9 (B)	10 (A)	11 (C)	12 (B)	13 (A)	14 (C)
17.	1 (C)	2 (A)	3 (A)	4 (A)	5 (C)	6 (A)	7 (C)
	8 (C)	9 (A)	10 (A)				
18.	1 (C)	2 (B)	3 (C)	4 (C)	5 (C)	6 (C)	7 (B)
	8 (A)	9 (C)	10 (A)	11 (C)			
19.	1 (A)	2 (C)	3 (A)	4 (B)	5 (C)	6 (B)	7 (B)
	8 (A)	9 (D)	10 (B)	11 (A)	12 (D)	13 (B)	14 (C)
	15 (A)	16 (C)					
20.	1 (C)	2 (B)	3 (A)	4 (C)	5 (B)	6 (A)	7 (B)
	8 (A)	9 (B)	10 (C)	11 (D)	12 (B)		
21.	1 (D)	2 (B)	3 (C)	4 (A)	5 (A)	6 (B)	7 (C)
	8 (B)	9 (B)	10 (A)	11 (C)	12 (A)	13 (B)	14 (D)
	15 (C)	16 (B)					

Exercise

Directions: *In the following passages numbered blank spaces are given. For each blank space, some words or phrases are given in the answer-choices. Pick the most appropriate answer-choice for each blank space.*

(1)

Violence (1) ... democracy and there is more of it now and is fairly widespread. What makes a tolerant people kill each other needs to be (2) ... But some things are clear. You cannot have over 400 million people illiterate, ignorant, underemployed and (3) ... believe in democracy for too long. Somewhere there is a link (4) ... poverty and violence. And you cannot ask a man without a (5) ... not to feel angry simply because Mahatma Gandhi said that (6) ... and violence are bad for the country and the people.

1.	(A) obliterates	(B) defuses	(C) negates	(D) impairs
2.	(A) discussed	(B) criticized	(C) focussed	(D) pondered
3.	(A) unfed	(B) underfed	(C) overfed	(D) furnished
4.	(A) between	(B) in	(C) into	(D) for
5.	(A) work	(B) engagement	(C) job	(D) assignment
6.	(A) anger	(B) angry	(C) unhappiness	(D) ignorance

(2)

The sea (1) ..... to man's love of the perilous and the (2) ....., to his love of conquest, his love of (3) ....., and his love of gold. Its green, and grey, and blue, and purple (4) ..... call to him, and bid him (5) ... forth in quest (6) .... fresh fields. Beyond their (7) ... he has found danger and death, glory and (8) ....

1. (A) attracts	(B) repels	(C) appeals	(D) allures
2. (A) unknown	(B) known	(C) secret	(D) puerile
3. (A) wisdom	(B) knowledge	(C) experience	(D) literature
4. (A) waters	(B) surface	(C) foam	(D) depth
5. (A) fair	(B) set	(C) fare	(D) put
6. (A) for	(B) of	(C) on	(D) in
7. (A) horizons	(B) surface	(C) region	(D) area
8. (A) loss	(B) gain	(C) fame	(D) shame

(3)

Being stupid and having no (1) ... , animals often behave far more (2) ... than men. Efficiently and by (3) ... they do the right, appropriate thing at the right moment: eat when they are (4) .... ; look for water when they feel (5) ..., make love in the (6) .... season, rest or play when they have (7) ... Men are intelligent and (8) ..... ; they look backwards and ahead; they (9) .... ingenious explanation for observed phenomena; they (10) .... elaborate and roundabout means for the achievement of remote (11) ...

1. (A) intellect	(B) imagination	(C) sense	(D) logic
2. (A) sensibly	(B) sincerely	(C) casually	(D) truthfully
3. (A) nature	(B) endeavour	(C) instinct	(D) common sense
4. (A) hunger	(B) hungry	(C) destitute	(D) debility
5. (A) hungry	(B) thirsty	(C) thirst	(D) parched
6. (A) communion	(B) meeting	(C) spring	(D) mating
7. (A) leisure	(B) rest	(C) interval	(D) holiday
8. (A) stupid	(B) worthy	(C) imaginative	(D) studious
9. (A) devise	(B) device	(C) use	(D) employ
10. (A) devise	(B) invent	(C) draw up	(D) adapt
11. (A) aim	(B) ambition	(C) ends	(D) desire

(4)

Liberty is not a personal (1) ... only, but a social (2) .... It is an accommodation of (3) .... In matters which do not (4) ... anybody else's liberty, of course, I may be as free as I like. If I (5) ... to go down the Strand in a dressing-gown, with long hair and (6) ... feet, who shall say me nay? You have liberty to laugh (7) .... me, but I have liberty to be (8) ... to you.

1. (A) like	(B) affair	(C) aptitude	(D) ego
2. (A) contact	(B) obligation	(C) contract	(D) issue
3. (A) interests	(B) demands	(C) desires	(D) problems

4. (A) concern (B) touch (C) effect (D) affects
5. (A) choose (B) aver (C) select (D) aspire
6. (A) naked (B) beer (C) bare (D) vacant
7. (A) on (B) upon (C) with (D) at
8. (A) ignorant (B) averse (C) indifferent (D) unkind

(5)

But if travel brings a conviction of human (1) ... , it brings an equally strong conviction of human unity. It (2) ... tolerance, but it also shows what are the (3) ... of possible toleration. Religious and moral (4) ... , forms of government and of society are almost endlessly (5) .... , and each has a right to its separate existence. But a oneness (6) ... this diversity.

1. (A) variety (B) diversity (C) eccentricity (D) unity
2. (A) inculcates (B) imbibes (C) engenders (D) infuses
3. (A) areas (B) regions (C) scope (D) limits
4. (A) principles (B) codes (C) rules (D) concept
5. (A) varied (B) different (C) various (D) new
6. (A) undermines (B) underlies (C) percolates (D) aims

(6)

To those peoples in the huts and villages of half the (1) ... struggling to break the (2) ... of mass misery, we (3) .... our best efforts to help them help themselves. Not because we (4) ... their votes, but because it is right. If a free society cannot help the (5) ... who are poor, it cannot save the few who are (6) ...

1. (A) world (B) globe (C) continent (D) universe
2. (A) bound (B) bonds (C) barricade (D) barrack
3. (A) pledge (B) assure (C) reiterate (D) devote
4. (A) want (B) seek (C) demand (D) expect
5. (A) majority (B) concourse (C) many (D) few
6. (A) well-off (B) well-to-do (C) rich (D) conservative

(7)

Art proclaims no truth which it can (1) ... but perception demands no proof; its (2) ... is within itself. And as art moves within the (3) ... of the perceivable it rests upon a basis which, (4) ... its borders, is not so uncertain, so ever-shifting, as that (5) ... which philosophy, unbounded, gains a (6) ... footing.

1. (A) exhibit (B) demonstrate (C) spotlight (D) rectify
2. (A) evidence (B) essence (C) milieu (D) crux
3. (A) area (B) sphere (C) region (D) campus
4. (A) in (B) inside (C) within (D) on
5. (A) on (B) upon (C) within (D) at
6. (A) sound (B) precarious (C) sure (D) slippery

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

(8)

At the table a man, unlike ordinary people, was sitting (1) ... He was a (2) ... with the skin drawn tight over his bones, with long (3) ... like a woman's and a (4) ... beard. His face was yellow with an (5) ... tint in it, his cheeks were (6) ...., his back long and narrow, and the hand on which his shaggy head was (7) ... was so thin and delicate that it was (8) ... to look at it. His head was already (9) ... with silver, and seeing his (10) ... , aged-looking face, no one would have believed that he was only forty.

1.	(A) motionless	(B) static	(C) fixed	(D) moving
2.	(A) flabby	(B) rickety	(C) skeleton	(D) edifice
3.	(A) twist	(B) curls	(C) tresses	(D) pigtail
4.	(A) short	(B) brief	(C) shaggy	(D) soft
5.	(A) earthly	(B) earthy	(C) homely	(D) sharp
6.	(A) hollow	(B) sunken	(C) rosy	(D) pink
7.	(A) inclined	(B) set	(C) rested	(D) propped
8.	(A) sorrowful	(B) dreadful	(C) wonderful	(D) awful
9.	(A) streaked	(B) lined	(C) dyed	(D) marked
10.	(A) vitiated	(B) emaciated	(C) pale	(D) worn

ANSWER

1.	1 (C)	2 (D)	3 (B)	4 (A)	5 (C)	6 (A)	
2.	1 (C)	2 (A)	3 (B)	4 (A)	5 (C)	6 (B)	7 (A)
	8 (B)						
3.	1 (B)	2 (A)	3 (C)	4 (B)	5 (C)	6 (D)	7 (A)
	8 (B)	9 (A)	10 (B)	11 (C)			
4.	1 (B)	2 (C)	3 (A)	4 (B)	5 (A)	6 (C)	7 (D)
	8 (C)						
5.	1 (B)	2 (A)	3 (D)	4 (B)	5 (A)	6 (B)	
6.	1 (B)	2 (B)	3 (A)	4 (B)	5 (C)	6 (C)	
7.	1 (B)	2 (A)	3 (B)	4 (C)	5 (B)	6 (B)	
8.	1 (A)	2 (C)	3 (B)	4 (C)	5 (B)	6 (A)	7 (D)
	8 (B)	9 (A)	10 (B)				

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Sentence Sequence

The two qualities of effective writing are *unity* and *coherence*. There is *unity* in a sentence if all its parts relate to each other. *Coherence* means that the readers can see relations and move easily from one thought to the next.

Many narratives present events in exactly the order in which they occurred, moving from beginning to end, from first event to last. It is better to follow a strict chronological order to help the clear and orderly progression of ideas.

Cause and *effect* link situations and events together in time since causes must always precede effects. There may be several causes of an effect. The most important one is the main cause, and the others are contributory causes. As for example:

'In the spring of 1968, Martin Luther King, Jr., was shot and killed. During the next few nights, civil disturbances broke out in New York city, Washington, DC, and many other cities.

The media quickly identified the assassination of Dr King as the cause. While anger over Dr King's death surely contributed to the unrest, the main cause probably was not just the assassination itself but the racial hatred the assassination symbolized.

Effect	*Main cause*	*Contributory cause*
Civil Disturbance	Racism	King's death

Let us take five jumbled up sentences and analyze the steps to put them in proper sequence. These five sentences are:

1. The monsoon failed.
2. The fields could not be irrigated.
3. The rivers became almost dry.
4. A famine was feared.
5. No grain could be sown.

The main cause is the failure of monsoon. It was because of the failure of monsoon that the rivers became almost dry. Since the rivers became

almost dry, the fields could not be irrigated. And because of the lack of irrigation no grain could be sown. All these factors combined to create the fear of famine. Thus the proper sequence of these sentences will be:

1. The monsoon failed.
2. The rivers became almost dry.
3. The fields could not be irrigated.
4. No grains could be sown.
5. A famine was feared.

EXAMPLES WORKED OUT

Directions: *Each question below consists of a group of sentences or parts thereof followed by four sequential arrangements. Rearrange the sentences in coherent sequence.*

1. P. It drove the ship ashore.
Q. It remained there for several days.
R. The wind was strong.
S. The ship ran on to the sand.
(A) S R P Q (B) S Q R P (C) R P S Q (D) P R S Q

2. P. It grew dark.
Q. A stranger picked him up.
R. The sun set.
S. The traveller stumbled and fell down.
T. Nothing was visible.
(A) P R Q S T (B) R P T S Q (C) S Q R P T (D) R T Q P S

3. P. had behaved quite well
Q. he found
R. when the father came home
S. while he was away
T. that the children
(A) R Q T P S (B) Q T P S R (C) R S Q T P (D) S Q T R P

4. P. Queen Victoria ruled
Q. for more than 63 years,
R. the longest reign in England's history
S. British Empire
(A) P R Q S (B) S R P Q (C) P S Q R (D) P S R Q

5. P. the number of illiterates
Q. incredible though it may seem
R. has also been increasing
S. while the percentage of literacy in India has been going up
(A) P S R Q (B) Q S R P (C) R S P Q (D) Q S P R

6. P. production and consumption of oil and gas
Q. and coal will play a less important role
R. will increase in developing countries
S. in the industrialized countries upto 2020 A D
(A) P R Q S (B) R S P Q (C) Q R S P (D) S P R Q

7. P. particularly so for developing countries like India
   Q. can boast of and
   R. youth is a rich and powerful resource
   S. which any country
   (A) P Q S R (B) R S Q P (C) P S R Q (D) R S P Q

8. P. His clothes became dirty.
   Q. He, then, returned home.
   R. There he washed his dirty clothes.
   S. He fell to the ground.
   T. He struck his foot against a stone.
   U. He went to a nearby well.
   (A) T S P U R Q (B) P Q U R T S
   (C) T S Q U R P (D) S P U R T Q

Directions: *In these questions, the first and the last parts of the sentences are numbered as* 1 *and* 6. *The rest of the sentences are split into four parts and named* P, Q, R *and* S. *These four parts are not given in their proper order. Read the sentences and find out which of the four combinations is correct.*

9. 1. I met a poor woman, all in tears,
   P. and that his eight children must now starve;
   Q. her husband had been arrested for a debt
   R. who told me that
   S. he was not able to pay
   6. bereaved as they were of his industry.
   (A) R S P Q (B) R S Q P (C) R Q S P (D) R P S Q

10. 1. Sir Issac Newton discovered
    P. by virtue of which every particle of matter the world is composed of
    Q. with a force
    R. draws towards itself every other particle of matter
    S. that there was a law in nature called attraction
    6. which is proportionate to its mass and distance.
    (A) S P R Q (B) R S P Q (C) P Q R P (D) S R P Q

11. 1. When the Piper claimed his pay,
    P. that the promise
    Q. the Mayor declared
    R. which he had made before the town was cleared of rats,
    S. was only a joke,
    6. as the Piper very well knew.
    (A) P R Q S (B) Q R P S (C) Q P R S (D) R P S Q

12. 1. In a vast and ancient land
    P. embracing within its border
    Q. we are attempting to bridge, in a matter of decades,
    R. steeped in extreme poverty

S. a rich variety of cultures, languages and religions
6. the gap created by the century of old stagnation.
(A) R P S Q (B) P R S Q (C) R S P Q (D) S P R Q

13. 1. After his schooling was finished
P. so that he might go and trade about the world
Q. and become a help to his parents
R. his father gave him a ship freighted with various sorts of merchandise
S. and grow rich
6. who were now advanced in age.
(A) R P Q S (B) R P S Q (C) R S P Q (D) R Q S P

14. 1. History says
P. when he was given the cup of hemlock
Q. who were standing around him
R. continued to talk to his friends
S. that Socrates
6. as he drank it.
(A) S P R Q (B) S R Q P (C) S Q P R (D) S Q R P

15. 1. I do not know
P. what I have done
Q. but to myself I appear like a child
R. who is picking up pebbles on the shore
S. what others think of
6. whilst the great ocean of truth lies unexplored before me.
(A) P S R Q (B) S P Q R (C) P S Q R (D) S P R Q

16. 1. Dr Rajendra Prasad
P. who were the backbone of the country
Q. who was very fond of reading books
R. should cultivate the habit of reading books
S. said that students
6. which are the treasure of knowledge.
(A) S Q P R (B) Q R S P (C) S R P Q (D) Q S P R

17. 1. I felt secure
P. but it blew very hard all that night, and in the morning,
Q. and lay with all my wealth about me
R. when I looked out,
S. when I got home to my little tent
6. no more ship was to be seen.
(A) S Q P R (B) R Q P S (C) S P Q R (D) R S P Q

18. 1. Gandhiji was the apostle of non-violence.
P. This he felt was the panacea for all our problems.
Q. He rather believed in the application of moral force.
R. He abhorred the use of force.
S. We must live by the ideals he lived and died for.

6. That will be our greatest homage to Gandhiji.
(A) Q R P S (B) R Q P S (C) R P Q S (D) Q P R S

19. 1. Sachin Tandulker went to the crease
P. to the delight of the spectators
Q. after the fall of the fifth wicket
R. He scored a breezy century.
S. He negotiated the turning ball with rare skill.
6. He thus pulled the Indian team out of a trying situation.
(A) Q P R S (B) P R Q S (C) R Q S P (D) Q S R P

20. 1. India led the battle of freedom against imperialism.
P. We championed the cause of other countries.
Q. This novel technique brought us success.
R. We fought it with the weapon of non-violence.
S. We are happy that they achieved freedom.
6. We are, in fact, the torch-bearers of freedom.
(A) R P S Q (B) R Q P S (C) P R Q S (D) R Q S P

21. 1. She conducted me to her hut.
P. Then she found me hungry.
Q. She caused it to be half-boiled upon some embers.
R. She told me to remain there for the night.
S. She procured from outside a fine fish.
6. She then gave it to me for supper.
(A) P R S Q (B) R S Q P (C) S Q P R (D) R P S Q

22. 1. One day Bassanio came to Antonio
P. he wished to repair his fortune
Q. whom he dearly loved
R. and told him that
S. by a wealthy marriage with a lady
6. whose father had left her sole heiress to a large estate.
(A) R P S Q (B) Q R P S (C) R P Q S (D) Q P R S

23. 1. A band of ruffians entered a village.
P. They stole the cattle of the villagers.
Q. They entered the village at night.
R. Some of them were escaped convicts.
S. They were well-armed.
6. The villagers were asleep.
(A) P R Q S (B) S Q R P (C) Q P R S (D) R P Q S

24. 1. We are told that,
P. for the purpose of investigating the cause of a singular echo
Q. from his playfellows to a vault in St James' Fields,
R. while still a mere child
S. he stole away
6. which he had observed there.
(A) R S Q P (B) S R Q P (C) P S R Q (D) S P Q R

25. 1. When Abraham sat at his tent door,
P. stooping and leaning on his staff,
Q. coming towards him,
R. weary with age and travel,
S. he espied an old man,
6. who was a hundred years of age.
(A) S Q R P (B) P R S Q (C) S P R Q (D) S R P Q

26. 1. I consider human soul without education
P. which shows none of its inherent beauties,
Q. like marble in the quarry,
R. fetches out the colours,
S. until the skill of the polisher
6. and makes the surface shine.
(A) Q S R P (B) P Q S R (C) P Q R S (D) Q P S R

27. 1. While I was doing this,
P. though very calm,
Q. which I had left on the seashore,
R. I found the tide began to flow,
S. and I had the mortification to see my coat, shirt and waistcoat,
6. swim away.
(A) R P S Q (B) P R S Q (C) S R Q P (D) P S Q R

28. 1. A fox saw a crow sitting on a tree with a piece of cheese in his mouth.
P. The crow was pleased by the flattery.
Q. He wanted to have the cheese.
R. The crow began to sing.
S. He praised the crow's singing.
6. The plan of the fox clicked for the crow dropped the cheese.
(A) Q S P R (B) S Q P R (C) S Q R P (D) R Q S P

29. 1. Bonaparte was born a Corsican.
P. He started as a Corporal.
Q. He joined the Republican army.
R. He distinguished himself at school.
S. He became the head of the army of Italy.
6. He was proclaimed Emperor.
(A) P R Q S (B) R Q P S (C) Q R P S (D) S Q P R

30. 1. It was the scorching heat of May.
P. He found a bag.
Q. He opened the bag.
R. A famished traveller was toiling over the desert.
S. He was highly delighted.
6. He found fresh fruits and costly pearls.
(A) R P S Q (B) P Q S R (C) R S P Q (D) R Q P S

31. 1. The rain fell steadily for several days.
P. They fled to the higher ground.
Q. The terrified villagers abandoned their homes.
R. The river overflowed its bank.
S. Soon the flood receded.
6. The villagers were able to return.
(A) Q R P S (B) R P Q S (C) R Q P S (D) Q P R S

32. 1. I saw two beautiful birds.
P. They were sitting just opposite to each other.
Q. They were indulging in a singing competition.
R. Both of them were of deep red colour.
S. They were sitting on the topmost branch of a tree.
6. I was charmed by the sight.
(A) R S P Q (B) S P R Q (C) R P Q S (D) Q R P S

33. I. I was musing.
P. The rock was not far from me.
Q. He was in the dress of a shepherd.
R. I suddenly cast my eyes towards the summit of a rock.
S. I discovered a person on the rock.
6. He was in reality a being of superior nature.
(A) S Q R P (B) R P S Q (C) R S P Q (D) R Q P S

34. 1. A blind man carried a lantern in his hand.
P. He was walking along one night.
Q. He was asked to explain
R. He carried a pitcher on his shoulder.
S. He met a thoughtless young fellow.
6. why he carried a lantern, although he was blind.
(A) R P S Q (B) R S P Q (C) P R S Q (D) P S R Q

Directions: *In each of the following items, there is a sentence in which some parts have been jumbled. Rearrange the parts, which are denoted as* **P, Q, R, S,** *so that the reordered sentence makes a coherent sequence.*

35. Many people think that
P. to keep flowers and plants in a sick-room
Q. it is harmful
R. especially overnight
S. because of some valid reasons
(A) P Q R S (B) R P Q S (C) Q P R S (D) S R P Q

36. The amount of oxygen that plants use is small,
P. it is not likely to affect
Q. in a modern, ventilated sick-room
R. the supply of air
S. however
(A) S P R Q (B) R P Q S (C) P Q R S (D) Q P R S

37. Even when the government realizes
P. the importance of a plentiful supply
Q. of trees, it is difficult for it
R. to persuade the villager
S. to see this
(A) P Q R S (B) S R P Q (C) Q P S R (D) R S P Q

38. Unless the government
P. the forests will
Q. or can educate the people
R. slowly disappear
S. has a good system of control
(A) P Q R S (B) Q S R P (C) R P S Q (D) S Q P R

39. The emotional appeal
P. the British conscience
Q. never completely
R. of imperialism
S. stilled
(A) P Q R S (B) Q R P S (C) R Q S P (D) S P R Q

Directions: *Rearrange five sentences* A, B, C, D, E *in the proper sequence so as to form a meaningful paragraph, and then answer the questions given below them.*

40. (a) He fell over it.
(b) He was coming into the room.
(c) Still he managed to hold the tray firmly.
(d) He did not see the stool.
(e) Santosh was carrying a tray.

1. Which of the following will be the second sentence?
(A) a (B) b (C) c (D) d (E) e

2. Which of the following will be the fourth sentence?
(A) a (B) b (C) c (D) d (E) e

3 Which of the following will be the fifth sentence?
(A) a (B) b (C) c (D) d (E) e

4. Which of the following will be the first sentence?
(A) a (B) b (C) c (D) d (E) e

5. Which of the following will be the third sentence?
(A) a (B) b (C) c (D) d (E) e

41. (a) The house is quite old.
(b) Through it I can see a woman seated at a table.
(c) Far away in a little street there is a poor house.
(d) Her face is thin and worn.
(e) One of the windows is open.

1. Which of the following will be the first sentence?
(A) a (B) b (C) c (D) d (E) e

2. Which of the following will be the second sentence?
(A) a (B) b (C) c (D) d (E) e

3. Which of the following will be the third sentence?
(A) a (B) b (C) c (D) d (E) e

4. Which of the following will be the fourth sentence?
(A) a (B) b (C) c (D) d (E) e

5. Which of the following will be the fifth sentence?
(A) a (B) b (C) c (D) d (E) e

ANSWER

1. (C)	8. (A)	15. (B)	22. (A)	29. (B)
2. (B)	9. (C)	16. (D)	23. (B)	30. (A)
3. (A)	10. (A)	17. (A)	24. (A)	31. (C)
4. (C)	11. (C)	18. (B)	25. (C)	32. (A)
5. (D)	12. (A)	19. (D)	26. (D)	33. (B)
6. (A)	13. (B)	20. (B)	27. (A)	34. (A)
7. (B)	14. (A)	21. (D)	28. (A)	
35. (C)	36. (A)	37. (A)	38. (D)	39. (C).
40. 1. (B)	2. (A)	3. (C)	4. (E)	5. (D).
41. 1. (C)	2. (A)	3. (E)	4. (B)	5. (D .

Exercise

Directions: *In these questions, the first and the last parts of the sentence are numbered as* 1 *and* 6. *The rest of the sentence is split into four parts and named* P, Q, R *and* S. *These four parts are not given in their proper order. Read the sentence and find out which combination is correct.*

1. 1. It is the feeling of ectasy
P. like Wordsworth
Q. values supremely;
R. which Blake,
S. and the presence of that feeling
6. is for him the sign of inspiration and truth.
(A) R P Q S (B) R Q P S (C) S R P Q (D) R P S Q

2. 1. Literature
P. as regarded by Schlegel and Taine
Q. who desire to help themselves
R. is a social product.
S. It is circulated, or stored, for the use of all
6. from the sum total of finished thought-work available in men's writing.
(A) R P S Q (B) P R S Q (C) R P Q S (D) P R Q S

3. 1. The impression
P. are bound one to another by inner necessity
Q. all assume their place in a group, elements in one situation
R. which the artist presents
S. Each is enriched by the presence and pressure of all the rest;
6. which commands our attention.
(A) R Q P S (B) P R S Q (C) P R Q S (D) R P S Q

4. 1. Shakespeare can be acted.
P. with a living audience before them,
Q. He may come at any time
R. so that he stands or falls
S. under the hands of a company of actors and producer,
6. for what he is worth to a modern playgoer.
(A) Q S P R (B) Q S R P (C) Q R S P (D) Q P S R

5. 1. Aristotle's subject was the Greek world
P. without passion and without prejudice
Q. His method was to analyse it reasonably,
R. as he found it
S. He had a genius for distinction and classification.
6. He was perfectly detached.
(A) Q R P S (B) Q R S P (C) R P S Q (D) R Q P S

6. 1. Now that only is a happy choice
P. the more must our imagination add;
Q. which allows the imagination free scope.
R. and the more our imagination adds,
S. The longer we gaze,
6. the more we must believe we see.
(A) Q S P R (B) Q R S P (C) Q S R P (D) R P Q S

7. 1. The capacity to discern
P. is presupposed in the poet
Q. but to communicate it to an audience.
R. which is of universal interest
S. But it is his job not only to see truth poetically,
6. He must, therefore, study the means of communicating it.
(A) P R S Q (B) R P S Q (C) R P Q S (D) P R Q S

8. 1. Just as an active young man, in the years following puberty,
P. and welcomes with open arms
Q. begins to purge his mind
R. the questionings and reconstructions of philosophy,
S. of the second-hand ideas imposed on him in childhood,
6. so it was in the storm and stress of the romantic upheaval.
(A) Q R P S (B) Q S P R (C) Q P S R (D) R Q P S

9. 1. Art implies language, and intelligible language
P. of words or paint or marble or musical sounds

Q. whether it be in the medium
R. does not matter.
S. The outward reality of this language
6. is the common ground, the link, between the creator and the appreciator.

(A) Q P R S (B) P Q R S (C) Q R P S (D) S R Q P

10. 1. When we distinguish between art and morals,
P. from other kinds of life;
Q. the life of art is in its nature different
R. we do not mean that
S. that it is made up of ideas peculiarly its own
6. which dwell aloof in some starry world reserved for poets, painters, or musicians

(A) R Q P S (B) P Q R S (C) R P Q S (D) R Q S P

Answers: 1. (A) 2. (B) 3. (D) 4. (A) 5. (D) 6. (A) 7. (B) 8. (B) 9. (A) 10. (A)

CHAPTER 19

Comprehension

What Is Comprehension?

Comprehension means 'understanding'. Not a superficial understanding but an understanding in depth. With all the ramifications of thoughts. Both expressed and implied. Sometimes thoughts are so embedded in the cobweb of words that it becomes rather difficult to follow, at first glance, the drift of thought. An average student may read the passage and yet fail to grasp the main ideas. Mere skimming over the surface is not of much help. For, language is the art of concealing thought. A proper understanding of the given passage, therefore, requires, among other things, a fairly good command over English, a keen power of observation, a quick understanding of the central idea, a knack to detect error in logic, a quick reading habit, a sufficient stock of words and a little bit of imagination.

Method of Comprehension

- Read the given passage with purpose and imagination. A careful reading will help you enter into the spirit of the passage.
- Read the passage once again, concentrating on the drift of thought. Notice the key-words and see how the passage is developed.
- Read with an open mind, with purposeful concentrated attention even if the topic is new or not to your liking.
- Read all the questions carefully lest you should miss the spirit of any question.
- When you have read all the questions, read through the passage, bearing the questions in mind.
- Answer the questions methodically, one by one. If you are bogged down by a particular question, don't waste your time over it. Switch over to another question, leaving the space for the question unanswered. Sometimes the question that appears tricky at first attempt becomes easier as you answer other questions.
- Keep in mind the qualifying words such as *all, none, never, always, sometimes, wholly, forever, least* while selecting the right answers.

- Follow the instruction in letter and spirit. Write answer in as many words or lines as you are asked to do.
- Check the questions asked and the answers given. Avoid verbosity and repetition. Your answers should be precise and to the point.

Passages and Questions

Any type of passage—narrative, or descriptive, or discursive, or dramatic, or reflective—can be set for comprehension. The subject of the given passage may be new to you. You may not concur with the views expressed. But you have to shed your prejudices, kindle your interest in the subject and read it with an open mind. You cannot enter into the spirit of the passage unless you read with concentrated attention. Lacklustre approach or for that matter casual reading won't be of much help in giving brief and pointed answers to the questions asked.

The questions asked aim at testing your power of observation, your ability to think about the passage and make an imaginative response to it. The questions can be about the subject-matter of the passage, its style or vocabulary. The questions framed may be subjective or objective, the latter being more popular nowadays. There are, in fact, a number of ways of asking questions—some straight, some teasing—to test your power of reasoning and thinking.

Let us take a few examples to help you know how questions are put.

Example I. Pandit Nehru, the son of Motilal Nehru, was born in Allahabad.

Q. 1. Who was Motilal Nehru?

Q. 2. Choose the right word to fill in the blank space.

Motilal Nehru was Pandit Nehru's....

(a) brother ☐ (b) uncle ☐
(c) cousin ☐ (d) father ☐

Example II. The earth, which is a planet, moves round the sun.

Q. 1. What is the earth?
Q. 2. What does the earth do?
Q. 3. What moves round the sun?
Q. 4. Say which of these is correct.

(A) The earth moves round the planet. ☐
(B) The sun moves round the earth. ☐
(C) The earth moves round the sun. ☐

Example. III. Post-independent India has made much progress.

Q. *Say which of these is correct.*

(A) India made much progress before independence. ☐
(B) India made much progress after independence. ☐
(C) India made much progress a hundred years ago. ☐

Note: You must have a sufficient stock of vocabulary. If you don't know the meaning of the word *post-independent* (after independence) you really can't make the correct choice.

Example IV. When the father came home, he found that the children who had been left alone, had behaved quite well while he was away.

Q. 1. *Tick the right word.*

(i) The man who came home was

(A) brother ☐ (B) uncle ☐

(C) father ☐ (D) niece ☐

(ii) The children were with their

(A) parents ☐ (B) father ☐

(C) mother ☐ (D) uncle ☐

Q. 2. *Tick which of these is True and which is False.*

(A) The children had behaved well in the absence of their father.

True/False

(B) The children had behaved well in the presence of their father.

True/False

(C) The children had behaved well in the absence of their teacher.

True/False

Exercise

Tick the right choice.

1. The wolf and the lamb went into the forest, but only the former returned. 'Former' in the above sentence means the

(A) wolf ☐ (B) lamb ☐

(C) earlier ☐ (D) peasant ☐

2. 'Am I responsible for your failures?', asked Mr Singh. Mr Singh suggested that

(A) he was responsible ☐ (B) he was not responsible ☐

(C) he had failed ☐ (D) he was a responsible person ☐

3. The money is yet to be recovered from the ailing doctor. According to the sentence the doctor

(A) has paid ☐ (B) is missing ☐

(C) has been paid ☐ (D) has not paid ☐

4. An Englishman killed his mother for trying to save an Indian's life.

The person trying to save the Indian's life

(A) was an English woman ☐ (B) was saved ☐

(C) was killed ☐ (D) was an Indian ☐

5. More serious from the parents' point of view than the increasing expenditure on children's education is finding a good school. The more serious thing is

(A) the parents' point of view ☐ (B) finding a good school ☐

(C) children's education ☐ (D) increasing expenditure ☐

EXAMPLES TO BE WORKED OUT

Directions: *Read the following passages and answer the questions given below.*

(1)

Three-fourths of the surface of our planet is covered by the sea, which both separates and unites the various races of mankind. The sea is the great highway along which man may journey at his will, the great road that has no walls or hedges hemming it in, and that nobody has to keep it in good repair with the aid of pickaxes and barrels of tar and steamrollers. The sea appeals to man's love of the perilous and the unknown, to his love of conquest, his love of knowledge, and his love of gold. Its green, and grey, and blue, and purple waters call to him and bid him fare forth in quest of fresh fields. Beyond their horizons he has found danger and death, glory and gain.

In some great continents such as America and Australia, there are towns and villages many thousands of miles from the coast, whose children have never seen or heard—or felt—the waves of the sea. But in the British Isles it is nowhere much more than a hundred miles from the most inland spot. The love of the sea is in the very blood of the British people.

1. How much of our planet is not covered by the sea?
   (A) Half of the planet
   (B) One-fourth of the planet
   (C) More than one can measure
   (D) Three-fourths of the planet
2. The sea helps a man
   (A) in building great roads
   (B) in making journey at his will all around the world
   (C) in raising walls on the coast
   (D) in clearing hedges hemming the sea-water
3. In what way does the sea appeal to man?
   (A) It helps man take lessons from the perilous waves and stay at home.
   (B) It invites man to amass gold hidden under the sea-water.
   (C) It makes man wax eloquent about the futility of adventurous deeds.
   (D) It bids man to venture out in quest of new places.
4. The children have not responded to the call of the sea
   (A) in remote towns and villages of America
   (B) in Great Britain
   (C) in the Antarctica
   (D) in India

5. The sea-route is kept in order
(A) by steamrollers (B) by pickaxes
(C) by regular repair (D) by none of these

6. What suitable title would you suggest?
(A) Treasure trove of knowledge
(B) Man's quest for the unknown
(C) The irresistible call of the sea
(D) The infatuation of the Britishers for the sea

7. The sea has been compared to
(A) a steamroller (B) hedges hemming it
(C) the great highway (D) a spacecraft in motion

8. The sea has a special attraction for the people of
(A) America (B) Britain (C) Australia (D) India

(2)

Forty-five years ago this week, India woke to freedom. Hope and idealism filled the air. The people, proud of their heritage and their dreams, took the vow to build a new India. Independence meant something to them as Jawaharlal Nehru spoke about India's tryst with destiny.

Forty-five years later despair has replaced hope and cynicism has overtaken the dreams. The nation is passing through a period of uncertainty and drift which, if not halted, can lead to dangerous consequences, possibly chaos.

What can freedom mean to those who even now do not get two meals a day; or to those who have bonded their children to slavery to weave carpets in Mirzapur or to the landless who continue to work on other people's lands for the right to live a bony existence? What can freedom mean to those who have to sleep under the flyovers in big cities or stand in endless queues at employment exchanges where promise of a job is punched on the card year after year.

Some promised Ram Rajya, others socialism. 'Garibi Hatao' was the name of another game that was played on the people. But the fact is that despite 45 years of Independence our people are one of the poorest in the world. We still have the largest number of the illiterates in the world. People still die because of lack of health care or because of their inability to buy a handful of grain. Poverty line is subject of trendy seminars and workshops organised by those who do not know what it means to be poor.

At the the time of Independence our leaders dreamt the right dreams. They wanted to build a strong, united India where no one would have to beg for food, where no one would suffer because of accident of birth, where no one would kill another simply because he speaks another language or believes in another God. That was another day, distant and perhaps on a different time scale.

What we see now is an India worried whether it can survive as one nation. The accident of birth still decides the rest of a citizen's life and of his children. People continue to kill others for passions that ought to have been spent on building a life of harmony and peace.

1. What is the main idea of the passage?
   (A) India achieves freedom (B) Poverty—a festering sore
   (C) Emerging social pattern (D) The rich exploit the poor
2. How do intelligentsia react to the prevailing situation?
   (A) They like the prevailing situation.
   (B) They are weary of the prevailing situation.
   (C) They plead for socio-economic revolution.
   (D) They simply talk about it in seminars to show their concern.
3. Where is new-found freedom dragging India to?
   (A) The land of dreams
   (B) The dungeon of despair and despondency
   (C) Economic affluence
   (D) Confusion and chaos
4. Which of these will be the most appropriate title?
   (A) Success of Indian democracy
   (B) India, steeped in poverty
   (C) Chances of employment in India
   (D) Achievements and failures of Independent India
5. Freedom has no meaning for those who
   (A) wallow in wealth (B) live in style
   (C) work round the clock (D) do not get two meals a day
6. The post-independent India is characterized by
   (A) optimism and hopefulness (B) rosy dreams
   (C) despair and cynicism (D) doubts and misgivings
7. The leaders at the time of Independence dreamt of an India
   (A) free from disease
   (B) strong, united and free from communal and religious strife
   (C) free from superstitions
   (D) militarily strong and economically sound
8. The last paragraph ends on
   (A) a note of optimism (B) a note of pessimism
   (C) a note of cautious optimism (D) None of these

(3)

Broken friendship may be repaired but the break will always show. Friendship is a precious thing—too precious a treasure to be carelessly broken or thrown away. The world handles the word 'friend' lightly; its real, true, deeper meaning is forgotten.

Your friend is one who appreciates you—your faults as well as your

virtues. He understands and sympathises with your defeats and victorie your aims and ideals, your joys and temptations, your hopes and disa pointments, as no one else does or can. It is your friend to whom you tu for counsel, for comfort, for praise; he may not be as learned as some or wise as others.

Blessed is the man or woman into whose life has come the beauty ar power of such a friendship. Prize it well. Do all in your power to keep su a friendship unbroken. Avoid the break, for when it comes it cannot l mended and the jarring note mars the harmony.

1. In what way will you judge your sincere friend?
   (A) by his appearance
   (B) by the way he appreciates your virtues
   (C) by the way he pinpoints your demerits
   (D) by the way he appreciates your faults and virtues
   (E) by no measures discussed above
2. A true friend is one who
   (A) shares with another all the joys of life
   (B) encourages you in your hour of trials and tribulations
   (C) deserts you
   (D) shows lip sympathy
   (E) shares your defeats and victories, aims and ideals, joys an temptations
3. We owe our blessed life to
   (A) the experience of moments of loneliness
   (B) a friend's constant companionship
   (C) the power and beauty of friendship
   (D) the feeling that there is someone to humour us
   (E) None of the things mentioned so far
4. Why do we turn to sincere friends?
   (A) We turn to sincere friends for physical support.
   (B) We turn to them for financial help.
   (C) We look to them for their magnanimity.
   (D) We turn to them for their paeans of praise.
   (E) We turn to them for counsel, comfort and words of cheer.
5. Friendship ought not to be broken. Why?
   (A) Because it will foster discord
   (B) Because it will make life troublesome
   (C) Because it will rob life of all its vitality and vivacity
   (D) Because it will foster pessimistic attitude towards life
   (E) Because broken friendship cannot be mended

(4)

It is no doubt true that we cannot go through life without sorrow. Ther can be no sunshine without a shade. We must not complain that roses hav

orns, but rather be grateful that thorns bear flowers. Our existence here so complex that we must expect much sorrow and suffering. Many people stress and torment themselves about the mystery of existence. But though a good man may at times be angry with the world, it is certain that o man, who did his duty in it, was ever discontented with the world. The orld is like a looking glass; if you smile, it smiles; if you frown, it frowns ack. If you look at it through a red glass, all seems red and rosy; if through blue, all blue; if through a smoked one, all dull and dingy. Always try then look at the bright side of things; almost everything in the world has a right side. There are some persons, whose smile, the sound of whose voice, hose very presence is like a ray of sunshine and brightens the whole room. reet everybody with a bright smile, kind words and pleasant welcome. It not enough to love those who are near and dear to us. We must show that e do so. While, however, we should be grateful and enjoy to the full the nnumerable blessings of life, we cannot expect to have no sorrows or nxieties. Life has been described as a comedy to those who think, and a ragedy to those who feel. It is indeed tragedy at times and a comedy very ften, but as a rule it is what we choose to make it.

. Why should man be grateful to thorns?
(A) because thorns prick the body
(B) because thorns bear flowers
(C) because thorns symbolize the woes of life
(D) because there are no flowers without thorns
(E) None of these

. The complexity of human existence is due mainly to one of the following:
(A) joys and sorrows
(B) distress caused by the mystery of existence
(C) discontentment with the world
(D) haunting sense of despair the failure of life causes
(E) None of these

. The world is a looking glass because
(A) it reflects the joys of life
(B) it expresses the sufferings of life
(C) it reflects the smiles and tears of the onlooker
(D) it shows the inner certitude of man
(E) it reflects none of these

. A man who looks at the dark side of life is
(A) an optimist (B) a sadist (C) a pessimist
(D) a mysogynist (E) None of these

. Life is a tragedy to those
(A) who always keep on smiling
(B) who laugh with the world
(C) who weep when others weep

(D) who feel
(E) None of these

6. The writer pleads for
(A) exuding warmth of love and fellow-feeling
(B) doing one's duty sincerely
(C) conforming to the codes of conduct
(D) taking a second look at the panorama of life

(5)

The achievement of science in the twentieth century has been very great. Its influence can be felt in every sphere of life. From the small pins and needles to the huge iron sheets and joints, most of the things we require for our everyday use, come out of factories where scientific principles are utilized for practical ends. Science has enabled man to bring forces of nature under control and to use them for his own advantage. It has brought the distant parts of the world closer together. Our knowledge of the universe has been much widened on account of the untiring efforts of the astronomers like Jeans and Eddington. Remarkable cures of human diseases have been possible owing to the discovery of some wonderful medicines.

1. The main idea of the passage is
(A) The impact of science can be felt in every sphere of life.
(B) Science is an anathema.
(C) Nothing is beyond the purview of science.
(D) Science can work miracles.

2. The mode of approach is
(A) logical (B) anatomical
(C) descriptive (D) expository

3. What has enabled man to harness the forces of nature to the advantage of mankind?
(A) arts (B) oratory (C) bravery (D) science

4. Science has proved a great boon for
(A) scientists (B) artists (C) explorers (D) mankind

5. The most appropriate title for the passage will be
(A) Science is a curse. (B) Science, a great boon
(C) Achievements of Science (D) None of these

(6)

Some people consider that man is becoming the slave of the machines. Certainly machines are playing an ever-increasing part in our lives. Let us hope that they will never become more important than the men they are invented to serve. Charlie Chaplin, in his film 'Modern Times' drew attention to this danger. In the film he got a job in a factory that used mass production methods. He had to stand by a machine with a spanner in his

hand. An endless belt passed in front of him carrying slowly an endless line of articles. As each one passed, he tightened one nut on one bolt with his spanner. His work was done with one turn of the wrist repeated throughout the day. Very soon his mind became affected and the film shows the amusing things which he did as a result of his mental disorder. Although it was funny, the film had a serious side. It showed that the kind of work which many people do, far from giving them pride and pleasure, is more likely to fit them for the lunatic asylum.

We must all hope that means will be found to retain the advantages arising out of mass production, while at the same time giving the worker some of the pride and pleasure of the old craftsmen.

1. Who is becoming the slave of machines?
   (A) Charlie Chaplin (B) Americans
   (C) Man (D) None of these
2. The appropriate title for the passage will be:
   (A) Machines and their role in human life
   (B) Machines and their bad effects
   (C) Machines save time.
   (D) None of these
3. Which of these is in tune with the thoughts of the writer?
   (A) Work is worship.
   (B) Such works as do not give one pride and pleasure make him fit for the lunatic asylum.
   (C) Work makes our body strong.
   (D) None of these
4. Which of these is correct in the context of the given passage?
   (A) Machines are more important than the men they are intended to serve.
   (B) Machines play a pivotal role in our lives.
   (C) The mundane works that people do make them lunatics.
   (D) There is no pride and pleasure in the work that men do.
5. The last paragraph underlines the need for
   (A) co-ordination between manual work and machine work
   (B) retaining the pride and pleasure of the old craftsmen with the added advantage of mass production
   (C) shunning machines and reverting to the manual works
   (D) giving top priority to machines to the exclusion of everything else

(7)

What is a democratic government to do in a country where people are steeped in ignorance and superstition, where there is opposition or resistance to even mild reforms from vested interests in society? It can be said that if the government is to go by consent or consensus it will not be able

hand. An endless belt passed in front of him carrying slowly an endless line of articles. As each one passed, he tightened one nut on one bolt with his spanner. His work was done with one turn of the wrist repeated throughout the day. Very soon his mind became affected and the film shows the amusing things which he did as a result of his mental disorder. Although it was funny, the film had a serious side. It showed that the kind of work which many people do, far from giving them pride and pleasure, is more likely to fit them for the lunatic asylum.

We must all hope that means will be found to retain the advantages arising out of mass production, while at the same time giving the worker some of the pride and pleasure of the old craftsmen.

1. Who is becoming the slave of machines?
   (A) Charlie Chaplin (B) Americans
   (C) Man (D) None of these
2. The appropriate title for the passage will be:
   (A) Machines and their role in human life
   (B) Machines and their bad effects
   (C) Machines save time.
   (D) None of these
3. Which of these is in tune with the thoughts of the writer?
   (A) Work is worship.
   (B) Such works as do not give one pride and pleasure make him fit for the lunatic asylum.
   (C) Work makes our body strong.
   (D) None of these
4. Which of these is correct in the context of the given passage?
   (A) Machines are more important than the men they are intended to serve.
   (B) Machines play a pivotal role in our lives.
   (C) The mundane works that people do make them lunatics.
   (D) There is no pride and pleasure in the work that men do.
5. The last paragraph underlines the need for
   (A) co-ordination between manual work and machine work
   (B) retaining the pride and pleasure of the old craftsmen with the added advantage of mass production
   (C) shunning machines and reverting to the manual works
   (D) giving top priority to machines to the exclusion of everything else

(7)

What is a democratic government to do in a country where people are steeped in ignorance and superstition, where there is opposition or resistance to even mild reforms from vested interests in society? It can be said that if the government is to go by consent or consensus it will not be able

to do anything. Could the government ever get the consent or consensus of the people for abolition of untouchability? But has untouchability been really abolished? Frankly speaking, even now the code of Manu is in operation, the large part of code thus prepared.

No law, perhaps, can come into full operation unless it is acceptable to the people. And, it is not necessary to say that acceptability cannot come without conviction. The government had been taking measure after measure to change the socio-economic structure to remove disparities, social and economic. Not that all the measures have gone in vain. Feudalism has been abolished; gates of universities, legislatures, government service etc. have been thrown open to all castes and communities, exploitation of the weaker section of the people has been considerably reduced.

But there has been no change in the outlook of the people. Politicians and administrators still behave like feudal lords: corruption, favouritism and nepotism have not shown any sign of abatement; faith in caste system and all that it may stand for has not weakened. In one word, independence, democracy etc. have not shattered the age-old beliefs and conviction. No wonder the blind is leading the blind.

1. A democratic country cannot function properly where people are
   (A) educated
   (B) steeped in ignorance and superstition
   (C) optimistic
   (D) lenient
2. The writer pleads for the abolition of
   (A) untouchability
   (B) favouritism and nepotism
   (C) democracy
   (D) the code of Manu
3. Nepotism means
   (A) favouritism
   (B) corruption
   (C) feudalism
   (D) undue favour shown to one's relatives
4. The most appropriate title for this passage will be
   (A) Democratic government: an appraisal
   (B) Worth of consensus in democracy
   (C) Abolition of untouchability
   (D) None of these
5. The government has failed to
   (A) abolish feudalism
   (B) abolish untouchability
   (C) ensure the entry of people of all castes and communities into universities and government services
   (D) stop the exploitation of the business class
6. The writer deplores
   (A) the growing incidence of violence
   (B) caste-ridden society reeking with corruption

(C) the apathy of people
(D) vulgar show of wealth

7. Which of these is not true in the context of the passage?
(A) Notwithstanding the laudable government measures the age-old ills of the society still plague the nation.
(B) Independence and democracy have failed to change the outlook of people.
(C) The socio-economic scenario of India is depressing.
(D) The old beliefs no longer hold sway over the mind of people.

(8)

When you sit in your local cinema hall enjoying the film that is being flashed on the screen in front of you, do you ever think of how films are made? Hundreds, perhaps thousands, of people may have spent a year or even longer working very hard to produce a film which lasts a mere hour or two. Film making is nowadays a very big and complicated industry involving large sums of money and occupying many hundreds of skilled technicians as well as actors and actresses. What happens when a film company decides to shoot a film? There must, of course, be a story. This may be based on a novel or a play, or it may be specially written for the film. From the story, whatever it is, a shooting script has to be prepared, which shows all the scenes, the order in which they are to be photographed or shot, the way the actors are to speak and move, the position of the camera for each scene, and so on. Then the producer and a director are appointed. The producer engages the actors and actresses, decides which scenes are to be taken in the studio and which outside or on 'location', and makes all the preliminary preparations. The director is the man who tells the actors what to do, and shows them how to act each scene. It is his job to interpret the script and translate the author's words and instructions into a series of living scenes.

1. Film industry is a big industry because
(A) we enjoy a film
(B) actors and actresses are highly paid
(C) large sums of money and hundreds of technicians are involved
(D) films are time-consuming

2. The story of the film is based on
(A) actors and actresses
(B) a novel or a play
(C) the 'shooting script'
(D) the director's life

3. A film is flashed on the screen
(A) for an hour or two
(B) for a year or even longer
(C) for as long as we wish
(D) for a few minutes

4. The director's job is to
(A) engage the actors and actresses
(B) write the story
(C) interpret the script
(D) hire the producer

5. The producer is the persons who
(A) tells the actors what to do (B) signs papers
(C) makes all the preliminary preparations
(D) None of the above

(9)

In my village a fair is held every year. If I happen to be in my villa on the day of the fair, I *make it a point* to attend it. I attended it this ye and I *retain* very happy impressions of all the sights and sounds that enjoyed.

It was a cloudy day and so I went to the fair on foot. On the way I sa a number of villagers, dressed in their best clothes, going to the fair. Th appeared to be in high spirits. They were accompanied by their childr who wore turbans of *dark* red colour. As I approached the fair, I heard mingled noise. A number of booths and stalls constituting the bazars of t fair, met my eyes. Every villager was buying sweets. The children seem to be going crazy about sweets.

In the midst of a *vast* crowd I saw a rope-dancer amusing the audien by keeping his balance wonderfully on the rope. The villagers clapped the hands. A little further I saw the inevitable juggler. He was accompanied b two children; one of whom played on the flute, while the other beat a sma drum. The juggler was holding the villagers spell-bound by his tricks. T simple-minded villagers looked at him with open-mouthed wonder a went almost delirious with joy at every new trick. To me, of course, mo of the tricks appeared *stale* and dull but majority of the onlookers a plauded him over and over again. Under the shade of a big tree childr were enjoying themselves by riding the merry-go-round and by flyi kites. In one corner I saw a gambling booth where the *ignorant* peasan wishing to make a little money, were being cheated of the little sum th had with them. I did not like it and muttering an oath went on.

Evening came and the villagers soon began to disperse. All of the carried something or the other tied or wrapped in a piece of cloth hangi from their shoulders. I, too, bought some sweets for my younger brothe and *made for* my home.

1. What is the meaning of 'make it a point'?
(A) note down (B) try
(C) list (D) ensure

2. Which of the following was disliked by the author?
(A) the little sum the villagers had (B) tricks of the juggler
(C) the gambling booth (D) the fact that he was cheat

3. Who were crazy about sweets?
(A) villagers (B) children
(C) younger brothers (D) not mentioned

Which of the following is NOT true in the context of the passage?
(A) The fair is held every year.
(B) The villagers wore good clothes to go to the fair.
(C) The rope-dancer was balancing to the drum beat.
(D) The author bought some sweets.

Who had worn the turbans?
(A) the juggler (B) the villagers
(C) children of villagers (D) not mentioned

What is the meaning of 'made for', as used in the passage?
(A) prepare (B) about to
(C) invent (D) moved towards

(10)

A British survey found that 44 per cent of the firms, which started to se robots, met with initial failure and 22 per cent abandoned them together, mainly because of inadequate technological know-how and ills at all plant levels.

Robotization is, by and large, a viable proposition. The machines can ork round the clock, raise output, protect quality and industrial competiveness.

One robot can replace between two and five production workers, while oviding cheaper labour. In the US car industry, a man-hour costs around 23 but a robot-hour costs only $ 6.

Certain jobs, mostly simple or hazardous ones, are irretrievably lost robotics. Thus spot welders, press operators, spray painters, cleaners, achine loaders, grinding and polishing machine operators are endanered species.

In the second para, the word 'robotization' is used in the sense of
(A) introducing the use of robots
(B) marketing robots
(C) making robots
(D) total replacement of human beings with robots

Robots are a substitute for
(A) production workers (B) planners
(C) motor cars (D) any kind of labour

In its context the expression 'endangered species' means:
(A) Robots might destroy the workers mentioned.
(B) Workers like spot welders are in danger.
(C) Robots may replace the workers in future.
(D) We may not get them after a few years.

In the first para the writer says that in view of initial failure:
(A) Half of the 44% of firms which started using robots stopped the practice.

(B) 50% of the firms which started using robots abandoned them.
(C) 22% of the total number of firms which started using robots abandoned their use.
(D) British companies stopped the use of robots.

5. The expression 'a viable proposition' means
(A) a workable idea
(B) an imaginative idea
(C) a fanciful idea
(D) an unworkable idea

(11)

The report that the Union Cabinet considered the draft of a bill to prohibit the denigration of women in photographs, advertisements and films, is welcome. There has been for some time growing criticism of the projection of women in these three media. Advertisements in the print media, as well as in films and television, frequently rely on feminine sex appeal to attract attention to the products or to suggest that these products make Casanovas of ordinary mortals. Things are even worse in films. Some of these unabashedly rely on sex for box-office success, showing scantily attired women in provocative postures. In these, as well as in many advertisements, women clearly appear as objects of erotic stimulation. By showing heroes misbehaving with heroines and getting away with it, films invite emulation in real life, resulting in the molestation of women in public places.

1. 'Denigration' in the phrase 'denigration of women' means
(A) ill-treatment
(B) abuse
(C) scandalizing
(D) tarnishing the good image

2. 'Unabashedly' means
(A) openly
(B) with great skill
(C) indifferently
(D) with no sign of being ashamed

3. The passage says that the bill to prohibit media exploitation of women
(A) is being drafted
(B) has been discussed in the Union cabinet
(C) has been made a law
(D) is going to create a lot of controversy

4. The last sentence of the passage underlines
(A) harmful effect of bad films
(B) the healthy influence of films
(C) the fact that films have nothing to do with a society's morale
(D) the need to teach morals through films

5. Feminine sex appeal is used in advertisements to
(A) distract the customer's attention
(B) entertain the customers
(C) get the attention of prospective customers
(D) show how women at home would like the product

(12)

When the esteemed Greek philosopher, Eudemos, became seriously ill with a fever, the most famous physician of Rome tried every remedy but to no avail. Death was knocking at his door when Eudemos *called* in Galen, a young Greek physician who had recently arrived in the city.

The Roman doctors *attending* Eudemos scoffingly asked the newcomer: "To what physician's sect do you belong?" Galen, not to be intimidated, boldly answered: "I belong to no sect, and *regard* as slaves those who accept as final, the teachings of Hippocrates or anyone else." He then *proceeded* to prescribe remedies that restored his patient to perfect health within a short time.

Galen was born in 130 AD in Pergamon, the capital of the Roman province of Asia Minor, famous for its school of sculpture and for its library which *rivalled* that of Alexandria. Nicon, the father of Galen, was a wealthy farmer who had attained a *well-rounded* education in mathematics, philosophy, and the natural sciences. Nicon instilled in his son a love for language and literature, and trained him in the fundamentals of mathematics and the natural sciences. On the farm, the impressionable boy learned many of the secrets of animal and plant life. When he was fourteen years old, Galen was sent by his father to the best teacher in Pergamon. From reading Aristotle he received his first lessons in biology and learned that the biologist must study nature by *direct* observation.

1. Who tried to belittle Dr Galen?
   (A) his father (B) his teachers (C) Eudemos
   (D) Roman physicians (E) citizens of Alexandria
2. Which special feature of Alexandria does the passage refer to?
   (A) It had the best doctors. (B) It was a trade centre.
   (C) It had the best library.
   (D) It had a medical school of repute.
   (E) It had very nice buildings.
3. Eudemos wanted Dr Galen to treat him because
   (A) he had fever
   (B) Roman doctors could not treat him properly
   (C) he had good experience about Dr Galen
   (D) Dr Galen was his student
   (E) Dr Galen belonged to the Greek school of medicine
4. According to Galen who is to be called a slave?
   (A) one who belongs to a school of thought
   (B) the followers of Hippocrates.
   (C) a blind follower of any theory or therapy
   (D) seriously ill Roman philosopher
   (E) All Roman doctors

5. Which of the following statements about Nicon is NOT TRUE in the context of the passage?
(A) He was residing at Alexandria.
(B) He had received good education.
(C) He was a lover of literature.
(D) He was a well-to-do farmer.
(E) He wanted to give good education to his son.

6. Galen learned much about the secrets of nature from
(A) Aristotle (B) Nicon (C) Eudemos
(D) Hippocrates (E) None of these

7. From the passage it appears that Dr Galen was
(A) having an open mind and believed in experimentation
(B) a lover of philosophy
(C) a firm believer in Hippocrates
(D) very famous as physician
(E) interested in pleasing Eudemos.

ANSWER

1.	1. (B)	2. (B)	3. (D)	4. (A)	5. (D)
	6. (C)	7. (C)	8. (B)		
2.	1. (B)	2. (D)	3. (B)	4. (B)	5. (D)
	6. (C)	7. (B)	8. (B)		
3.	1. (D)	2. (E)	3. (C)	4. (E)	5. (E)
4.	1. (B)	2. (B)	3. (C)	4. (C)	5. (D)
	6. (A)				
5.	1. (A)	2. (A)	3. (D)	4. (D)	5. (B)
6.	1. (C)	2. (A)	3. (B)	4. (B)	5. (B)
7.	1. (B)	2. (A)	3. (D)	4. (A)	5. (B)
	6. (B)	7. (D)			
8.	1. (C)	2. (B)	3. (A)	4. (C)	5. (C)
9.	1. (D)	2. (C)	3. (B)	4. (C)	5. (C)
	6. (D)				
10.	1. (B)	2. (D)	3. (C)	4. (C)	5. (A)
11.	1. (D)	2. (D)	3. (B)	4 (A)	5. (C)
12.	1. (D)	2. (C)	3. (B)	4. (C)	5. (A)
	6. (A)	7. (A)			

Exercise

Directions: *Read the following passages carefully and answer the questions below in the context of the passage.*

(1)

I believe that only one person in a thousand knows the trick of really living in the present. Most of us spend 59 minutes an hour living in the past, with regret for lost joys, or shame for things badly done (both utterly useless and weakening)—or in a future which we either long for or dread. Yet the past is gone beyond repair, and every minute you spend in the vain effort to anticipate the future is a moment lost. There is only one world, the world pressing against you at this minute. There is only one minute in which you are alive, this miracle—here and now. The only way to live is by accepting every minute as an unrepeatable miracle. Which is exactly what it is—a miracle and unrepeatable.

1. People live either in the past or in the future
   (A) because they are in the habit of chewing the cud
   (B) because they are a prey to imaginary fears
   (C) because they are chained to memory and desire
   (D) None of these
2. What is an unrepeatable miracle?
   (A) every moment that we live and spend
   (B) to repair the past
   (C) to crave for what is not
   (D) None of these
3. The attitude of the author is
   (A) romantic (B) classical
   (C) political (D) pragmatic
4. The most suitable title for the passage will be
   (A) Past is dynamic (B) The art of living
   (C) Importance of the present (D) None of these

(2)

I don't see why young men in universities, turning themselves into mischievous and sometimes dangerous mobs, should be treated indulgently, as if they were quite different from mobs of garage hands, apprentice fitters, bus-drivers. Indeed, there is a case for more severity. Students are not supposed to be ignorant and stupid. If they are then they should be sent home and not receive higher education at public expense. They are wasting not only their own but also other people's time, energy and money. There must be countries now in which peasants are going without substantial meals and some decent clothes so that a lot of lads can spend several years in universities.

1. 'Turning themselves into mischievous and sometimes dangerous mobs' is closest in meaning to
   (A) becoming a crowd that may act violently and cause damage
   (B) changing into wild and ferocious beasts
   (C) losing the power of thinking and indulging in foolish behaviour
   (D) changing into a bunch of insolent and aggressive children
2. The writer feels that student mobs should be treated
   (A) more leniently than the mobs of industrial workers
   (B) at par with any other mob
   (C) more harshly than workers' mobs
   (D) with contempt
3. If the students behave stupidly
   (A) they have no right to receive education in institutions maintained by public fund
   (B) they should be sent to jails
   (C) they should be demoted to lower classes
   (D) their parents should be penalized
4. Students in poorer countries should show a greater sense of responsibility because
   (A) they have to compete with students in developed countries
   (B) their education is paid for by poorer people
   (C) they are the future leaders of the country
   (D) they have to uphold the ancient traditions of the country

(3)

Edmund Burke called the Press, the Fourth Estate of the realm. I think he did not use this title for the Press thoughtlessly as a social ruling group or class. The Three Estates or Realms (in England) are the Lords Spiritual *ie*, the Bishops in the house of Lords, the Temporal *i.e.*, other Lords and Commons *i.e.*, the common people. The Press has been rightly called the Fourth Estate as it also constitutes a ruling group or class like the Lords and Commons. It cannot be denied in a free country that the Press exercises a good deal of influence in shaping public opinion and pointing out the weakness or defects of society or of Government and, in general, bringing to light all those good or bad things in society which would have otherwise remained unnoticed. The power is not limited or put under any check. The Press, instead of being controlled by any one, controls life and thought of a nation. Hence the Press constitutes an Estate by itself.

Obviously, the power which the Press in any country wields, depends upon the number of newspaper readers. The opinions and comments of newspapers can influence the life of a nation only when they are read by people. Reading, in turn, requires that the general mass of people should be educated. Thus, the spread of education determines the extent of the newspapers. Where readers are few, newspapers must necessarily be few.

Their influence, in the case, can extend only to a small minority of population. In a country like India the percentage of literacy is very low and the standard of journalism is not very high. So, the Press has to play the role of a teacher here.

1. What title was given by Edmund Burke to the Press?
   (A) Instrument of public opinion (B) Distributor of news
   (C) The Fourth Estate (D) Lords Temporal
2. What does the term 'Fourth Estate' stand for?
   (A) an area of land (B) landed property
   (C) social ruling group or class (D) instrument of power
3. Which one of the following is not included in the other Three Estates?
   (A) Lords Spiritual (B) Justices of Peace
   (C) Lords Temporal (D) Commons
4. Which one of the following is not the function of a free Press?
   (A) shaping public opinion
   (B) to support in all times official policy
   (C) to criticise government
   (D) to expose social evils
5. How much power does a free Press possess?
   (A) only that much which is allowed by the Government of the country
   (B) unlimited power without any check
   (C) unlimited power subject to maintenance of law and order and public morality
   (D) No power at all
6. What is the secret of power of the Press?
   (A) the money which the newspaper owners can invest
   (B) the number of newspaper readers
   (C) the extent to which it supports the official policy
   (D) the patronage of the Government enjoyed by it
7. What determines the number of newspaper readers?
   (A) the low price of newspapers
   (B) the patronage extended to it by the moneyed people
   (C) education of the general mass of people
   (D) the availability of newsprint to the newspaper owners
8. How does the Press exercise its power?
   (A) It enlists the support of the people.
   (B) It keeps watch over the acts of the Government.
   (C) It controls the life and thought of a nation.
   (D) It is a great business concern.
9. What is the state of journalism in India?
   (A) It is high. (B) It is rather low.
   (C) It is in its infancy.
   (D) It has made only limited progress.

10. In which form of Government has the Press the greatest chances of flourishing?
(A) Monarchy (B) Aristocracy
(C) Limited Dictatorship (D) Democracy

(4)

Two world wars within a generation and the potentialities of nuclear warfare have made the establishment of international order and the preservation of international peace the paramount concern of Western civilization. War has always been abhorred as a scourge. As the rise of the Territorial State transformed the Holy Roman Empire from the actual political organisation of Christendom into an empty shell and a legal fiction, writers and statesmen reflected more on substitutes for the last political unity of the Western World. Erasmus in the sixteenth century, Sully, Emeric Cruce, Hugo Grotius, and William Penn in the seventeenth, and the Abbe de Saint-Pierre, Rousseau, Bentham and Kant in the eighteenth century were the great intellectual forerunners of the practical attempts undertaken in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries to solve the problems of international order and peace.

Of these attempts, the Holy Alliance, the Hague Peace Conferences of 1899 and 1907, the League of the Nations, and the United Nations are the outstanding examples. These organisations and conferences together with other less spectacular endeavours to shape a peaceful world, were made possible by four factors—spiritual, moral, intellectual and political, which started converging at the beginning of the nineteenth century and culminated in the theory and practice of international affairs prevalent in the period between the two world wars.

Since the time of the Stoics and the early Christians, there has been alive in Western Civilization a feeling for the moral unity of mankind which strives to find a political organisation commensurate with it. The Roman Empire was such a political organisation of universal scope. After its downfall, the Roman Empire remained throughout the ages a symbolic reminder of the unity of the Western World, and the ultimate goal and standard which inspired Charlemagne no less than Napoleon and determined the policies of the Holy Roman Empire until the beginning of the religious wars. It is not by accident that the dissolution of the Holy Roman Empire in 1809 coincided with Napoleon's attempt to revive it and antedates by little less than a decade the beginning of that period of modern history which has made the restoration of international order one of its major objectives.

1. What has made the Western civilization feel very much concerned for the establishment of international order and the preservation of international peace?
(A) two world wars within a generation
(B) the potentialities of nuclear warfare

(C) economic collapse in an atmosphere of tension and conflict
(D) (A) and (B)
(E) None of these

2. Before the emergence of the Territorial State, what gave political unity to the Western World?
(A) politicization of Christianity
(B) common economic interests of the states of the Western World
(C) geographical contiguity of the states and the evolution of a common European culture
(D) The Holy Roman Empire
(E) reign of a single monarch over the whole of the Western World

3. The practical attempts undertaken in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries to solve the problems of international order and peace were preceded by reflections over the problem by
(A) Erasmus in the sixteenth century
(B) Sully, Emeric Cruce, Hugo Grotius and William Penn in the seventeenth century
(C) Abbe de Saint-Pierr, Rousseau, Bentham and Kant in the eighteenth century
(D) Hegel and Fichte and Goethe in the eighteenth century
(E) (A), (B) and (C)

4. Which of the following did not make any attempt in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries to solve the problems of international order and peace?
(A) The Holy Alliance
(B) The Hague Peace Conferences of 1899 and 1907
(C) The League of Nations
(D) The United Nations
(E) Napoleon, Hitler and Mussolini

5. The factors which made possible the endeavours for the solution of problems of international order and peace by international organisations and conferences were
(A) purely economic (B) purely cultural
(C) spiritual, moral, intellectual and political
(D) purely military
(E) exclusively the desires of the suppressed peoples for international peace and security

6. When did the various factors, to shape a peaceful world, culminate in the theory and practice of international affairs?
(A) early in the beginning of the twentieth century
(B) during the period between the two world wars
(C) late towards the end of the nineteenth century
(D) immediately after the close of the Second World War
(E) never

7. There has been alive in the Western civilization a feeling for the mora unity of mankind since the time of the Stoics and the early Christians This feeling for the moral unity of mankind
   (A) has striven to find a political organisation to give shape an content to that moral unity
   (B) was totally non-existent when the two World Wars were fought
   (C) has lately died out
   (D) has no basis whatsoever in the field of practical politics
   (E) has never craved for taking a practical shape in the form of ar international political organisation

8. The dissolution of the Holy Roman Empire came about in
   (A) 1899 (B) 1809 (C) 1907 (D) 1939 (E) 1914

9. What ideal inspired Charlemagne much in the same way as Napoleon?
   (A) aggrandisement of France
   (B) making France the greatest military power on earth
   (C) bringing about the unity of the Western world
   (D) involving the whole of Western world in a defence pact in order to create a system of balance of power in Europe
   (E) self-glorification of himself

10. What do you think may be the most suitable title for the above passage?
   (A) Quest for International Order and Peace
   (B) The Founding of the United Nations Organisation
   (C) Moral Unity of Mankind
   (D) Problem of Disarmament
   (E) World Institutions as Instruments of International Order and Peace

ANSWER

1.	1.	(C)	2.	(A)	3.	(D)	4.	(B)		
2.	1.	(A)	2.	(D)	3.	(A)	4.	(B)		
3.	1.	(C)	2.	(C)	3.	(B)	4.	(B)	5.	(C)
	6.	(B)	7.	(C)	8.	(C)	9.	(D)	10.	(D)
4.	1.	(D)	2.	(D)	3.	(E)	4.	(E)	5.	(C)
	6.	(B)	7.	(A)	8.	(B)	9.	(C)	10.	(A)

CHAPTER 20

Transformation of Sentences

Transformation, as its very name implies, is the process of changing sentence from one form to another, without altering its sense. It is an xcellent exercise as it teaches us how to express the same idea in a variety f ways.

The form of a sentence can be changed in one of the following ways:

(A) Interchange of interrogative and assertive

Did I not help you? (Interrogative)
I helped you. (Assertive)

(B) Interchange of affirmative and negative

She made every effort. (Affirmative)
She left no effort undone. (Negative)

(C) Interchange of exclamatory and assertive

O that I were young again ! (Exclamatory)
I wish I were young again. (Assertive)

(D) Interchange of degree of comparison

Shakespeare was one of the greatest dramatists of the world. (Superlative)

Shakespeare was greater than most other dramatists of the world. (Comparative)

Very few dramatists of the world were so great as Shakespeare. (Positive)

(E) Interchange of words

He is *too* weak to walk.
He is *so* weak that he cannot walk.
Hard *though* she worked, she failed.
In spite of her hard work, she failed.

(F) Substitution of parts of speech

It *costs* twenty-five paise. (Verb)
The *cost* is twenty-five paise. (Noun)
We examined the document *carefully*. (Adverb)
We examined the document with *care*. (Noun)

(G) Interchange of active and passive voice

He hurt his leg in an accident. (Active)

His leg was was hurt in an accident. (Passive)

(H) Conversion of simple, compound and complex sentences

I am not a man who will abuse you. (Complex)

I am not a man to abuse you. (Simple)

Spare the rod and spoil the child. (Compound/Double)

If you spare the rod, you spoil the child. (Complex)

(A) INTERCHANGE OF INTERROGATIVE AND ASSERTIVE

(i) Interrogative to Assertive

In an interrogative sentence, subject is preceded by an auxiliary verb (verb+subject) whereas in assertive sentence subject is followed by verb (subject+verb).

(i) While changing the interrogative into assertive the word-order *Aux. verb+Subject* is replaced by the word-order *Subject +Aux. verb*.

(ii) The note of interrogation (?) is replaced by full stop (.)

(iii) If in an interrogative sentence, there is no negative mark (*not*), it is added in the assertive sentence so transformed. If 'not' is already present in the interrogative sentence, it is removed when transformed.

Interrogative	Assertive
Am I a traitor?	I am not a traitor.
Did I not warn you?	I warned you.
Can a man live for ever?	A man cannot live for ever.
Can the blind see?	The blind cannot see.
Can the leopard change its spots?	The leopard cannot change its spots.
Shall I ever forget your gracious gesture?	I shall never forget your gracious geture.
Could we have succeeded without your help?	We could not have succeeded without your help.
Isn't the beauty of Kashmir beyond description?	The beauty of Kashmir is beyond description.
Shouldn't you love your motherland?	You should love your motherland.
Doesn't the sun set in the west?	The sun sets in the west.

There are such interrogative sentences as are assertive in meaning but negative in form. They are called 'rhetorical questions'. When they are changed into assertive, the negative mark is removed.

Interrogative	Assertive
If you prick us, don't we bleed?	If you prick us, we bleed.
Isn't Mount Everest the highest peak in the world?	Mount Everest is the highest peak in the world.
Who wouldn't run from a man-eating tiger?	Everyone would run from a man-eating tiger.
Who doesn't know Sunil Gavaskar?	Everybody knows Sunil Gavaskar.

(ii) Assertive to Interrogative

While transforming assertive sentences into interrogative you have to proceed like this.

(i) Change the word-order of *Subject+Aux. verb* of the assertive sentence into the word-order of *Aux. verb+Subject*.

If the assertive sentence contains one of the auxiliary verbs (*is, am, are, was, were, may, might, can, could, has, have, had, shall, should, will, would* etc.), put that auxiliary verb in the beginning to be followed by the subject.

If there is a full verb (such as, *come, go, write, read* etc.) in the assertive sentence, use *Do* or *Does* or *Did* (according to the tense and number) in the beginning and it will be followed by the subject.

(ii) Replace the full stop (.) by the note of interrogation (?).

(iii) If the assertive sentence doesn't contain 'not', use 'not' in the interrogative sentence.

(iv) If the assertive sentence contains 'not', drop the 'not', in the interrogative sentence.

Assertive	Interrogative
It is very surprising.	*Isn't* it very surprising?
Her condition is hopeless.	*Isn't* her condition hopeless?
Everyone knows Kapil Dev.	*Who does not* know Kapil Dev?
The laws of gravitation cannot change.	*Can* the laws of gravitation change?
Nobody else could have stooped so low.	*Who else* could have stooped so low?
That is not the way to speak.	*Is* that the way to speak?
If you prick us, we bleed.	If you prick us, *don't* we bleed?
This is not the kind of film men of taste love to see.	*Is* this the kind of film men of taste love to see?
Everybody wants to live long.	*Who does not* want to live long?
There is no use seeking his help.	*What* is the use of seeking his help?

(B) INTERCHANGE OF AFFIRMATIVE AND NEGATIVE

(i) Affirmative to Negative

Affirmative sentences can be transformed into negative sentences in one of the following ways:

(i) By removing, or inserting 'too' or by using *No sooner .... than, but* etc.

(ii) By using words having negative prefixes like '*im*possible', '*un*-known', '*dis*honest', '*in*appropriate', etc. (The use of double negatives conveys an affirmative sense.)

(iii) By using phrases opposite in meaning, or by using a word of opposite meaning after a negative

(iv) By the interchange of the degree of comparison

(v) By changing positive verbs, adverbs, adjectives and pronouns into negative. As for example, *doubtful = not sure; as soon as =no sooner than; always = never; cruel = not kind; all = none*, etc.

Affirmative	Negative
He is *too* meek to harm anybody.	He is *so* meek that he *cannot* harm anybody.
She is *so* clever that she will understand it.	She is *too* clever *not to* understand it.
As soon as I reached the station, the train left.	*No sooner* did I reach the station *than* the train left.
He is bound to give me credit for this work.	He *cannot but* give me credit for this work.
Every man has his weak points.	There is *no* man who has *no* weak points.
He is honest.	He is *not dishonest*.
Remember to work hard.	*Don't forget* to work hard.
It is possible to solve this sum.	It is *not impossible* to solve this sum.
Where there is smoke, there is fire.	There is *no smoke without* fire.
Look before you leap.	*Do not* leap before you look.
Man is mortal.	*No man* is *immortal*.
Only a fool would talk like this.	*None but* a fool would talk like this.
Every dark cloud has a silver lining.	There is *no dark cloud without* a silver lining.
She made every effort.	She left *no* effort *undone*.

Affirmative	Negative
Everybody feels that Harshad Mehta is guilty.	*Nobody denies* that Harshad Mehta is guilty.
I *always remember* to talk to him on telephone.	I *never forget* to talk to him on telephone.
Every rose has a thorn.	There is *no* rose *without* a thorn.
I am *doubtful* about his success.	I am *not sure* about his success.
You are *as old as* Raju.	Raju is *not older than* you.
You are *cleverer than* I.	I am *not so clever as* you.
He is *weaker than* King Kong.	King Kong is *not so weak as* he.
Rose has the sweetest smell *of all* flowers.	*No other* flower smells as sweet as rose.

(ii) Negative to Affirmative

The rules regarding the transformation of negative sentences into affirmative are just the opposite of the ones already discussed—for changing affirmative to negative.

The negative verbs, adverbs, adjectives and pronouns are to be changed into positive. As for example, *no sooner ..... than = as soon as; no one = everyone; not always = sometimes; cannot but = bound to; no one country = more than one country; none but the brave = the brave alone; none but a coward = the coward alone / only a coward; never again = for the last time.*

Negative	Affirmative
Her temper *did not improve* with age.	Her temper *became worse* with age.
It is *no mean* achievement.	It is a *great* achievement.
No sooner did he see the bear than he fled away.	*As soon as* he saw the bear, he fled away.
No one can *deny* that Newton was a great scientist.	*Everybody* must *admit* that Newton was a great scientist.
None but the brave deserves the fair.	*Only* the brave deserve the fair.
I did *not* find *many* spectators on the ground.	I found *a few* spectators on the ground.
I was *not sure* about the outcome of that negotiation.	I was *doubtful* about the outcome of that negotiation.
There is *no* smoke without fire.	Wherever there is smoke, there is fire.
This is *not impossible*.	This is *possible*.

(C) INTERCHANGE OF EXCLAMATORY AND ASSERTIVE

Sentences expressing sudden, strong feelings of joy or sorrow (surprise or shame or desire are termed exclamatory sentences. Differe exclamations are used for expressing different feelings as:

Hurrah! }	: joy
Ha!	
Ah! }	: sadness
Alas!	
Oh!	: surprise
How!	: extreme wonder
What!	: excessive astonishment
Oh that!	: desire
Fie !	: shame

In the transformation of exclamatory sentences into assertive form: you have to proceed thus:

(i) Follow the word-order of *Subj. + Verb.*

(ii) Express the unexpressed (or disguised) subject and verb clearl as –What a lovely painting! = What a lovely painting *it is*!

(iii) If the exclamatory sentence beginning with What or How, or Wh denotes "excess", they are to be replaced by *very*, or *much* or *great* or *ver much* or *very great* or *none* or *nobody*.

(iv) If the exclamation begins with *O that, Would that, Alas that, If were*, you are to use *I wish*, or *I earnestly desire*, or *I am sad*, etc. in assertiv sentences.

(v) The note of exclamation (!) is to be replaced by full stop (.)

Exclamatory	**Assertive**
How pretty is this baby!	This baby is *very* pretty.
What a joy to meet you!	It is a *great* joy to meet you.
How well she plays the piano!	She plays the piano *very* well.
What a piece of work is man!	Man is a *wonderful* piece of work.
What a lame excuse! (*What* a lame excuse it is!)	It is a *very* lame excuse.
O that I were young again!	*I wish* I were young again.
O that I had the wings of a bird!	*I wish that* I had the wings of a bird.
If only I could see him once!	*I wish* I could see him once.
If I knew more people!	*I wish* I knew more people.

Exclamatory	Assertive
O that she were living to this day!	*I wish that* she were living to this day.
Would that I had never left my home!	*I wish* I had never left my home.
A soldier, and afraid of death!	*It is strange that* a soldier *should be* afraid of death.
Hurrah! we have won the match.	*It is a matter of joy that* we have won the match.
To think of our meeting at this lonely place!	*It is strange that* we *should meet* at this lonely place.
Fie ! Fie ! You are a liar.	*It is a matter of shame that* you are a liar.

(D) INTERCHANGE OF DEGREE OF COMPARISON

The three degrees of comparison are: the positive, the comparative and the superlative.

(a) The positive degree denotes the simple quality, as "a clever boy."

(b) The comparative degree denotes a higher degree of the quality; as "a cleverer boy." This is used to compare one person or thing with (an) other person(s) or thing (s).

(c) The superlative degree denotes the highest degree of the quality; as "the cleverest boy." This is used to compare one person or thing with *his/her/its* whole group. We use *the* with superlatives. Look at these charts:

I

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
Cheap	Cheap*er*	Cheap*est*
Old	old*er*	Old*est*
tall	tall*er*	tall*est*
late	lat*er*	late*st*
nice	nic*er*	nic*est*
big	big*ger*	big*gest*
fat	fat*ter*	fat*test*
thin	thin*ner*	thin*nest*
easy	eas*ier*	eas*iest*
happy	happ*ier*	happ*iest*

II

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
bad	worse	worst
far	farther/further	farthest/furthest
good	better	best
old	older/elder	oldest/eldest

III

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
beautiful	*more* beautiful	*most* beautiful
cheerful	*more* cheerful	*most* cheerful
intelligent	*more* intelligent	*most* intelligent
practical	*more* practical	*most* practical

We can change one degree of comparison into another degree of comparison without altering the sense or meaning.

(i) From Positive to Comparative

Most of the adjectives of the positive degree are placed between *as*.....*as* or *so*..... *as*. (as *wise* as; so *good* as.)

Such sentences in the positive form can be changed into comparative form thus:

(i) Leave out *as*.....*as* or *so*.....*as*.

(ii) The adjective that lies between *so* ..... *as* or *as* ..... *as* should be changed into comparative.

(iii) The affirmative sentences should be transformed into negative and the negative sentence into affirmative.

(iv) In the transformed sentence, the latter part of the assertive sentence should be placed first and the former, last.

Positive	Comparative
I am not *as tall as* he.	He is *taller* than I.
Pinku is *as dull as* Rinku.	Rinku is not *duller* than Pinku.
He is *as wise as* Solomon.	Solomon is not *wiser* than he.
This TV is not *so good as* that.	That TV is *better* than this.
Very few metals are *as costly as* gold.	Gold is *costlier* than most other metals.
He is not *so cunning as* Cassius.	Cassius is *more cunning* than he.

(ii) From Comparative to Positive

To change sentences in the comparative form into positive form we have to proceed thus:

(i) Change the adjective of comparative degree into positive.

(ii) Place the adjective between *as* ..... *as* or *so*..... *as*.

(iii) If the sentence is affirmative, it should be changed into negative. If the sentence is negative, it should be changed into affirmative.

(iv) In the transformed sentence, the second part of the original sentence should be placed first and the first, at the end.

Comparative	Positive
He is *wiser* than you.	You are not *as wise as* he.
He is not *wiser* than you.	You are *as wise as* he.
The aeroplane flies *faster* than helicopters.	Helicopters do not fly *as fast as* the aeroplane.
Kapil Dev is a *better* all-rounder than Imran Khan.	Imran Khan is not *so good* an all-rounder *as* Kapil Dev.
My watch is *better* than your watch.	Your watch is not *so good as* my watch.
I would *rather* die than surrender.	I would *as soon* die *as* surrender.

(iii) From Positive to Superlative

1. The superlative degree, of a sentence having positive degree with *as...as* in the middle and *No other* before it, is formed thus:

(i) Remove *No other* and *as* .....*as*.

(ii) Change the adjective into superlative degree.

(iii) The last noun of the sentence should be placed first and the first noun, at the end.

Positive	Superlative
No other Indian poet is *as good as* Tagore.	Tagore is the *best* Indian poet.
No other flower is *as lovely as* rose.	Rose is the *loveliest* of flowers.
No other fruit is *as sweet/delicious as* mango.	Mango is the *sweetest*/the *most delicious* fruit.
No other metal is *as costly* as gold.	Gold is the *costliest* of metals.

2. If the positive degree is placed in between *as....as* or *so ....as* and if *Very few* is used in the beginning of the sentence, the positive degree is changed into superlative form in this way:

(i) Use *one of the* in place of *as*..... *as* and *Very few*.

(ii) Change the adjective into the superlative degree.

(iii) The first noun of the sentence should be placed at the end and the last noun should be placed first.

Positive	Superlative
Very few batsmen are *as great as* Gavaskar.	Gavaskar is *one of* the *greatest* batsmen.
Very few countries are *as hot as* India.	India is *one of the hottest* countries.
Very few historical monuments are *so tall as* Kutub Minar.	Kutub Minar is *one of the tallest* historical monuments.
Very few metals are *as costly as* gold.	Gold is *one of the costliest* metals.

(iv) From Comparative to Superlative

1. If *any other* or *all other* is used in comparative degree, we can change it to superlative degree in this way:

(i) Remove *any other* or *all other*.

(ii) Change the adjective of comparative degree into superlative degree.

Note: We can change superlative degree into comparative the other way round.

Comparative	Superlative
He is *better than any other* boy in the class.	He is *the best* boy in the class.
The Ganges is *holier than any other* Indian river.	The Ganges is *the holiest* of Indian rivers.
The Pacific is *deeper than any other* ocean.	The Pacific is *the deepest* ocean.
Mount Everest is *higher than any other* peak.	Mount Everest is *the highest* peak.
The lion is *stronger than any other* ahimal.	The lion is *the strongest* animal.

2. If *most other* is tagged to the comparative degree, it can be changed into superlative degree thus:

(i) *Most other* should be replaced by *one of the*.

(ii) The adjective of the comparative degree should be changed into superlative degree.

Note: Superlative degree can be changed into comparative degree just the other way round.

Comparative	Superlative
He is *more intelligent* than *most other* boys.	He is *one of the most intelligent* boys.

Comparative	Superlative
Iron is *more useful* than *most other* metals.	Iron is *one of the most useful* metals.
Lion is *more ferocious* than *most other* animals.	Lion is *one of the most ferocious* animals.

(v) Interchange of Positive, Comparative and Superlative

There are such sentences as can be interchanged in the positive, comparative and superlative degrees.

(i) In the positive degree we use *as* ....*as* or *so* .....*as*.

(ii) In the comparative degree we use *better* // *more*.....*than* or at times *other*.

(iii) In the superlative degree the adjective is in the superlative degree.

1. *No other* flower is *as sweet as* rose.—Positive

   Rose is *sweeter than any other* flower.—Comparative

   Rose is *the sweetest* of all the flowers.—Superlative

2. *No other* city in the world is *as populous as* Calcutta.—Positive

   Calcutta is *more populous than any other* city in the world.

   —Comparative

   Calcutta is *the most populous* city in the world.—Superlative

3. Newton was *one of the greatest* scientists of the world.—Superlative

   Newton was *greater than most other* scientists of the world.

   —Comparative

   Very few scientists of the world were *so great as* Newton.—Positive

Note: At times there are sentences whose degree of comparison instead of following the set pattern depends on your own logic or reasoning. So, you are to transform the sentences taking into consideration the meaning of the sentences and the instruction given.

Very few continents are *as large as* Asia. (Positive)
Some continents are *as large as* Asia. (Positive)
Some continents are *larger than* Asia. (Comparative)
Asia is *larger than most* continents. (Comparative)
Asia is *one of the largest* continents. (Superlative)

(E) INTERCHANGE OF WORDS

The interchange of certain words helps transform sentences. The form of sentences undergoes change but the meaning in each case remains the same.

Sentence with "too"

(a) If 'too' is followed by an infinitive in a sentence, the sentence can be expanded into two clauses. The first clause will contain *so* and the

second clause will begin with *that*; as—

1. He is *too* weak to walk.
   He is *so* weak *that* he cannot walk.
2. She is *too* busy to look after her children.
   She is *so* busy *that* she cannot look after her children.
3. He is *too* obstinate to listen to anybody.
   He is *so* obstinate *that* he cannot listen to anybody.

(b) If there is no infinitive after 'too', the sentence can be transformed by using the construction *more ..... than* or *beyond the proper limit*; as—

1. He is *too* worried about his failing health.
   He is *more* worried about his failing health *than he should*.
2. Our Principal trusts his PA *too* much.
   Our Principal trusts his PA *more than he should*.
3. He is *too* meek.
   His meekness *exceeds the proper limit*.

(c) If the original sentence contains no negative word, the subordinate clause in the transformed sentence becomes negative; as—

He is *too* good to kill anybody.
He is *so* good *that* he *cannot* kill anybody.

(d) If the original sentence contains a negative word, the subordinate clause in the transformed sentence becomes affirmative; as—

He speaks *too* loud not to be heard miles away.
He speaks *so* loud *that* he *can* be heard even miles away.

Let us study the following examples in which interchange of words does not affect the meaning.

1. All *but* the Principal were present.
   Except the Principal all were present.
2. He could not *but* grieve over his loss.
   He could *not help* grieving over his loss.
3. *But* for his lethargy he would have succeeded.
   If he had *not* been lethargic, he would have succeeded.
4. *Only* the chief guest has just arrived.
   None but the chief guest has yet arrived.
5. *Only* the last signpost can now be seen.
   All but the last signpost have disappeared.
6. *Only* he could solve this riddle.
   None but he could solve this riddle.
   or, He *alone* could solve this riddle.
7. Hard *as* she worked, she failed.
   In spite of her hard work, she failed.

8. It is *so* dark that I *cannot* see anything.
   It is *too* dark for me *to see* anything.
   or, It is *very* dark and therefore, I cannot see anything.

9. It is ten years *since* I saw him.
   I saw him ten years *ago*.
   or, I have not seen him *for* ten years.

10. *It is said that* Beant Singh killed Mrs Indira Gandhi.
    Beant Singh *is said to have* killed Mrs Indira Gandhi.

(F) SUBSTITUTION OF PARTS OF SPEECH

Sentences may be so written that one part of speech is used for another. Nouns may be replaced by verbs, verbs by adjectives, adjectives by adverbs and vice versa. As for example—

(i) *Verb, adjective or adverb into noun:*

(1) Rice has been *shipped* to Bangladesh. (V)
Rice has been sent to Bangladesh by *ship*. (N)

(2) She treated everybody *kindly*. (Adv.)
She treated everybody with *kindness*. (N)

(3) He should not be *proud* of his knowledge. (Adj.)
He should not take *pride* in his knowledge. (N)

(ii) *Noun, adjective or adverb into verb:*

(1) The *price* of this book is seventy-five rupees. (N)
This book is *priced* seventy-five rupees. (V)

(2) She was *successful* in her mission. (Adj.)
She *succeeded* in her mission. (V)

(3) He *intentionally* insulted his teacher. (Adv.)
He *intended* to insult his teacher. (V)

(iii) *Noun, verb and adverb into adjective:*

(1) There are *clouds* in the sky. (N)
The sky is *cloudy*. (Adj.)

(2) Nobody can *defeat* that wrestler. (V)
That wrestler is *invincible*. (Adj.)

(3) She is *openly* flirting with that handsome fellow. (Adv.)
It is *open* that she is flirting with that handsome fellow. (Adj.)

(iv) *Noun, verb and adjective into adverb:*

(1) I examined the document with *care*. (N)
I examined the document *carefully*. (Adv.)

(2) He *forced* an entry into this building. (V)
He entered this building *forcefully*. (Adv.)

(3) She gave me a *cold* treatment. (Adj.)
She treated me *coldly*. (Adv.)

(G) INTERCHANGE OF ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE.

Voice is that form of the verb which shows the relation of the subject of the verb to the action expressed by it. It shows whether the subject of the verb *acts* or *is acted upon*.

A transitive verb has two voices: active and passive.

In *active voice* the subject names the actor that is, the subject is the performer of the action expressed by the verb. In other words, we can say that the person or thing denoted by the subject *does something* that is, it is the *doer* of the action; as—

Rajo kills a tiger.

(Here the person denoted by the subject, namely Rajo, does something to a tiger.)

In *passive voice* the subject names the object or receiver of the action. In other words, it means that something is done to the person or thing denoted by the subject; as—

A tiger is killed by Rajo.

(Here the thing denoted by the subject, namely a tiger, suffers something from Rajo.)

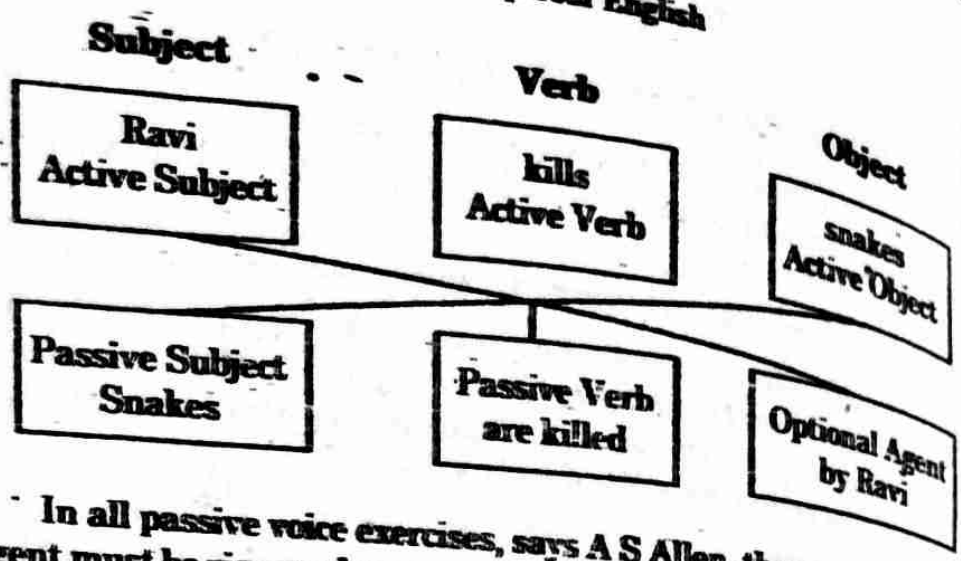
The active voice is used when the doer of the action (that is, agent) is to be made prominent. The passive voice is used when the person or thing acted upon is to be made prominent. The passive voice is generally used when the doer of the action is not known, is not important, or is not to be mentioned.

To change sentences from active to passive voice, the following points must be taken note of:

1. The object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence.
2. The subject of the active sentence becomes the object of the passive sentence.
3. The past participle of the main verb is used.
4. The past participle of the main verb is preceded by the appropriate form of the verb 'to be' (*am, is, are, was, were, be, been, being*), keeping in mind the number of the subject and the tense of the verb.
5. *By* precedes the agent of the *passive voice*, if it is necessary.

Note: We can, use another word in place of 'by' specially when the verbs express 'states' rather than 'actions' done by the agent; as—

Active	Passive
The result surprised me.	I was surprised *at* the result.
The news shocked me.	I was shocked *at* the news.
His manners pleased me.	I was pleased *with* his manners.



In all passive voice exercises, says A S Allen, the use of "by" with an agent must be rigorously suppressed, except in those examples where our interest in the predicate has led us to use the passive voice.

The passive of an active tense is formed by putting the verb 'to be' into the same tense as the active verb and adding the past participle of the active verb. You would do well to look at the table of active tenses and their passive equivalents.

Tense/Verb form	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present indefinite	keep/keeps	am/is/are kept
Present continuous	am/is/are keeping	am/is/are being kept
Past indefinite	kept	was/were kept
Past continuous	was/were keeping	was/were being kept
Present perfect	has/have kept	has/have been kept
Past perfect	had kept	had been kept
Modal verb	may keep	may be kept

You have different formulas for conversion of the verb of active sentences into passive form. Here they are:

1. **Present indefinite tense**

   Subject + am/is are + V_3 + by/ Preposition + Object

   Examples:

Active	Passive
I sip tea.	Tea is sipped by me.
I help the poor.	The poor are helped by me.
He helps me.	I am helped by him.

2. **Present continuous tense**

   Subject +am/is/are + being + V_3 + by + Object

   Examples:

Active	Passive
I am eating a mango.	A mango is being eaten by me.
He is singing a song.	A song is being sung by him.

Active	Passive
He is teaching me.	I am being taught by him.
He is abusing them.	They are being abused by him.

3. **Present perfect tense**

Subject + has/have + been + V_3 + by + Object

Examples:

Active	Passive
He has done this work.	This work has been done by him.
She has helped them.	They have been helped by her.

4. **Past indefinite tense**

Subject + was/were + V_3 + Object

Examples:

Active	Passive
He wrote an essay.	An essay was written by him.
He wrote several novels.	Several novels were written by him.

5. **Past continuous tense**

Subject + was/were + being + V_3 + by + Object

Examples:

Active	Passive
He was writing an application.	An application was being written by him.
They were singing folk songs.	Folk songs were being sung by them.

6. **Past perfect tense**

Subject + had been + V_3 + by + Object

Examples:

Active	Passive
I had purchased a scooter.	A scooter had been purchased by me.
They had invited me.	I had been invited by them.

7. **Future indefinite tense**

Subject + shall/will + be + V_3 +by + Object

Examples:

Active	Passive
I shall help Ravi.	Ravi will be helped by me.
He will feed me.	I shall be fed by him.

8. **Future perfect tense**

Subject + shall/will + have been + V_3 + by + Object

Examples:

Active	Passive
I shall have helped him.	He will have been helped by me.
He will have taught me.	I shall have been taught by him.

9. **Verb 'to be'**

Subject + Aux. Verb (is/am/are/was/were etc.) + to be + V_3 + by + Object

Examples:

Active	Passive
He is to invite me.	I am to be invited by him.
There is nothing to do.	There is nothing to be done.
They are to sell the house.	The house is to be sold by them.
They were to play the match.	The match was to be played by them.

10. **Verb 'to have'**

Subject +has/have/had + to be + V_3 + by + Object

Examples:

Active	Passive
You have to teach him.	He has to be taught by you.
He has to feed the beggars.	The beggars have to be fed by him.
She had to help me.	I had to be helped by her.

11. **Sentences having may/can/could/should/must/etc. + Verb**

Subject + may/can/could + be + V_3 + by + Object

Examples:

Active	Passive
He can teach you.	You can be taught (by him).
She may win the match.	The match may be won (by her).
He could fry fish.	Fish could be fried (by him).
I must help her.	She must be helped (by me).
I should please her.	She should be pleased (by me).

12. **Sentences having Verb + Preposition + Object**

Subject + Aux. Verb + V_3 + Preposition + by + Object

Examples:

Active	Passive
I will look *after* you well.	You will be well-looked *after*.
She looks *after* the child.	The child is looked *after* by her.
The police enquired *into* this case.	This case was enquired *into*.

13. Passive of infinitives

If the active sentence contains infinitive (*to + verb*), its passive will be

Subject + to be + V_3

Examples:

Active	Passive
There is nothing *to read.*	There is nothing *to be read.*
He is a man *to rely on.*	He is a man *to be relied on.*
We have nothing *to worry about.*	We have nothing *to be worried about.*

14. Dummy "it"

If the active sentence starts with 'People think/acknowledge/know/consider/understand/believe/find/say/report/claim ....that he is', it can be changed into passive form in two different ways.

(i) Use the dummy subject "*it*".

It was thought.....
It was said .....
It was written.....
It was declared .....

(ii) The subject of the noun clause in the active sentence is used as the subject of the passive form. Besides this *to* is used.

(iii) *People say* is replaced by *It is said.*

Examples:

People believed that the earth was flat. (Active)
The earth was believed to be flat. (Passive)
It was believed that the earth was flat. (Passive)

Active	Passive
People say that he is miser.	(a) It is said that he is miser. (b) He is said to be miser.
People thought that Mr Ravi was honest to a pie.	(a) It was thought that Mr Ravi was honest to a pie. (b) Mr Ravi was thought to be honest to a pie.

15. Verbs with two Objects

If the active sentence contains two objects (one direct object and the other, indirect) we can change it into the passive form by making either of the two objects the subject, considering which of the two objects is to be given prominence. Usually the indirect object of the active sentence is made the subject of the passive sentence.

Examples:

Active	Passive
He handed her a book.	(a) A book was handed to her. (b) She was handed a book.

Active	Passive
Our grandmother told us stories.	(a) We were told stories by our grandmother. (b) Stories were told us by our grandmother.
The examiner will award you good marks.	(a) You will be awarded good marks by the examiner. (b) Good marks will be awarded to you by the examiner.
The bodyguard refused him admittance.	(a) Admittance was refused him by the bodyguard. (b) He was refused admittance by the bodyguard.

16. Passive of Commands

If the active sentence is imperative, it can be changed into passive form in three ways:

(i) If the imperative sentence denotes command, the passive form will start with *Let*.

Let + Subject + be +V_3

Examples:

Active	Passive
Open the door.	*Let* the door be opened.
Switch off the light.	*Let* the light be switched off.
Close the window.	*Let* the window be closed.
Call the waiter on duty.	*Let* the waiter on duty be called.

(ii) If the imperative sentence denotes advice, its passive form will be like this:

Subject + should + be + V_3

Examples:

Active	Passive
Speak the truth.	Truth *should be spoken*.
Love the children.	The children *should be loved*.
Help the needy.	The needy *should be helped*.

(iii) If the active sentence contains Please/Kindly, its passive form will start with *You are requested to*. 'Please' and 'Kindly' should be dropped.

Examples:

Active	Passive
Kindly read this news item.	*You are requested to* read this news item.

Active	Passive
Please lend me rupees five hundred	*You are requested to* lend me rupees five hundred.
Please sit down.	*You are requested to* sit down.
Come in, please.	*You are requested to* come in

17. Passive of yes-no questions

The questions beginning with Do/Does/Did/Am/Is/Are/Was/Were/ Has/Have/Had are called *yes-no questions*. If the active sentence contains *yes-no question*, we can change it into the passive form in the ways noted below:

(i) If the active sentence starts with Do/Does/Did, the form of passive sentence will be:

Am/Is/ Are/Was/Were + V_3

Examples:

Active	Passive
Does he play tennis?	Is tennis played by him?
Do they feed the poor?	Are the poor fed by them?
Did you abuse him?	Was he abused by you?

(ii) If the question in the active sentence begins with Has/Have/Had, its passive form will be like this:

Has/Have/Had + been + V_3

Examples:

Active	Passive
Has Dick beaten you?	Have you been beaten by Dick?
Have they won the match?	Has the match been won by them?
Had he scored the winning goal?	Had the winning goal been scored by him?

18. Passive of questions with Modal Verbs

If the question in the active sentence starts with modal verbs such as, Can/Could/Shall/Should/May/Might/Will/Would/Must/Ought etc., its passive form will be like this:

Modal Auxiliaries +be + V_3

Examples:

Active	Passive
Can we climb Mount Everest?	Can Mount Everest be climbed by us?
Will they help you?	Will you be helped by them?
Should he take the examination?	Should the examination be taken by him?
Must you heckle him?	Must he be heckled by you?

19. Passive of wh-questions

If the question in the active sentence begins with a question word (What, When, Where, How, Why, Who, Which) the following steps be taken:

(i) Change the *wh-question* into *yes-no question*.

(ii) The passive question should be placed first.

Take for example this sentence:

Where did Gita buy the doll? (Active)
Did Gita buy the doll? (Active)
Where was the doll bought by Gita? (Passive)

Examples:

Active	Passive
When do they convene a meeting?	When is a meeting convened by them?
Why do they shout slogans?	Why are slogans shouted by them?
How did he win the prize?	How was the prize won by him?
What did he teach you?	What were you taught by him?
Who wrote 'Macbeth'?	Who was 'Macbeth' written by? or, By whom was 'Macbeth' written?

EXAMPLES WORKED OUT

Active	Passive
One should keep one's promises.	Promises should be kept.
They made him the Vice-chancellor of this university.	He was made the Vice-chancellor of this university.
Nelson defeated the French fleet.	The French fleet was defeated by Nelson.
Srikant scored a breezy century.	A breezy century was scored by Srikant.
Somebody has switched the light off.	The light has been switched off.
Do not oppress the poor.	The poor should not be oppressed.
The girls were decorating the room.	The room was being decorated by the girls.
Where did Ramu sow those seeds?	Where were those seeds sown by Ramu?

Active	Passive
People say that some ministers are involved in Bofors deal.	It is said that some ministers are involved in Bofors deal.
They should not doubt my sincerity.	My sincerity should not be doubted.
There was no time to lose.	There was no time to be lost.
Why did he pass such a filthy remark?	Why was such a filthy remark passed by him?
Please pull that man out of a trying situation.	You are requested to pull that man out of a trying situation.
Someone has picked my pocket.	My pocket has been picked.
It is time to take tea.	It is time for tea to be taken.
You cannot pump the ocean dry.	The ocean cannot be pumped dry.
We need sufficient money to complete this project.	Sufficient money is needed to complete this project.
What caused this accident?	What was this accident caused by?
We must obey our elders.	Our elders must be obeyed.
A truck ran over an old man.	An old man was run over by a truck.
He taught me how to dance.	I was taught how to dance.
We hope that they will succeed in their mission.	It is hoped that they will succeed in their mission.
The news of his success pleased me.	I was pleased with the news of his success.
How do they roast meat?	How is meat roasted?
We must write to her.	She must be written to.
He made them work hard.	They were made to work hard.
We saw them go out.	They were seen to go out.
I remember my father taking me to the Salarjung Museum.	I remember being taken to the Salarjung Museum by my father.
They called him a traitor.	He was called a traitor.
There is a lot of work to do.	There is a lot of work to be done.
Nobody can solve it.	It cannot be solved.
Do it now or never.	Let it be done now or never.
Who wrote 'Gulliver's Travels'?	Who was 'Gulliver's Travels' written by?
Listen to me.	I should be listened to.

(H) CONVERSION OF SIMPLE, COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES

Let us first of all know what a simple or compound or complex sentence is.

1. Simple Sentence: A simple sentence is one that has only one subject and only one finite verb expressed or understood; as—

The earth moves round the sun.

(Here 'The earth' is the only subject and 'moves' is the only finite verb.)

2. Compound Sentence: A compound sentence has one principal or main clause and one or more coordinate clauses. In other words, it is a sentence made up of at least two finite verbs and two coordinate clauses; as—

The sun shone brightly and we could move on briskly.

(Here the two main clauses are: 1. The sun shone brightly. 2. We could move on briskly.)

3. Complex Sentence: A complex sentence consists of a main or principal clause (that is, the clause containing the main verb of the sentence) and one or more dependent or subordinate clauses; as—

He said that the earth is round.

(There are two clauses: 1. He said (main or principal clause). 2. that the earth is round. (subordinate noun clause)

1. CONVERSION OF SIMPLE SENTENCES TO COMPOUND

A simple sentence can be converted into compound sentence by expanding words or phrases into coordinate clauses. We can do so by using

(a) Cumulative Conjunctions

Besides losing his ticket, he *also* lost his luggage. (Simple)

He *not only* lost his ticket *but also* lost his luggage. (Compound)

(b) Alternative Conjunctions

You must work hard *to pass* the examination. (Simple)

You must work hard *or you will not pass* the examination. (Compound)

(c) Adversative Conjunctions

Notwithstanding his sorrow he is hopeful. (Simple)

He is sorrowful, *but / yet* hopeful. (Compound)

(d) Illative Conjunctions

Owing to ill-health, she could not cook. (Simple)

She was in ill-health, *and so* she could not cook. (Compound)

EXAMPLES WORKED OUT

Simple	Compound
For all his riches, he is not contented.	He is very rich, still he is not contented.
Don't desire without deserving.	First deserve, then desire.
Besides making a promise, she kept it.	She not only made a promise, but she also kept it.
The sun having risen, the fog disappeared.	The sun rose and the fog disappeared.
Running the race he injured the leg.	He ran the race but injured his leg.
Her father's death multiplied her problems.	Her father died and this multiplied her problems.
Having finished his work, he went to the bed.	He finished his work and went to the bed.

2. CONVERSION OF COMPOUND SENTENCES TO SIMPLE

Compound sentences can be converted into simple ones in the following ways :

(a) By substituting a Participle or a Finite Verb; as—

The moon rose and the darkness disappeared.(Compound)

The moon *having risen*, the darkness disappeared. (Simple)

(b) By substituting a Preposition or Prepositional Phrase for a Clause; as—

He was very weak yet he was ready to go there. (Compound)

In spite of his weakness he was ready to go there. (Simple)

(c) By substituting an Infinitive for a Clause; as—

You must work hard, or you will not get promotion. (Compound)

Hard work is necessary *for you to get promotion*. (Simple)

EXAMPLES WORKED OUT

Compound	Simple
You cannot follow this lesson because you have no help book.	Without the help book you cannot follow this lesson.
He is not only a politician but he is also a poet.	Besides being a politician, he is a poet.
He must not be late or he will be penalized.	In the event of his being late, he will be penalized.
The servant was disobedient, and so the master scolded him.	The master scolded the servant for his disobedience.

Compound	Simple
You must have regular habits otherwise you cannot remain healthy.	You must have regular habits to remain healthy.
You must make haste or you will miss the bus.	In the event of your not making haste, you will miss the bus.
He betrayed his country, and this was to his eternal disgrace.	To his eternal disgrace, he betrayed his country.
You must either pay the bill at once or return the goods.	Failing prompt payment the goods must be returned by you.

3. CONVERSION OF SIMPLE SENTENCES TO COMPLEX

We can convert simple sentences to complex ones by expanding words or phrases into subordinate clauses. This clause may be a noun, adjective, or adverb clause. As for example,

(a) Noun Clause:

I am certain *of pulling* you out of a trying situation. (Simple)

I am certain *that I shall pull* you out of a trying situation. (Complex)

(b)Adjective Clause:

We know the name of the writer *of that letter*. (Simple)

We know the name of the writer *who wrote that letter*. (Complex)

(c) Adverb Clause:

On reaching manhood you will have to shoulder this responsibility. (Simple)

As soon as you have reached manhood, you will have to shoulder this responsibility. (Complex)

EXAMPLES WORKED OUT

Simple	Complex
Kalidas, the Shakespeare of India, wrote many plays.	Kalidas who is known as the Shakespeare of India wrote many plays.
He worked hard to pass the examination.	He worked hard that he might pass the examination.
He bought his uncle's landed property.	He bought the landed property that belonged to his uncle.
The letter having been written, was posted.	The letter was posted after it had been written.

Simple	Complex
I saw a thrilling football match.	I saw a football match which was thrilling.
She started by night to escape being seen by anyone.	She started by night lest she should be seen by anyone.
I paid off my father's debts.	I paid off the debts which my father had contracted.
He pleaded ignorance of the law.	He pleaded that he was ignorant of the law.

4. CONVERSION OF COMPLEX SENTENCES TO SIMPLE

Complex sentences can be converted into simple ones by adopting the following methods:

1. Noun Clause:

(a) By substituting a Noun for the Noun Clause introduced by the conjunction 'that' as—

It is sad that she died so young. (Complex)

Her death at so early an age is sad. (Simple)

(b) By substituting a Noun for the Noun Clause introduced by a Relative Pronoun; as—

You need not disbelieve what she said. (Complex)

You need not disbelieve her word. (Simple)

(c) By substituting a Noun for the Noun Clause introduced by a Relative Adverb; as—

Tell me when and where Pandit Nehru was born. (Complex)

Tell me the date and place of Pandit Nehru's birth. (Simple)

EXAMPLES WORKED OUT

Complex	Simple
How long I shall stay is doubtful.	The duration of my stay is doubtful.
He was so absorbed in writing letters that he did not look at me.	He was too absorbed in writing letters to look at me.
Rajiv Gandhi who was the Prime Minister of India is dead.	Rajiv Gandhi, the Prime Minister of India, is dead.
She died in the village where she was born.	She died in her native village.
Kashmir which is the jewel of India is in turmoil.	Kashmir, the jewel of India, is in turmoil.
You can eat as much as you like.	You can eat to your heart's content.

Complex	Simple
When the cat is away, the mice will play.	In the absence of the cat the mice will play.
You need not disbelieve what she said.	You need not disbelieve her word.

5. CONVERSION OF COMPOUND SENTENCES TO COMPLEX

A compound sentence contains two or more coordinate clauses. Normally the second coordinate clause is the more important of the two. We can convert a compound sentence into a complex sentence in one of the following ways:

(a) Most often the second coordinate clause is made the principal clause and the first one is made subordinate to it; as—

She went into the kitchen and brought a cup of tea. (Compound)

When she went into the kitchen she brought a cup of tea. (Complex)

(b) If one of the coordinate clauses has its predicate in the imperative form and the conjunction joining the two clauses is 'and', the imperative clause is changed into an affirmative adverbial clause showing condition. The imperative clause takes a negative form if the conjunction is 'or'.

Enter the dining room and you will find delicious dishes. (Compound)

If you enter the dining room, you will find delicious dishes. (Complex)

(c) If the clauses are joined by 'but', the first one is normally changed into an adverbial clause of concession; as—

The car dashed against a tree but the driver was safe. (Compound)

Although the car dashed against a tree, the driver was safe. (Complex)

Compound	Complex
Spare the rod, spoil the child.	If you spare the rod, you spoil the child.
Waste not, want not.	If you do not waste, you will not want.
Do as I tell you, or you will regret it.	Unless you do as I tell you, you will regret it.
We saw the danger signal but continued our onward march.	Although we saw the danger signal, we continued our onward march.
Mosquitoes cause malaria and this is well-known.	It is well-known that mosquitoes cause malaria.

Compound	Complex
You have committed a blunder, and of this I am certain.	I am certain you have committed a blunder.
He wants to become a millionaire, and therefore he works hard.	He works hard in order that he may become a millionaire.
She was very tired and so she fell asleep.	As she was very tired, she fell asleep.

6. CONVERSION OF COMPLEX SENTENCES TO COMPOUND

In a complex sentence the principal clause is more important than the subordinate clause. While transforming a complex sentence to a compound one. the principal clause becomes the second coordinate clause and the subordinate clause becomes the first coordinate clause. Moreover, a coordinate conjunction is used in place of subordinate conjunction; as—

He works hard in order that he may win the gold medal. (Complex)

He wants to win the gold medal. and therefore he works hard. (Compound)

EXAMPLES WORKED OUT

Complex	Compound
I have lost the watch which my mother gave me.	My mother gave me a watch and I have lost it.
I am sure that you are getting along quite nicely.	You are getting along quite nicely and I am sure of it.
If you speak the truth, you will never regret it.	Speak the truth and you will never regret it.
The Pakistani raiders fled as soon as our soldiers reached Kashmir.	Our soldiers reached Kashmir, and the Pakistani raiders fled immediately.
If you act so foolishly, you will certainly be ruined.	You must not act so foolishly, or you will certainly be ruined.
Everyone started clapping as soon as Dr Sharma finished his speech.	Dr Sharma finished his speech and everyone started clapping.
When the clock strikes six in the morning, we are ready for our morning walk.	The clock strikes six in the morning and we are ready for our morning walk.
The servant did as he was told.	The servant was told to do something and he did it accordingly.

Exercise -

Transform the following sentences as directed:

1. (a) I wish I had met you years ago. (To Exclamatory)
   (b) What a beautiful sight it is! (To Assertive)
   (c) Why waste time in reading trash? (To Assertive)
   (d) Shall I ever forget those happy days? (To Assertive)
   (e) She left no plan untried. (To Affirmative)
   (f) As soon as he saw me, he ran away. (To Negative)
   (g) O that the blue moons were my dwelling place! (To Assertive)
   (h) A fireman and afraid of sparks! (To Assertive)
   (i) I wish that she were living to this day. (To Exclamatory)
   (j) Who would not love his motherland? (To Assertive)
2. (a) Only a little child would talk like this. (To Negative)
   (b) This river is too turbulent to swim across. (Remove 'too')
   (c) Calcutta is the busiest port in India. (Change into Comparative)
   (d) He was so strong that he lifted the stone. (Use 'enough')
   (e) As soon as the police reached the spot the mob dispersed. (Replace *As soon as* by *No sooner ... than*)
   (f) I will tackle this problem, if you allow me. (Remove 'if')
   (g) Do not go away until I return. (Use 'as long as')
   (h) Only Ravi came to see me off. (Use 'but')
   (i) A live ass is stronger than a dead lion. (Change from Comparative to Positive)
   (j) No city in India is as populous as Calcutta. (To Superlative degree)
3. (a) He is too weak to carry this load. (Remove 'too')
   (b) Actions speak louder than words. (To Positive degree)
   (c) A man cannot live for ever. (Change into Interrogative)
   (d) She spoke so fluently that everybody was charmed. (Use the noun-form of 'fluently')
   (e) They passed an anxious hour. (Use the adverb-form of 'anxious')
   (f) He has no intention of leaving this place. (Use the verb-form of 'intention')
   (g) We welcomed the news joyfully. (Use the noun-form of 'joyfully')
   (h) She is as tall as you are. (To Negative)
   (i) No one can bear this injustice. (To Interrogative)
   (j) There is nothing greater than God. (To Interrogative)
4. (a) Oh, that I had the wings of a bird! (To Assertive)
   (b) Her voice was so feeble that it could not be heard. (Use 'too')
   (c) I could not but comply with his wishes. (Use 'help' in place of 'but')
   (d) The train stops at Rajgir for five minutes. (Use the noun-form of 'stop')
   (e) Without doubt he was very learned. (Use an adverb in place of 'doubt')

(f) This watch differs greatly from that watch.
(Use the noun-form of 'differ')

(g) He solved this problem in an instant.
(Use the adverb-form of 'instant')

(h) Her honesty is a well-known fact.
(Use the adjective form of 'honesty')

(i) Persevere, and you will succeed in the long run.
(Use 'if', in place of 'and')

(j) He did not take long to read her face. (To Positive)

5. *Put each of the sentences below into the passive voice:*
(a) Someone stole my car last night.
(b) Lata sings sweet songs.
(c) Some boys were flying kites.
(d) Dr Naresh should examine him.
(e) Switch the radio on.
(f) Please give me an umbrella.
(g) Where did they buy this watch?
(h) Will he sell this house?
(i) Do not use unfair means in the examination.
(j) Nobody has ever beaten him at chess.
(k) I am to buy a set of combs.
(l) She will look after the girl well.
(m) Let me know if there is anything we should do.
(n) Did nobody ever teach you how to behave?
(o) You must write the answers on one side of the paper only.

6. *Put each of the sentences into the active voice:*
(a) His leg was hurt in an accident.
(b) Your question cannot be answered.
(c) His ailing mother should be taken care of.
(d) You are requested not to stand there.
(e) The window was opened by an unseen hand.
(f) I remember being taken to the zoo by my father
(g) The room was filled with smoke.
(h) The lessons have been revised by Munna.
(i) He has to be taught by me
(j) I found myself being laughed at by the girls.

7. *Transform the following as directed:*
1. Because of poverty, he is helpless.
(Change into Compound sentence)
2. Make haste, or else you will be late.
(Change into Simple sentence)
3. For all his experiences he is still incompetent.
(Change into Complex sentence)

4. This proved that he was innocent.
(Change into Simple sentence)

5. As soon as he got the telegram, he left for New York.
(Change into Compound sentence)

6. They soon forgot the hardship they had endured.
(Change into Simple sentence)

7. The boy was pleased at having won the first prize.
(Change into Complex sentence)

8. A stone that is rolling gathers no moss.
(Change into Simple sentence)

9. Hold your tongue, or you will repent it.
(Change into Complex sentence)

10. Although the ship sank the captain was safe.
(Change into Compound sentence)

8. *Each sentence is followed by four alternatives. Select the one which has the same meaning as the original sentence.*

1. As soon as he saw me he called me.
No sooner .....
(a) did he see me than he called me
(b) he saw me he called me
(c) did he see me and then called me
(d) had seen me than he called me

2. I wish I were a child.
..... I were a child!
(a) Oh that (b) Oh
(c) Hurrah (d) Bravo

3. I will attend the party if you invite me.
I will attend the party .....
(a) unless you invite me. (b) till you invite me
(c) in case you invite me (d) lest you invite me

4. Is not virtue its own reward?
Virtue .....
(a) has not its reward (b) is its own reward
(c) not its own reward (d) has reward its own

5. This news is too good to be true
This news is .....
(a) so good that it can be true
(b) would never be true
(c) so good that it cannot be true
(d) good enough to be true

9 *Out of the four alternatives suggested select the one which best expresses the same sentence in passive voice / active voice.*

1. The residents celebrated the Independence Day.
   (a) The Independence Day was celebrated by the residents.
   (b) The Independence Day is celebrated by the residents.
   (c) Celebration of Independance Day was done by the residents.
   (d) The Independence Day has been celebrated by the residents.

2. People claim to have seen the suspect in several cities.
   (a) The suspect was seen by people in several cities.
   (b) The suspect is claimed to have been seen in several cities.
   (c) The suspect has seen the people in several cities.
   (d) The suspect is being seen in several cities.

3. His pocket has been picked.
   (a) Picked has been his pocket.
   (b) They have his pocket picked.
   (c) Someone has picked his pocket.
   (d) Picking has been done to his pocket.

4. I saw him leaving the house.
   (a) He was seen to be leaving the house by me.
   (b) Leaving the house he was seen by me.
   (c) He was seen leaving the house by me.
   (d) He had been seen leaving the house by me.

5. We hope that we shall win the match.
   (a) The match is hoped to be won.
   (b) Winning the match is hoped by us.
   (c) Match winning is our hope.
   (d) It is hoped that the match will be won by us.

CHAPTER 21

Test Yourself (Practice Tests)

I'm sure, you must have gone through the study materials with all the care and attention that they deserve. And learnt, with profit and pleasure, thousand and one aspects of English language with all their structural designs. I'm sure, you must have gained in confidence. With this in-built confidence you are now all set for taking the various competitive exams. But, before you go in for such tests, here is a set of warm-up exercises. These practice questions, based as they are on various All-India-level examinations, will surely put you through your paces.

SET I: National Defence Academy Exam, 1991

Directions: *Read each sentence to find if there is any grammatical error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer, if there is no error the answer is 'd', ie, No error. Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any.*

1. The planes (a)/immediately took on (b)/when war was declared. (c)/No error. (d)
2. The house (a)/had burnt down (b)/by the time the firemen arrived. (c)/No error. (d)
3. Dicing is a simple (a)/technique of cutting (b)/food into small cube. (c)/No error. (d)
4. Most of the (a)/steam locomotives (b)/are now out of service. (c)/No error. (d)
5. Unlike most people (a)/he had a genuine (b)/stake inside the country. (c)/No error. (d)
6. Soldiers are expected not to raise objections (a)/but to carry off (b)/the orders of their officers. (c)/No error. (d)
7. He was so anxious to complete his work (a)/that he went on working (b)/since 8 in the morning to 5 in the afternoon. (c)/No error. (d)
8. This story is about a boy (a)/who meets a baby elephant in the jungle (b)/and became its friend. (c)/No error. (d)
9. When the ship caught fire, (a)/many a man (b)/were drowned in the sea. (c)/No error. (d)

10. Neither of them are (a)/willing to attend (b)/the marriage ceremony of the noted film actress. (c)/No error. (d)

Directions: *Look at the italicized part of each sentence. Below each sentence are given three possible substitutions for the italicized part. If one of them (A), (B) or (C) is better than the italicized part, indicate your response against the corresponding letter (A), (B) or (C). If none of the substitutions improve the sentence, indicate (D) as your response.*

11. The ladies *are attending* spoken English classes since 6th December.
    (A) were attending (B) have been attending
    (C) have attended (D) No improvement

12. Sensing that the contest would be very tough, she decided to *stand down*.
    (A) sit (B) lie
    (C) play (D) No improvement

13. Our dwindling supplies were *replaced* when the new shipment arrived.
    (A) refilled (B) restocked
    (C) replenished (D) No improvement

14. He may have aged *when I last saw him*.
    (A) before I last saw him (B) since I last saw him
    (C) since I saw him (D) No improvement

15. *I, your brother and you* will be partners in the business.
    (A) I, you and your brother (B) You, your brother and I
    (C) You, I and your brother (D) No improvement

16. His salary is not adequate for him to *make the both ends meet*.
    (A) make both his ends meet (B) make both ends meet
    (C) make both the ends meet (D) No improvement

Directions: *In this section you find a number of sentences, words of which are italicized. You may also find a group of words which are italicized. For each italicized word, four words/phrases are listed below. Choose the word nearest in meaning to the italicized word.*

17. The soldiers *laid down their arms*.
    (A) put their arms on the ground
    (B) surrendered (C) refused to obey orders
    (D) put the arms in their place

18. At a party, he is always *in high spirits*.
    (A) uncontrollable (B) drunk
    (C) cheerful (D) talkative

19. The data *compiled* by the organisation was very useful.
    (A) analysed (B) enclosed
    (C) collected (D) published

20. He is a *candid* politician.

(A) frank (B) faithful
(C) fearless (D) soft spoken

21. The *indiscriminate* cutting of trees has resulted in poor monsoons in India.

(A) careful (B) extravagant
(C) unselective (D) wasteful

Directions: *In this section each question consists of a word or a phrase which is italicized in the sentence given. It is followed by four words or phrases. Select the word or phrase which is closest to the* **opposite** *in meaning of the italicized word / phrase and indicate your choice.*

22. He is considered to be a *ruthless* person in dealing with his competitors.

(A) courteous (B) sympathetic
(C) candid (D) cordial

23. He has a *sophisticated* taste.

(A) artificial (B) superficial
(C) simple (D) vigorous

24. All his neighbours are aware of his *acrimonious* nature.

(A) sympathetic (B) cooperative
(C) charitable (D) informal

25. His *arrogance* is responsible for the change in his fortune.

(A) weakness (B) humility
(C) timidity (D) selfishness

26. His *pragmatic* approach to the problem was appreciated.

(A) idealistic (B) rational
(C) cautious (D) unbiased

Directions: *In this section you have two short passages. After each passage you will find three questions based on the passage. Read the passage and answer the questions based on it.*

Passage I

In 1962, the year I turned ten, my grandmother retired, upon reaching the age of sixty. She had taught in a Girls' High School since 1936. When she'd first joined the school she had only fifty pupils and the premises had consisted of two sheds with tin roofs. During the monsoons she had often had to teach standing in ankle-deep water — once, or so she claimed, it had been so bad that a girl had actually managed to spear a fish with a compass during a geometry lesson. But over the next two decades the school had grown into a large, successful institution and had acquired a big building near Deshapriya Park. For the last six years before she retired, my grandmother had been its Headmistress.

She had been looking forward to her retirement although she'd grown very attached to the school in the twenty-seven years she had spent there. But she no longer had the stomach for staff-room intrigues and battles with the board, she would tell my parents; she was growing old, she had earned her rest. And besides, my father's career was going well, so she had no real worries left.

27. In this passage the writer tells us what

(A) he saw at the school
(B) he read in a book
(C) he remembers of his grandmother
(D) he was told by his father

28. Grandmother had to stand in ankle-deep water because

(A) the city was flooded by the monsoon rain
(B) she enjoyed doing so
(C) the girls found it interesting
(D) the school had no proper class-rooms

29. As Headmistress, grandmother found unpleasant

(A) the staff-room intrigues
(B) the growing size of the school
(C) the big building near the park
(D) the indiscipline of students

Passage II

Every morning on my way to the office I passed a dog who sat out in front of a butcher's shop. The poor creature looked sad and hungry. I always went in and bought some ground meat, sometimes a bone or two, and gave it to the dog, convinced that I was doing a good deed. The butcher shook his head each time I fed the animal, but that didn't bother me.

One morning an elderly woman living next to the shop opened her window. "Young man", she called out to me, "you certainly are kind to animals. But why on earth do you always feed meat to the butcher's dog ?"

30. The dog was

(A) really hungry and sad
(B) very greedy and sad
(C) probably not very hungry
(D) only deceiving the writer

31. "The butcher shook his head" to say

(A) 'it was foolish to show kindness'
(B) 'it was unnecessary to feed the dog'
(C) 'it was a waste of money to feed the dog'
(D) 'the dog did not like ground meat'

32. The old woman could not understand why

(A) the dog looked hungry and sad
(B) the butcher shook his head

(C) the writer loved dogs
(D) the writer fed the butcher's dog

Directions: *In questions 33–38, there is a sentence of which some parts have been jumbled up. You are required to rearrange these parts which are labelled* **P, Q, R** *and* **S**, *to produce the correct sentence. Choose the correct sequence.*

33. Rajesh
P: Rama who studied
Q: in the same school
R: paid the fees of his friend
S: who was rich

(A) PQRS (B) SRPQ (C) RSPQ (D) SRQP

34. I shall go
P: my work here
Q: to Calcutta
R: I have finished
S: after

(A) PQSR (B) QRPS (C) QSRP (D) PRSQ

35. I saw
P: a dead bull
Q: while walking across
R: the street
S: yesterday

(A) PQRS (B) QPRS (C) QRPS (D) SPQR

36. The social worker devoted
P: to the upliftment
Q: of the people
R: his entire life
S: of his village

(A) QRSP (B) PQRS (C) SRQP (D) RPQS

37. **P:** The doctor prescribed
Q: some antibiotics
R: having examined the patient
S: for over an hour

(A) RSPQ (B) SRPQ (C) QPRS (D) RPQS

38. **P:** I decided to call on him
Q: at the earliest opportunity
R: having heard of the palmist
S: before I came into town

(A) RSPQ (B) PQRS (C) SQPR (D) QPRS

Directions: *In questions* **39** *to* **44**, *there are six sentences marked* S_1, P, Q, R, S, S_6. *The positions of* S_1 *and* S_6 *are fixed. You are required to choose one of the four alternatives given below every passage which would be the most logical sequence of the sentences in the passage.*

39. S_1: The coming of the computer sparked the need for remotely operated controls.

P: It is silicon chip that is at the heart of the remote control.

Q: This produces an infra-red beam, which is made up of electromagnetic waves.

R: When you press the button on the remote control, the chip sets off an electronic vibration.

S: The beam carries a coded signal such as switch on, raise volume, etc.

S_6: The code is based on binary digits.

(A) PQRS (B) PQSR (C) PRQS (D) RPQS

40. S_1: The tooth had abscessed and was causing considerable pain.

P: Finally, in desperation, Inez Pettit went inside a wooden pyramid model and sat down praying for miracles.

Q: Since it was Sunday morning, no dentist was available.

R: What happened she is not sure, but after ten minutes the pain simply faded away.

S: Common pain killers had been of no avail.

S_6: It has not returned to this day.

(A) PSRQ (B) QRSP (C) SRQP (D) QSPR

41. S_1: Instantly, the full load yanked Gordy towards the side of the bridge.

P: But the pull of the cable was too much.

Q: He could hardly feel the cable, slipping through his fingers, ripping off his gloves, and streaking over the railing like an escaping snake.

R: It smashed his hands hard against the top of the railing, causing a split-second feeling of fierce pain followed by numbness.

S: He held on to the cable; it had been hard work lifting it, and he did not want to have to start over again.

S_6: Feeling a sharp burning sensation where the cable was speeding between his thighs, Gordy rose on tiptoe — and as he did, the slithering coil of cable tightened around his left foot and yanked him over the railing.

(A) PRQS (B) SPRQ (C) QSRP (D) RPQS

42. S_1: Welcome to Madam Tussaud's.

P: Famous faces, notorious faces haunt these halls; royalty, and world leaders mingling with sports stars and murderers.

Q: But don't expect any responses to your smiles or greetings.

R: Don't be surprised at anything you see here.

S: See how many you can recognize.
S_6: These life-like, casually posed figures are mere wax statues, though they may look alive.

(A) PSRQ (B) QRPS (C) RPSQ (D) SQRP

43. S_1: I put the phone down and shook my head in bewilderment.
P: Then I am taken in tow by some moonlighting harebrain with a passion for veteran aircraft, flying his own Mosquito through the night who happens to spot me.
Q: What a night, what an incredible night!
R: Then I get lost and short of fuel.
S: First I lose my radio and all my instruments.
S_6: And finally a half-drunk ground-duty officer has the sense to put his runway lights on in time to save me.

(A) QPSR (B) QSRP (C) SPRQ (D) SRPQ

44. S_1: Rammohan Roy was associated with several newspapers.
P: Many educationists protested vigorously against these measures.
Q: But he came to grief soon after the enactment in 1823, of new measures for the control of the press.
R: He brought out a bilingual, Bengali-English magazine.
S: Later, desiring an all-India circulation, he published a weekly in Persian, which was recognized then as the language of the cultured classes all over India.
S_6: Rammohan Roy even addressed a petition to the King-in-Council in England.

(A) RQPS (B) RSQP (C) QPRS (D) RSPQ

Directions: *In the following passage, there are blanks given at certain places. The blanks are numbered 45 to 50. Three alternatives are given for each blank. You are expected first to read the passage and then select the appropriate word for each blank.*

Three-fourth of the surface of our planet is covered by sea. It both separates and unites the various races of mankind. The sea is the great highway ....45...[(a) at (b) along (c) in] which man may journey ..46...[(a) on (b) at (c) for] his will. The sea appeals to man's ...47...[(a) fear (b) dislike (c) love] of the unknown and of knowledge. There is, said to be far ...48...[(a) more (b) much (c) most] living matter in the sea than there is in all the ...49... [(a) sections (b) rest (c) places] of the world. Sea water is full of millions of ...50...[(a) huge (b) new (c) tiny] plants.

SET 2: SSC Asst. Grade Exam, 1992

Directions: *In questions 1 to 5 some of the sentences have errors and some have none. Find out which part of a sentence has an error and mark the circle corresponding to the appropriate letter (A, B, C) in the Answer-sheet. If there is no error, mark the circle corresponding to D.*

1. Between you and I (A)/she is not as brilliant (B)/as others make her out to be. (C)/No error. (D)

2. The more you (A)/beat him with the stick, (B)/he will shout more. (C)/ No error. (D)
3. Suddenly, one of the wheels (A)/of the chariot (B)/ came of. (C)/No error. (D)
4. What will happen (A)/suppose if we do not (B)/meet him there? (C)/No error. (D)
5. The superintendent asked the clerk (A)/whether he has (B)/finished his work. (C)/No error. (D)

Directions: *In questions* **6** *to* **10** *sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate word. Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four and indicate it in the answer-sheet.*

6. This is the.....chosen for the hospital complex to be built next year.
   (A) area (B) locality (C) site (D) sight
7. The injury you have received above your right wrist.....only have been caused by sheer negligence.
   (A) could (B) will (C) can (D) would
8. We have lived in Bombay ever since we.....married.
   (A) were (B) had (C) have (D) are
9. Although they are not rich, they always wear.....clothes.
   (A) respectful (B) respective (C) respectable (D) respected
10. The photographs in the papers bore no.....at all to the original.
   (A) nearness (B) comparison (C) identity (D) resemblance

Directions: *In questions* **11** *to* **15** *groups of four words are given. In each group one word is misspelt. Find the misspelt word and indicate it in the answer-sheet.*

11. (A) Erosion (B) Occassion
    (C) Ovation (D) Evasion
12. (A) Occurrence (B) Nonsense
    (C) Offens (D) Opulence
13. (A) Oppression (B) Supression
    (C) Depression (D) Impression
14. (A) Begining (B) Besiege
    (C) Borne (D) Barrister
15. (A) Embarrasment (B) Merriment
    (C) Judgment (D) Impediment

Directions: *In questions* **1**[illegible] *ur alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase in* ***italics*** *in the* [illegible]*ence. Choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the idiom*[illegible]*hrase in italics and mark it in the answer-sheet.*

16. He is easily deceived by a man with *an oily tongue.*
(A) sweet words (B) clever words
(C) angry words (D) flattering words

17. The boss *brought matters to a head* by forcing him to work more.
(A) created an atmosphere of confrontation
(B) created a lot of unhappiness
(C) brought matters to a decisive point
(D) made him unhappy

18. The boy *turned a deaf ear* to the pleadings of all his well-wishers.
(A) listened carefully (B) was deadly opposed
(C) posed indifference (D) did not pay any attention

19. It will be wise on your part to *let the bygones be bygones.*
(A) revive the past (B) ignore the past
(C) resist the past (D) recollect the past

20. I have been betrayed by my own *flesh and blood.*
(A) friends (B) relatives
(C) children (D) acquaintances

Directions: *In questions* **21** *to* **25**, *out of the four alternatives choose the one which can be substituted for the given words / sentence.*

21. Changing one's mind too quickly
(A) Changeableness (B) Vacillation
(C) Versatility (D) Instability

22. A book containing information on all subjects
(A) Dictionary (B) Appendix
(C) Informative (D) Encyclopaedia

23. One who is neither intelligent nor dull
(A) Commoner (B) Mediocre
(C) Tolerable (D) Diligent

24. Scarcity of rain or water
(A) Drought (B) Draught
(C) Dryness (D) Dehydration

25. Work for which no regular salary is paid
(A) Honourable (B) Honorary
(C) Temporary (D) Ad hoc

Directions: *In questions* **26** *to* **30** *the first and the last parts of the sentence are numbered* 1 *and* 6. *The rest of the sentence is split into four parts and named* P, Q, R *and* S. *These four parts are not given in their proper order. Read the sentence and find out which of the four combinations is correct. Then find the correct answer and indicate it in the answer-sheet.*

26. 1. There are people
P. to be able to say
Q. not because they enjoy the book,
R. who read a book
S. but because they want
6. that they have read it.

(A) PSQR (B) SQPR (C) RSPQ (D) RQSP

27. 1. Ashoka was successful
P. by the cruelty and horrors of war
Q. he was so disgusted
R. in his military operations
S. and alone among conquerors,
6. that he renounced it.

(A) RSQP (B) SQPR (C) QPRS (D) PSQR

28. 1. She had understood
P. so she withdrew herself from the ordinary people,
Q. like a curse to her father's house,
R. that God had sent her,
S. from her earliest childhood
6. and tried to live apart

(A) SRQP (B) PRQS (C) QSPR (D) SPQR

29. 1. As his hunting skill increased,
P. till at last it was as impossible for him
Q. so did his love for the hunt,
R. as it is for the opium eater
S. to pass a day without it
6. to forgo his daily potion.

(A) RSQP (B) PSQR (C) QPSR (D) PQRS

30. 1. People read and recite the Ramayana
P. which refers to those high ideals of human conduct
Q. with great devotion,
R. that aspect of its greatness
S. but they mostly fail to appreciate
6. that this great epic places before us.

(A) RSPQ (B) SRQP (C) QSRP (D) PRQS

Directions: *In the following passage some of the words (31 to 40) have been left out. First read the passage over and try to understand what it is about. Then fill in the blanks with the help of the alternatives given. Mark your answer in the answer-sheet.*

Anyone who contemplates the life and achievements of Jawaharlal Nehru cannot fail to be filled with wonder and admiration. For nearly fifty years, his fame,his...(31)...and his stature were...(32)... almost continually. That he should die ..(33).. his career ..(34).. reached the highest peak was

..(35).., but not inappropriate. The spontaneous outburst of ..(36).. which the news of his death ..(37).. all over the world ..(38).. that his personality had come to be ..(39).. as one of the priceless ..(40)..

31. (A) influence (B) agility (C) dominance (D) authority
32. (A) diminishing (B) succeeding (C) growing (D) flourishing
33. (A) as (B) since (C) where (D) when
34. (A) has (B) had (C) been (D) still
35. (A) surprising (B) sad (C) sudden (D) deplorable
36. (A) sorrow (B) pain (C) tragedy (D) regret
37. (A) conveyed (B) evoked (C) provoked (D) pervaded
38. (A) caused (B) proved (C) effected (D) explained
39. (A) cherished (B) thought (C) looked (D) known
40. (A) assets (B) things (C) possessions (D) memories

Directions: *In questions* **41** *to* **50** *you have two brief passages with 5 questions following each passage. Read the passages carefully and choose the best answer to each question out of the four alternatives and mark it in the answer-sheet.*

Passage–I

Florence Nightingale rendered a unique service when the call came to her from the government to help the wounded and the suffering in the hospital at Scutari during the Crimean War. The conditions in the hospital were horrible. There was dust, indifference and inefficiency. There was hostility to a woman who was assuming such a great public responsibility. It was an insult to the vanity of men. They raised all possible obstacles in the way. But she was an autocrat. She bore down and swept away all opposition. The hospital became an ideal place and the wounded soldiers worshipped her like an angel. The 'lady with the lamp', as the soldiers lovingly called her. became a national heroine. The nation showed its gratitude to her by raising a huge sum for her benefit, but Florence showed herself to be greater by contributing that sum for the setting up of an institution for the training of nurses. Her ambition was not merely to build a profession of nurses but an entire nation of nurses. And she succeeded admirably in her mission.

41. Florence Nightingale found the conditions in the hospital
(A) as usual (B) somewhat bad
(C) extremely bad (D) agreeable

42. Florence Nightingale was opposed in her work because
(A) she wanted to do a good job
(B) it was an insult to men's ego
(C) she was inexperienced
(D) she was trying to help the enemy

43. The implication of the statement 'But she was an autocrat' is
(A) condemnatory (B) indifferent
(C) appreciative (D) clever

44. Florence Nightingale made the hospital
(A) an agreeable place (B) a place of worship
(C) a dust-free place (D) a place for the wounded

45. Florence Nightingale contributed her money to set up an institution for training of nurses because she
(A) was intelligent
(B) was called 'The Lady with the Lamp'
(C) was after fame
(D) loved mankind

Passage–II

All transportation is resource-consuming and pollution-generating. In so far as a transport system uses energy, burns fuel, occupies and degrades valuable land, creates noise, emits fumes, it is damaging to environment. Even so, modern urban societies continue to make ever greater demands on their transportation systems because mobility is also a means of expanding, or at least better utilizing the available resource base--a way of improving the environment. In comparison with most other activities, urban transportation is highly polluting and affects a large number of people. Most of our cities have buses, taxis, scooters and other vehicles. The pollution generated by these vehicles depends on the energy source used. With electric traction the local pollution is the minimum, but it has been shifted to where the power is generated.

46. Resources are consumed by:
(A) transport (B) fuel
(C) land (D) energy

47. Land is occupied by:
(A) trees (B) environment
(C) pollution (D) systems of transport

48. Transport systems are needed by:
(A) children (B) travellers
(C) land owners (D) urban societies

49. Transport systems are harmful, because these:
(A) use energy (B) divide the city
(C) cause pollution (D) kill people

50. Use of electric traction implies:
(A) a lot of pollution
(B) no pollution
(C) shifting of pollution to another place
(D) quick travelling

SET 3: SSC Stenographer Grade 'D' Exam, 1992

Directions: *In questions 1 to 20 some of the sentences have errors and some have none. Find out which part of a sentence has an error and put a cross (X) in the circle corresponding to the appropriate letter (A, B, C). If there is no error, put a (X) in the circle corresponding to (D) in the answer sheet.*

1. He told me that (A)/he has completed the task (B)/I had given him the previous day. (C)/No error (D)
2. Mr Pillai has been (A)/suffering from arthritis (B)/ since many, many years. (C)/No error (D)
3. He is one of those brave men (A)/who are (B)/never afraid of death. (C)/ No error (D)
4. The recent floods (A)/caused many damage (B)/to the houses. (C)/No error (D)
5. The apartment would (A)/look much better after (B)/we put a furniture in it. (C)/No error (D)
6. The father (A)/asked his sons angrily (B)/who has opened the drawer in his absence. (C)/No error (D)
7. If you do not hurry (A)/you must (B)/miss the bus. (C)/No error (D)
8. Charged with theft (A)/he was produced before the magistrate (B)/ where he refused the charge. (C)/No error (D)
9. Sudhir takes (A)/great pain (B)/to complete his work within the prescribed time. (C)/No error (D)
10. He could afford to (A)/be a little more generous (B)/to his poor kith and kin. (C)/No error (D)
11. The Urdu spoken (A)/by the people of Lucknow (B)/is more refined than Hyderabad. (C)/No error (D)
12. Many a person (A)/have done (B)/this sort of thing. (C)/No error (D)
13. The jury (A)/is divided (B)/in their decision. (C)/No error (D)
14. He now proposes (A)/to deal with you in a different manner (B)/than the one he has adopted so far. (C)/No error (D)
15. If the Prime Minister (A)/will issue an appeal (B)/people will contribute liberally. (C)/No error (D)
16. A necklace of diamonds (A)/presented by friends of the bride (B)/were among the presents on view. (C)/No error (D)
17. When he went home (A)/he found that the dog was sitting (B)/besides the bed. (C)/No error (D)
18. There is all sorts of legends about (A)/these caves; it is said that smugglers hid their goods here (B)/and that there is an underground passage leading to the village inn. (C)/No error (D)

19. After doing his graduation, (A)/Mohan went for a world tour (B)/with his bicycle. (C)/No error (D)

20. Let me tell you (A)/I am confident (B)/to win the prize. (C)/No error (D)

Directions: *In questions* **21** *to* **30**, *sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with appropriate words. Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four.*

21. Gavaskar.....one hundred and five runs in that match.
(A) played (B) scored (C) bowled (D) hit

22. I have absolutely no doubt.....the innocence of the accused.
(A) on (B) with (C) over (D) about

23. At present the country is in need of a number of.....social workers.
(A) interested (B) selfish (C) self-centred (D) disinterested

24. He has been recently discharged.....the army.
(A) to (B) from (C) by (D) for

25. He.....that he could speak five languages.
(A) suggested (B) submitted (C) boasted (D) challenged

26. He is the friend.....I trust most.
(A) who (B) whom (C) which (D) him

27. The firm.....its workers very well.
(A) treated (B) regarded (C) behaved (D) cared

28. In some countries the trains.....like clockwork.
(A) go (B) speed (C) run (D) travel

29. I.....people who are good at languages.
(A) support (B) admire (C) attract (D) appeal

30. She always runs short.....money.
(A) to (B) in (C) by (D) of

Directions: *In questions* **31** *to* **40** *choose the word* ***opposite*** *in meaning to the given word and mark it in the answer-sheet.*

31. ANCIENT
(A) new (B) modern
(C) fresh (D) contemporary

32. MISERLY
(A) extravagant (B) hospitable
(C) generous (D) philanthropic

33. LAMENT
(A) rejoice (B) enjoy (C) laugh (D) smile

34. OBVIOUS
(A) obscure (B) difficult (C) uncertain (D) false

35. DECEIT
(A) simplicity (B) gentility (C) sincerity (D) honesty

36. GUILTY
(A) correct (B) true (C) right (D) innocent

37. DESTROY
(A) make (B) produce (C) create (D) invest

38. VIGILANT
(A) careless (B) irresponsible (C) ignorant (D) innocent

39. GLORIOUS
(A) sad (B) painful (C) cowardly (D) humiliating

40. CANDID
(A) vague (B) deceptive (C) cunning (D) rude

Directions: *In questions* **41** *to* **50**, *out of the four alternatives choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the given word.*

41. PURE
(A) clean (B) unmixed (C) fresh (D) clear

42. DOUBT
(A) ignorance (B) dullness (C) mistake (D) disbelief

43. TRIUMPH
(A) excitement (B) victory (C) gain (D) joy

44. OUTSTANDING
(A) admirable (B) prominent (C) notorious (D) interesting

45. VOLUMINOUS
(A) long (B) bulky (C) shining (D) loud

46. APPLAUD
(A) request (B) praise (C) pray (D) flatter

47. ABUNDANT
(A) long (B) heavy (C) plentiful (D) excessive

48. THRIVE
(A) survive (B) revive (C) entertain (D) prosper

49. ECONOMIZE
(A) reduce (B) save (C) minimise (D) accumulate

50. GRUESOME
(A) dark (B) rude (C) painful (D) horrible

Directions: *In questions 51 to 55, groups of four words are given. Each group one word is misspelt. Find the misspelt word.*

51. (A) VARITY (B) VARIOUS
(C) VIRAL (D) VARNISH

52. (A) COMMITTEE (B) CONFRENCE
(C) CONFUSION (D) CONTROL

53. (A) DECEIVE (B) RECEIVE
(C) RELIEVE (D) BELEIVE

54. (A) MATTRESS (B) MATERIAL
(C) MATHAMATICS (D) MATRIMONY

55. (A) OCEAN (B) OCCASION
(C) OBVIOUS (D) OCUPATION

Directions: *In questions 56 to 60 four alternatives are given for the idiom/phrase in* ***bold*** *in the sentence. Choose the one which best expresses the meaning of the idiom/phrase in* ***bold***.

56. His dealings are all **above board**.
(A) simple (B) decent
(C) open (D) friendly

57. He **threw cold water over** the project that the secretary ha prepared.
(A) rejected (B) encouraged
(C) cleared (D) discouraged

58. There is no need to **rake up** an old quarrel.
(A) forget (B) revive
(C) start (D) end

59. My car **broke down** on way to college yesterday.
(A) met with an accident
(B) broke into pieces
(C) stopped due to mechanical failure
(D) dashed against another vehicle

60. The prices are going up by **leaps and bounds**.
(A) irregularly (B) gradually
(C) rapidly (D) systematically

Directions: *In questions 61 to 65 a sentence has been given in direct speech. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in indirect speech.*

61. My friend said to me, "Has your father returned from Calcutta?"
(A) My friend said to me that my father has returned from Calcutt
(B) My friend asked me if my father had returned from Calcutta.
(C) My friend told me that his father had returned from Calcutta.
(D) My friend enquired me if his father had returned from Calcutt

2. He said to his servant, "Why are you so lazy today?"
   (A) He asked his servant why was he so lazy that day.
   (B) He asked his servant why he was being so lazy that day.
   (C) He asked his servant why he had been so lazy that day.
   (D) He asked his servant why he was so lazy that day.

3. He said, "Will you listen to such a man?"
   (A) He asked them will you listen to such a man.
   (B) He asked them are you listening to such a man.
   (C) He asked them whether they would listen to such a man.
   (D) He asked them whether they will listen to such a man.

4. He said to me, "What time do the offices close?"
   (A) He asked me what time the offices did close.
   (B) He asked me what time the offices closed.
   (C) He asked me what time did the offices close.
   (D) He wanted to know what time the offices close.

5. I said to my brother, "Let us go to some hill station for a change."
   (A) I asked my brother if he would go to some hill station for a change.
   (B) I asked my brother to go to some hill station for a change.
   (C) I permitted my brother to go to some hill station for a change.
   (D) I suggested to my brother that we should go to some hill station for a change.

Directions: *In questions* **66** *to* **70** *the first and the last parts of the sentence are numbered* 1 *and* 6. *The rest of the sentence is split into four parts and named* P, Q, R *and* S. *These four parts are not given in their proper order. Read the sentence and find out which of the four combinations is correct.*

6. (1) They're mostly people
   (P) and they find the club very convenient,
   (Q) to get a reasonable meal
   (R) who work in the neighbourhood,
   (S) because it enables them
   (6) without too much trouble.

   (A) PQRS (B) RPSQ (C) SQRP (D) QPRS

7. (1) The first component is
   (P) and vocational training
   (Q) so as to enable them
   (R) the provision of further technical
   (S) to both rural and urban youth
   (6) to secure employment in industry and the services sector

   (A) PRSQ (B) RSQP (C) RPSQ (D) SRPQ

8. (1) The Arabs live in tents
   (P) so that they can move from one oasis to another
   (Q) and taken down very easily and quickly

(R) seeking grass and water
(S) that can be put up
(6) for their sheep, goats, camels and horses.

(A) PRSQ (B) SQPR (C) SRPQ (D) QSPR

68. (1) In this stage of the world
(P) that their gross ignorance of one another should be diminished
(Q) it is essential,
(R) when many nations are brought into close and vital contact for good and evil,
(S) as never before
(6) that they should begin to understand a little of one another's historical experience and resulting mentality.

(A) PQRS (B) PSRQ (C) PRSQ (D) RQSP

70. (1) Above all,
(P) in the present age of light reading,
(Q) it is well if something heavier is cast now and then
(R) of reading hastily and thoughtlessly,
(S) that is,
(6) into the midst of the reading public.

(A) PQRS (B) PSRQ (C) PRQS (D) QSRP

Directions: *In questions 71 to 75 a part of the sentence is* ***darkened****. Alternatives to the* ***darkened*** *part, which may improve the sentence, are given as A, B, and C. Choose the appropriate alternative. In case no improvement is needed, choose 'D'.*

71. The farmers **are working** in the field right from sunrise and will continue to do so till sunset.

(A) were working (B) have been working
(C) had worked (D) no improvement

72. You must find **someone** to accompany you to Bombay.

(A) anyone (B) no one
(C) everyone (D) no improvement

73. My mother asked me when **would I** have a glass of milk.

(A) I would (B) I will
(C) I shall (D) no improvement

74. He is **so handsome** man that people turn round to look at him.

(A) so handsome (B) very handsome
(C) such a handsome (D) no improvement

75. Since 1998, there **is no earthquakes here**.

(A) are (B) have been
(C) were being (D) no improvement

Directions: *In the following passage some of the words (76 to 85) have been left out. First read the passage over and try to understand what it is about. Then fill in the blanks with the help of the alternatives given.*

Interviews are very important for all of us. We must face interviews with confidence. There is ...(76) any person who at one time or the other has not ...(77) an interview situation. While ...(78) are a day-to-day ...(79) for people who ...(80) with others in their daily chores, we are here ...(81) with interview situations when one is a ...(82) aspiring for an ...(83). Such situations, not very ...(84) happen in one's life, are ...(85) when the candidate likes to come on top of the situation. This calls for careful study and preparation.

76. (A) possibly (B) probably
(C) perhaps (D) hardly

77. (A) measured (B) seen
(C) faced (D) known

78. (A) meetings (B) discussions
(C) interviews (D) seminars

79. (A) happening (B) feeling
(C) possibility (D) experience

80. (A) react (B) concern
(C) speak (D) interact

81. (A) interested (B) involved
(C) concerned (D) meeting

82. (A) student (B) person
(C) beggar (D) candidate

83. (A) establishment (B) elevation
(C) estimation (D) employment

84. (A) important (B) consequent
(C) frequent (D) happy

85. (A) occasions (B) hours
(C) minutes (D) times

Directions: *In questions* **86** *to* **95** *you have two brief passages with questions following each passage. Read the passages carefully and choose the best answer to each question out of the four alternatives and mark it on the answer-sheet.*

PASSAGE I

Panna Lal Banerjee, safety officer of the Mahabir Colliery (coal mine) awakened with a start. His phone was ringing. As he grabbed the receiver, Banerjee looked at his watch. It was 4.30 am— not a time for good news. Sure enough, Banerjee's blood began racing as he heard the frantic voice of overman Faujdar Singh from 86 metres below ground level. "Water is gushing in with great force!" Singh screamed. "The mine's flooding!"

"Try to get everyone out," Banerjee told Faujdar. "I'm on my way."

86. This passage describes an accident
(A) in the air
(B) outside a colliery
(C) in a colliery union office
(D) inside a colliery

87. After hearing the phone call, Banerjee
(A) went back to sleep
(B) sat motionless and still
(C) reported the matter to his seniors
(D) went into quick action

88. As a result of the accident, the mine was—
(A) getting covered with smoke and gas
(B) getting filled with water
(C) getting engulfed in fire
(D) getting caved in

89. While reporting the accident, Faujdar Singh's voice sounded
(A) calm and relaxed
(B) slightly worried
(C) relieved
(D) wildly anxious

90. Banerjee sent instructions that workers
(A) should stay put where they are
(B) should try to hold back water
(C) should try to come out of the mine
(D) should wait for further instructions

PASSAGE II

On the 16th August, 1987 when I was told I had cancer of the lungs, my relatives and friends were alarmed at the apparent calm with which I received the news. I suppose they overlooked the fact that at my age (I turned 72 on January 26) you develop a practical acceptance which helps face the impact of even such shockers. Besides, the tendency to set a good example as head of a large family somehow grows on you. However, despite the outward bravado, deep inside I was jolted by the news. This was because as far back as I can remember, my health had never given me cause for concern.

91. The 'I' in this passage stands for—
(A) the nurse
(B) the patient
(C) the doctor
(D) an accident victim

92. The narrator in this passage suffers from—
(A) tuberculosis
(B) typhoid
(C) cancer of the lungs
(D) bone cancer

93. In terms of age, the patient is—
(A) a young man
(B) a school-going kid
(C) a middle-aged person
(D) an old man

94. On hearing of the disease that has struck him, the narrator feels—

(A) relieved (B) anxious
(C) indifferent (D) shocked

95. Before the disease struck him, the narrator's health had always been—

(A) good (B) poor
(C) indifferent (D) full of problems

SET 4: BSRB (Bombay) PO Exam, 1992

Directions: *Read the following passage and answer the questions given below it. Certain words/group of words in the passage have been* ***darkened*** *to help you locate them easily for answering some of the questions:*

It is common knowledge that the root cause of our backwardness in most **fields** is illiteracy. Campaigns for the **eradication** of this drawback **gathered momentum** in the past four decades after independence. The results are, as expected, dramatic. However, while the percentage of literacy in India is going up, the number of illiterates has also been increasing, which is really incredible. Thus, according to the 1991 census figures, there were 503 million illiterates in the country, 30 million more than in 1981. During the same period, the percentage of literacy went up from 34 to 39 percent. There is no need of any sophisticated technique to explain the cause of this paradox, as it is obviously the result of the rapid growth of population. The rapid growth of population has **outpaced** whatever little progress had been achieved in literacy. For instance, from 1971 to 1981, literacy increased at an annual average rate of 0.7 per cent, while the country's population grew by 2.15 per cent every year. In the following decade the average rate of annual increase in literacy was 0.95 percent, whereas the population grew by almost 2.85 percent every year during that decade. But population explosion is not entirely responsible for the growing number of illiterates. The apathy of most states in failing to tackle the problem of adult illiteracy is also partly to blame. Till now, they have shown little awareness of the **magnitude** of the problem. Moreover, follow-up measures to prevent **neo-literates** from relapsing into illiteracy are just as important as the initial adult literacy campaigns. In this case too, the state education authorities are negligent. Not sufficient provision has been made for 'continued education'. This can be done by setting up more rural libraries, adult schools and correspondence courses.

1. The percentage of literacy in 1981 was—

(A) 30 (B) 34 (C) 39
(D) Not mentioned in the passage
(E) None of these

2. Which of the following has been referred to as a paradox?
   (A) The literacy percentage and the number of illiterates are bot increasing.
   (B) The government is sensitive to the problem only at the plannin stage but not at the implementation stage.
   (C) The literacy percentage increases but the number of illiterate decreases.
   (D) The literacy percentage increases in proportion to the rate (increase in population.
   (E) None of these
3. According to the passage, during the decade from 1971 to 198 literacy increased by—
   (A) 0.7 per cent
   (B) 34 per cent
   (C) 39 per cent
   (D) 2.15 per cent
   (E) None of these
4. In the passage, the rapid growth of population has been attribute to—
   (A) illiteracy
   (B) apathy of Govt officials
   (C) lack of reading facilities
   (D) lack of reading facilities
   (E) None of these
5. According to the passage, the problem could have been tackled by on or more of the following measures—
   (1) checking the growth of population
   (2) making the adult literacy campaign more effective
   (3) providing continued education to neo-literates
   (A) Only by (1) and (3)
   (B) Only by (1) and (2)
   (C) Only by (2) and (3)
   (D) By all the three
   (E) None of these
6. Which of the following appears unbelievable, according to the pa sage?
   (A) The increase in literacy percentage and also the increase i number of illiterates
   (B) Apathy of the government departments towards adult educatio programmes
   (C) Population explosion is the only reason for increase in the numbe of illiterates.
   (D) Growing illiteracy is owing to non-availability of reading facilitie to rural masses.
   (E) Sufficient provision for continued education has not been mad
7. Which of the following is as important as the literacy campaign?
   (A) awareness of the magnitude of the problem of illiteracy
   (B) making sufficient provision for continued education

(C) starting correspondence courses and providing reading facilities
(D) checking the rapid growth of population
(E) apathy of the Education departments of the states

9. The term 'Neo-literate' as used in the passage refers to a person who
(A) is not literate
(B) is a little literate
(C) has newly become literate
(D) is a literate with no school education
(E) is illiterate but capable of becoming literate with formal training

10. Which of the following statements is/are NOT TRUE in the context of the passage?
(1) An effective check on population growth is the only solution for attainment of full literacy.
(2) The cause of the paradox mentioned in the passage can be explained by using sophisticated techniques.
(3) Adequate number of libraries and adult schools are not available in our country.
(A) Only (1) is not true.
(B) Only (2) is not true.
(C) Only (3) is not true.
(D) (1) and (2) are not true.
(E) All the three are not true.

0. Which of the following is TRUE in the context of the passage?
(A) Literacy campaign achieved desired results in the post-independence period.
(B) All the State Governments have now fully realised the problem of illiteracy.
(C) Once a person becomes literate, he remains literate for ever.
(D) Literacy campaigns in the pre-independence period were more fruitful than the later ones.
(E) Continued education programmes are now adequately funded.

Directions: (11–15) *Pick out the word / group of words which is most early the SAME in meaning as the word / group of words printed in bold s used in the passage.*

1. Magnitude
(A) attraction (B) weight (C) value
(D) assessment (E) gravity

2. Outpaced
(A) occupied (B) nullified (C) spoiled completely
(D) surpassed (E) ruled out

3. Gathered momentum
(A) became dynamic (B) gained much (C) collected funds
(D) lost inertia (E) became effective

14. Fields
(A) fertile farms (B) barren land (C) areas of operation
(D) open surfaces (E) covered areas

15. Eradication
(A) nourishing (B) removal (C) destruction
(D) evaporation (E) starvation

Directions: (16–25) *Read each sentence to find out whether there is any error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is* (E) *i.e., No error.*

16. The author mentioned that (A)/there were many people (B)/who were deprived of (C)/the minimum basic facilities. (D)/No error (E)

17. One of his greatest contribution (A)/to social reform (B)/was his movement for (C)/eradication of child-marriages. (D)/No error (E)

18. The Government decided to (A)/write of the debts (B)/of the farmers who were (C)/below the poverty line. (D)/No error (E)

19. Had the train services been normal (A)/I would have reached (B)/the place quite well (C)/ahead of the scheduled time. (D)/No error (E)

20. Having his breakfast finish (A)/he rushed quickly (B)/to the station to receive (C)/the honourable guests. (D)/No error (E)

21. According to the team manager (A)/the captain's performance was (B)/ worse of all (C)/players in the team. (D)/No error (E)

22. The proposal will be (A)/passed with a comfortable (B)/majority if all (C)/the members of his group favours it. (D)/No error (E)

23. People are aware that (A)/drinking water cannot be (B)/so pure as (C)/ it should have. (D)/No error (E)

24. The basic human needs are (A)/so important that (B)/unless they are satisfied (C)/man can't be happy. (D)/No error (E)

25. What does a person do (A)/as a social worker should (B)/be the same as what (C)/he does as an individual. (D)/No error (E)

Directions: *In the following passage there are blanks, each of which has been numbered. These numbers are printed below the passage and against each, five words are suggested, one of which fits the blank appropriately. Find out the appropriate words:*

The ancients believed that there is one great consciousness ...(26) in ...(27) from matter to man. Of course, its ...(28) is not the same in every object. In matters like the rocks or the sands, the consciousness is in ...(29) condition. In plants, the consciousness is only half-awake. In animals and birds, it is ...(30) active. But in man its degree is the ...(31).

Because of this ...(32) of man over everything else on the earth, he is expected to ...(33) in a responsible way. Man has ... (34) from Nature, he

depends for his survival on Nature. That is why he should (35) with Nature with love and respect.

26. (A) inherent (B) created (C) imbibed (D) lacking (E) planted
27. (A) human beings (B) animals (C) plants (D) organisms (E) everything
28. (A) development (B) reason (C) manifestation (D) function (E) purpose
29. (A) active (B) absolute (C) silent (D) dormant (E) normal
30. (A) seldom (B) more (C) often (D) less (E) never
31. (A) highest (B) best (C) superlative (D) minimum (E) lowest
32. (A) gift (B) quality (C) superiority (D) consciousness (E) degree
33. (A) devote (B) consider (C) absolve (D) treat (E) act
34. (A) developed (B) obviated (C) withdrawn (D) emerged (E) forsaken
35. (A) resolve (B) deal (C) cope (D) remain (E) continue

Directions: (36-40). *Each question below has two blanks. There are five pairs of words below the sentence. Each pair is numbered. Choose the pair of words which can be filled up in the blanks in the sentence in the same order so as to complete the sentence meaningfully.*

36. The bandit.....the traveller of his purse of gold and.....him grievously.
(A) robbed, wounded (B) snatched, hurt
(C) stole, injured (D) robbed, escaped
(E) demanded, beat

37. There are certain animals which can live both.....water and.....land.
(A) in, the (B) without, also
(C) under, the (D) in, on
(E) into, the

38. Despite their strong resentment the tribals.....the new laws as long as the Government Officials did not.....them too strenuously.
(A) amended, follow (B) welcomed, observe
(C) opposed, hurt (D) laid, punish
(E) tolerated, enforce

39. Although the leader's life was both.....and painful, it was not without.....for he had accomplished many of his goals.

(A) happy, frustration
(B) thrilling, danger
(C) arduous, satisfaction
(D) purposeful, ambition
(E) magnificent, success

40. I shall.....him if he.....to me for his misconduct.
(A) punish, abuses
(B) forgive, apologizes
(C) pardon, forgives
(D) obey, commands
(E) reprimand, disobeys

Directions: (41-45). *Which of the phrases (A), (B), (C) and (D) given below each sentence should replace the phrase printed in* ***bold*** *in each of the following sentences to make the sentence grammatically correct? If the sentence is correct as it is, mark (E) i.e.,'No correction required' as the answer.*

41. Is it **obliged to** me to concur with the views expressed by you in your article?
(A) obligatory for
(B) obliged for
(C) too obliged
(D) too obligatory
(E) No correction required

42. **What matters most is** one's behaviour with others?
(A) What is most matter
(B) What does matter most is
(C) What most is matter
(D) What should most matter is
(E) No correction required

43. How one earned money is more important than how much **he earned**?
(A) one earned
(B) he has earned
(C) he should have earned
(D) one earns
(E) No correction required

44. Anybody would **like assist you** for improvement in the work.
(A) like assist to you
(B) like to assist you
(C) you like assist
(D) you like to assist
(E) No correction required

45. This is one of the most remarkable stories **that has ever** been told so far.
(A) those has ever
(B) those ever have
(C) that have ever
(D) that those ever have
(E) No correction required

Directions: (46-50). *In each sentence below, four words which are printed in* ***bold*** *have been numbered (A), (B), (C) and (D). One of them may be either wrongly spelt or inappropriate in the context of the sentence. Find out the word which is wrongly spelt or inappropriate, if there is any. The number of that word is the answer. If all the words printed in* ***bold*** *are spelt correctly and appropriate in the context, mark (E) as the answer.*

46. The **ties** (A)/of love and **affection** (B)/are more important than **religious** (C)/**dogmas**.(D)/ All correct (E).

47. To strengthen (A)/his arguments (B)/the lawyer showed to the judge some of the experts (C)/from a magazine. (D)/All correct (E).
48. He was the only influential (A)/person to be impressed (B)/by his scholarly (C)/deliberations.(D)/ All correct (E).
49. They made substantial (A)/investment (B)/in production of fertilizers (C)/and insecticides.(D)/ All correct (E).
50. The descriptions (A)/in his autobiography (B)/range wide (C)/ from fanciful to matter-of-fact.(D)/ All correct (E).

SET 5: BSRB (Patna) Clerical Grade Exam, 1992

Directions (1-15) *Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below it. Certain words/phrases are printed in bold type to help you to locate them while answering some of the questions:*

A mouse, a tortoise, a crow and a deer were once the best of friends. They lived peacefully in a large forest by the side of lake. It was the habit of the friends to meet daily for a chat. But one day the deer failed to turn up and thus others began to wonder. The crow felt that the deer could have been caught in a trap. He offered to fly over the forest to see if he could spot the deer anywhere. And off he went. True enough, soon far below he spotted his friend, the deer, caught in a trap. The crow flew down to him at once. "My friend, how did this happen?" he asked anxiously. "I didn't notice this hunter's trap", explained the deer in tears. After promising to save him, the crow flew back to tell the others.

"Take the mouse with you", said the tortoise, on hearing the story. "He can gnaw at the net with his teeth". The mouse sat on the crow's back and together they went to the spot where the deer was. The mouse set to work and soon had the deer free. The tortoise, in the meanwhile, had arrived on the scene and the four became a happy group. However, all of a sudden the hunter appeared in the distance and the friends scattered. The deer raced away; the crow flew to a tree; and the mouse hid in a hole. Only the tortoise was left. He tried to make it to some bushes, but the hunter was too fast. He caught the tortoise, put him in a bag and carried him away.

The others witnessed the happenings with sadness. "We must save him but how to do it ?" asked the mouse. "Leave it to me", said the deer. "I will run ahead of the hunter. When he sees me he is sure to drop his bag and give chase. When he does this, you two get hold of the bag and set our friend free." With that the deer ran off and as expected, when the hunter saw him, he dropped his bag and gave chase. But the deer was too fast and soon raced out of sight. When the hunter returned he discovered that his bag was empty. He walked away in dejection. The four friends were overjoyed at being together again.

1. What did the deer do to save the tortoise?

(A) The deer chased away the hunter.
(B) The deer opened the bag and freed the tortoise.

(C) The deer ran ahead of the hunter to distract him.
(D) The deer took the bag from the hunter and ran away.
(E) The deer told the mouse to cut open the bag.

5. Which of the following activities was not done by the crow to save the deer?
(A) The crow cut open the net and freed the deer.
(B) The crow flew over the forest in search of the deer.
(C) The crow took the mouse to the spot where the deer was trapped.
(D) The crow informed his friends about the fate of the deer.
(E) The crow acted upon the advice given by the tortoise.

3. The deer failed to turn up for the daily chat with his friends because:
(A) He wanted to save the tortoise.
(B) He fell into a deep pit.
(C) He was chasing the hunter.
(D) He was caught in a trap.
(E) None of these.

4. What did the hunter do to the tortoise?
(A) He hid the tortoise in a bush.
(B) He caught the tortoise in a net.
(C) He released the tortoise from the bag.
(D) He put the tortoise in a trap.
(E) None of these

5. How did the mouse reach the spot where the deer was trapped?
(A) The mouse was carried by the crow.
(B) The mouse walked along with the tortoise.
(C) The mouse raced ahead of the hunter to reach the spot.
(D) The mouse was carried by the tortoise on its back.
(E) None of these

6. The deer was set free by_____
(A) the hunter
(B) the tortoise
(C) the crow
(D) the mouse
(E) None of these

7. Which of the following statements is true in the context of passage?
(A) The hunter dropped the bag containing the tortoise when he saw the deer.
(B) The crow and the mouse offered to go in search of the deer when he did not turn up.
(C) The hunter suddenly appeared when the four friends were having their daily chat.
(D) When the hunter returned after chasing the deer he found his bag missing.
(E) None of these

8. Which of the following statements is NOT true in the context of the passage?
   (A) The tortoise was caught by the hunter because he was not fast enough to hide himself.
   (B) It was the mouse who came up with the idea which saved the deer.
   (C) The crow and the mouse were not at all caught by the hunter.
   (D) The deer's plan succeeded in rescuing the tortoise from the hunter.
   (E) An incident that took place after the release of the deer made the animals unhappy.

9. What did the deer mean when he said, "Leave it to me"?
   (A) The deer wanted to entrust him with the task of rescuing the tortoise.
   (B) The deer wanted others to save the tortoise and leave him in peace.
   (C) The deer wanted others to leave him alone to think about a plan to save the tortoise.
   (D) The deer wanted others to let him be taken away by the hunter.
   (E) The deer wanted that the idea of rescuing the tortoise be given up.

Directions (10-12): *Choose the word which is most nearly the same in meaning as the word or group of words printed in* ***bold*** *type as used in the passage.*

10. **Notice**
   (A) escape (B) understand (C) care
   (D) see (E) prevent

11. **Spot**
   (A) place (B) catch (C) dot
   (D) appear (E) locate

12. **Scene**
   (A) view (B) site (C) stage
   (D) landscape (E) occasion

Directions (13-15): *Choose the word which is the most OPPOSITE in meaning of the word printed in* ***bold*** *type as used in the passage.*

13. **Ahead**
   (A) before (B) behind (C) above
   (D) against (E) below

14. **Give chase**
   (A) follow (B) receive (C) lead
   (D) escape (E) approach

15. **Scattered**
   (A) separated (B) attached (C) mixed
   (D) connected (E) gathered

Directions (16-25): *Read each sentence to find out whether there is any error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is '5'. (Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any.)*

16. No sooner did she (1) receive the award there (2) was loud applause (3) from the audience (4). No error (5).
17. It was decided not (1) to include him in (2) the team for the (3) world cup competition (4). No error (5).
18. Edison has not only invented (1) the electric bulb but (2) also the film projector (3) used in cinema theatres (4). No error (5).
19. He has been going to (1) develop a medicine for (2) this disease for (3) the last ten years (4). No error (5).
20. As sooner did the (1) actress stepped out (2) of her car, people (3) gathered around her (4). No error (5).
21. They have agreed (1) to give him (2) anything whatever (3) he asks for (4). No error (5).
22. From thirty and (1) forty per cent of the (2) people of this village (3) suffer from malaria (4). No error (5).
23. Ashwini was fastest than (1) Vandana, but, was not (2) fast enough to defeat (3) Shiny in the race (4). No error (5).
24. We were about to (1) hire a taxi when (2) John stopped his car (3) and gave us a lift (4). No error (5).
25. One of the issues (1) which was discussed (2) in the meeting (3) was raised by me (4). No error (5).

Directions (26-30): *In each of the following questions, five words are given which are denoted by* A, B, C, D & E. *By using all the five words, each only once, you have to frame a meaningful and grammatically correct sentence. The correct order of the words is your answer. Mark your answer on the answer-sheet.*

26. (A) Seen
(B) We
(C) Coming
(D) Had
(E) Him

(1) DEABC
(2) BDAEC
(3) EBDAC
(4) BDEAC
(5) BDCAE

27. (A) To
(B) Son
(C) Me
(D) Your
(E) Send

(1) ACDBE
(2) DBECA
(3) EDBAC
(4) BECAD
(5) CEADB

28. (A) Him
(B) At
(C) To

(1) DEBCA
(2) ABDEC
(3) ECABD

(D) Once
(E) Go

(4) EBACD
(5) EDCBA

29. (A) In
(B) Some
(C) Put
(D) It
(E) Sugar

(1) BECDA
(2) ECBAD
(3) CEBAD
(4) CBEAD
(5) ADBEC

30. (A) Him
(B) Anyone
(C) Has
(D) Before
(E) Bet

(1) DBCEA
(2) BCEDA
(3) DABCE
(4) CAEBD
(5) CBEDA

Directions (31-40): *Pick out the most effective word from the given words to fill in the blank to make the sentence complete.*

31. He was told not to worry.....the matter.
(A) for (B) at (C) of
(D) about (E) with

32. The suitcase was left outside and was.....away by someone.
(A) took (B) taking (C) takes
(D) take (E) taken

33. Alok's father disapproved.....his intention to become an actor.
(A) on (B) of (C) at
(D) for (E) in

34. On.....trip to the Himalayas we visited several temples there.
(A) his (B) their (C) our
(D) its (E) whose

35. The cat was killed by a truck which went.....it.
(A) under (B) on (C) about
(D) over (E) through

36. .....I had that book with me, I did not give it to him.
(A) However (B) Unless (C) Because
(D) Although (E) But

37. One can.....these skills by one's own efforts.
(A) perform (B) collect (C) frame
(D) prepare (E) require

38. Sarita could not prevent her child.....going out with the other children.
(A) over (B) from (C) in
(D) for (E) about

39. The statue was.....heavy that a crane was brought to lift it.
(A) as (B) much (C) so
(D) too (E) very

40. I put on warm clothes so that I might not ....cold
(A) attack (B) catch (C) take
(D) affect (E) keep

Directions (41-45): *Pick, out of the four alternatives, the synonym of the word in bold letter.*

41. **Conceal**
(A) get (B) avoid (C) keep
(D) hide (E) steal

42. **Adequate**
(A) extra (B) maximum (C) less
(D) sufficient (E) None of these

43. **Admit**
(A) realise (B) commit (C) accept
(D) decide (E) apologize

44. **Content**
(A) aware (B) encourage (C) satisfied
(D) careful (E) humble

45. **Oversee**
(A) glance (B) contest (C) hold
(D) look (E) supervise

Rearrange the following:

(A) Someone called out my name as I was about to step in.
(B) I then decided to go inside to watch the movie.
(C) As promised, I waited for him near the theatre.
(D) When I turned around, I saw him rushing towards me.
(E) He did not turn up even after an hour.

Tick which of the above sentences would come at:

	A	B	C	D	E
46. First position—	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
47. 2nd position—	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
48. 3rd position—	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
49. 4th position—	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
50. 5th position—	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

SET 6 : RR Board (Bhubaneshwar)
Asstt Station Master Exam, 1993

Directions (Q.1-10): *In the following sentences fill in the blanks with correct prepositions / words.*

1. You must dispense .....his services.
(A) of (B) with (C) at (D) in

2. My friend has a strange habit of turning ..... at odd hours.
(A) out (B) down (C) up (D) over

3. I took that person ..... a thief.
(A) as (B) to (C) for (D) after

4. I was playing ..... a guitar when he came.
(A) over (B) with (C) at (D) of

5. Speak loudly as he is slow ..... hearing.
(A) at (B) in (C) of (D) about

6. He has resigned himself ..... fate.
(A) in (B) to (C) for (D) at

7. The teacher warned him ..... that type of lapse.
(A) of (B) with (C) in (D) against

8. ..... you do not work you cannot succeed.
(A) Unless (B) Until (C) Till (D) If

9. I wish I ..... taller.
(A) were (B) had been (C) could be (D) would be

10. It has been raining ..... morning.
(A) from (B) till (C) since (D) for

Directions (Q.11-15): *Pick up the correct **synonyms** for each of the following words.*

11. Counsel
(A) Advise (B) Oppose (C) Publish (D) Correct

12. Audacious
(A) Manifest (B) Obvious (C) Venture (D) Daring

13. Cite
(A) Good (B) Quote (C) Sight (D) Place

14. Chaos
(A) Lawlesssness (B) Inexperienced
(C) Disturb (D) Mould

15. Affluent
(A) Talkative (B) Poor (C) Prosperous (D) Close

Directions (Q. 16-20): *Pick up the correct **antonyms** for each of the following words:*

16. Definite
(A) Deficit (B) Debtor (C) Vague (D) Coward

17. Fact
(A) Story (B) Fiction (C) Discussion (D) Darkness

18. Hostile
(A) Friendly (B) Inimical (C) Sportive (D) Decisive

19. Flexible
(A) Strong (B) Hard (C) Powerful (D) Rigid

20. Boost
(A) Hinder (B) Obstruct (C) Discourage (D) Rebuke

Directions (Q.21-25): *Read each sentence to find out whether there is any error in any part of the sentence. Write the number of the part which contains the error.*

21. Hari was unhappy (A)/that he would (B)/not attend the marriage (C)/ of his friend yesterday. (D)

22. Rama could not (A)/go to the picnic (B)/for his mother (C)/was not well. (D)

23. Sarita was popular (A)/with her classmates that (B)/she always had someone or (C)/the other coming to her house. (D)

24. The programme which (A)/came on television (B)/these days in the evenings (C)/is very interesting .(D)

25. Prakash was leading (A)/a happy and leisurely (B)/life after his retirement (C)/from service. (D)

Directions (Q.26-30): *Pick up the correct feminine gender of the following words:*

26. Bachelor
(A) Maiden (B) Lady (C) Spinster (D) Baby

27. Gander.
(A) Goose (B) Ganderess (C) Grandma (D) Gantry

28. Duke
(A) Empress (B) Duch (C) Dukes (D) Duchess

29. Prosecutor
(A) Prostitute (B) Prosecutrix
(C) Prosecutoress (C) Prosecutry

30. Lad
(A) Lass (B) Lady (C) Lord (D) Maid

Directions (Q.31-35): *Give the correct meaning of the following familiar foreign words and phrases.*

31. Bona fide
(A) Bonanza (B) Bonfire (C) Genuine (D) Intention

32. Impasse
(A) Deadlock (B) Disturbance
(C) Impact (D) Important

33. Vis-a-vis
(A) Versus (B) Opposite (C) Violent (D) Version

34. In camera
(A) To take snap (B) Inside
(C) In fact (D) In secret

35. Null and void
(A) Blank (B) Not important
(C) Invalid (D) Illegal

Directions (Q.36–40): *Read the following passage and pick up the correct answer to the questions which follow the passage.*

Gandhiji recognized that while all men should have equal opportunity, all did not have the same capacity. Some had the ability to earn more than others. But he believed that those who had talent would be performing the work of society if they used their talent wisely and well. Gandhiji said that he would allow a man of intellect to earn more and not suppress his talent. But it was his view that the bulk of his larger earnings should go to the common fund. Those with talent and opportunity would find their fulfilment as trustees. Gandhiji extended this concept of trusteeship to cover all fields of life.

36. Gandiji never believed in
(A) social equality (B) equality of opportunities
(C) political equality (D) complete equality in all respects

37. Trusteeship concept of Gandhiji is
(A) a philosophy (B) applicable to social life only
(C) irrelevant today (D) applicable to all fields of life

38. According to Gandhiji one can serve the society
(A) if he is talented (B) if he uses his talent wisely
(C) if he earns well (D) if he works honestly

39. The title of the passage should be
(A) Gandhiji's character (B) Gandhiji's views
(C) Gandhiji's services (D) Gandhiji's philosophy

40. The meaning of "Trustee" is
(A) person who has charge of property in trust
(B) state official who executes wills and trusts
(C) person having confidence
(D) a number of trusts

SET 1 : BSRB (Patna) Clerical Grade Exam, 1993

Directions (Q.1–15): *Read the following passage carefully and answer the questions given below it. Certain words in the passage are printed in bold to help you locate them while answering some of the questions.*

Sultan Nasiruddin was a wise and just ruler. Everybody sang his praises. He was kind to the poor. He used to distribute money to the poor and the needy. His treasury was full of wealth. In spite of having so much wealth, he did not spend anything on himself. He earned his living by copying the holy book of the Muslims. Though a king, he felt that he must earn his own livelihood. He led a simple life. His wife was forced to do all the household chores. She had to cook her food, sweep the floor, make clothes and do many other household duties. At night, she complained of severe pain in her body. She muttered to herself. "My life is so miserable. I am tired of working from morning to evening."

One day, while cooking food, she burnt her fingers. She started weeping. On seeing her weeping, Sultan Nasiruddin asked her, "Begum, what is the matter?" The queen started grumbling. "See, I have burnt my fingers. In spite of my being a queen, I have to work like other poor women. Why don't you employ some maid-servant?" Sultan Nasiruddin replied, "No, Begum. I earn my livelihood by copying the Koran. My income does not permit me to spend lavishly." The queen was annoyed. She said, "Sultan, for whom is this treasury full? As a king, you must spend on yourself and your family." Sultan Nasiruddin disagreed. He replied, "Begum, you are mistaken. I cannot touch the treasure. It is people's wealth. I am answerable to God. I must earn my livelihood." The begum was quiet. She was convinced by the Sultan's argument and accepted it willingly.

1. The queen got annoyed because.....
   (A) she had burnt her fingers
   (B) of the Sultan's statement about his own income
   (C) the Sultan was busy copying the holy book
   (D) of the Sultan's undue concern for her

2. Why did Sultan Nasiruddin not use the money in the treasury for himself?
   (A) He was afraid that his subjects would accuse him of theft.
   (B) He had already distributed the money to the poor.
   (C) He wanted to annoy his Begum.
   (D) He was convinced that the money belonged to the people.
   (E) None of these

3. The demand of the queen was that the.....
   (A) Sultan should earn his own livelihood
   (B) money in the treasury should not be distributed to the poor
   (C) Sultan should employ a maid-servant
   (D) Sultan should help her in her household duties

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Directions (11-13): *Choose the word which is most nearly the* ***SAME*** *in meaning as the word given in* ***bold*** *as used in the passage.*

11. Severe

(A) sad (B) serious (C) deep
(D) bad (E) intense

12. Quiet

(A) sorry (B) kind (C) grim
(D) peaceful (E) silent

13. Muttered

(A) apologised (B) grumbled (C) thought
(D) addressed (E) reminded

Directions (14-15): *Choose the word which is most* ***OPPOSITE*** *in meaning of the word given in* ***bold*** *as used in the passage.*

14. Just

(A) unbiased (B) only (C) cruel
(D) unfair (E) foolish

15. Lavishly

(A) miserly (B) minutely (C) extravagantly
(D) financially (E) doubtfully

Directions (16-20): *Pick out the most effective word from the given words to fill in the blank to make the sentence complete.*

16. For a few seconds, Sudin was.....blinded by the powerful lights of the oncoming car.

(A) totally (B) greatly (C) powerfully
(D) largely (E) heavily

17. The investigating officers went.....several files after raiding the place.

(A) into (B) between (C) for
(D) through (E) under

18. Although Sadhana stays with that family, she is not.....to them.

(A) alike (B) similar (C) related
(D) indifferent (E) affected

19. The children.....crackers to celebrate the victory of their team.

(A) released (B) fired (C) shot
(D) broke (E) burst

20. The sea-waves continuously dashed.....the rocks.

(A) of (B) against (C) from
(D) through (E) toward

Directions (21-25): *In each sentence below, one word has been printed in* ***bold****. Below the sentence, five words are suggested, one of which can*

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

*replace the word printed in **bold** without changing the meaning of the sentence. Find out the appropriate word in each case.*

21. These goods have to be **transported** to a foreign country.

(A) travelled (B) shipped (C) exchanged
(D) sent (E) flown

22. The committee did not find him **fit** for the teaching job.

(A) correct (B) fixed (C) genuine
(D) selected (E) suitable

23. Our talks with the foreign delegation were really **productive**.

(A) fruitful (B) growing (C) efficient
(D) cheerful (E) lengthy

24. Even though Akhilesh does not study hard, he always **comes** first in his class.

(A) arrives (B) completes (C) ends
(D) stands (E) scores

25. It **seems** that he had no intention of hurting us.

(A) looks (B) believes (C) appears.
(D) stands (E) scores

Directions (26-35): *Read each sentence to find out whether there is any error in it. The error, if any, will be in one part of the sentence. The number of that part is the answer. If there is no error, the answer is "E". (Ignore the errors of punctuation, if any).*

26. The train was (A)/moving so fast (B)/that we could not see (C)/the places properly. (D)/No error (E)

27. Meenakshi's performance in the (A)/film was better than (B)/Sangeeta's but not (C)/so better as Madhuri's. (D)/No error (E)

28. The policemen fired all the (A)/students when (B)/they were attacked (C)/by some of them. (D)/No error (E)

29. Poonam used to (A)/work for almost ten (B)/hours in the organisation (C)/where she has employed. (D)/No error (E)

30. They usually comes (A)/to our house (B)/whenever they pass (C)/ through our home-town. (D)/No error (E)

31. Although the patient (A)/was rude with the (B)/nurses, he behaved (C)/nice with the doctor. (D)/No error (E)

32. Sachin is so best (A)/a player that (B)/he would be certainly (C)/ included in the team. (D)/No error (E)

33. He interrupted me when (A)/I was to about (B)/tell the truth (C)/to his father. (D)/No error (E)

34. The boys are playing (A)/outside the house whereas (B)/the girls are sitting (C)/inside and talked loudly. (D)/No error (E)

35. The driver could not (A)/prevent the car from hit (B)/the child although he (C)/applied the brakes suddenly. (D)/No error (E)

Directions (36-45): *In the following passage there are blanks, each of which has been numbered. These numbers are printed below the passage and against each, five words are suggested, one of which fits the blank appropriately in the context of the whole passage. Find out the appropriate words.*

They kept the baby in the basket and swam far (36) the sea. The strong waves set the basket in (37) and tossed it about till it reached the old stork (38) the fisherman returned in the evening, the stork pushed the basket (39) him as if saying, "I have a gift for you!". The fisherman gladly (40) up the baby and took it home. He hugged the baby and quickly (41) it into the cradle. The fisherman had the naming (42) for the baby. The baby (43) called 'Laxmi'. Many women were present on the occasion. One of (44) could not help commenting, "The baby is lovely but (45) its tail".

36. (A) into (B) to (C) about (D) on (E) with
37. (A) turn (B) water (C) motion (D) jerk (E) upward
38. (A) then (B) on (C) there (D) when (E) hence
39. (A) for (B) towards (C) from (D) above (E) below
40. (A) picked (B) kicked (C) pushed (D) threw (E) jumped
41. (A) dropped (B) covered (C) took (D) hid (E) put
42. (A) ceremony (B) tradition (C) occasion (D) festival (E) fair
43. (A) have (B) had (C) was (D) is (E) has
44. (A) those (B) all (C) who (D) their (E) them
45. (A) on (B) in (C) to (D) for (E) with

Directions (46-50): *Rearrange the following five sentences* (A), (B), (C), (D) *and* (E) *in the proper sequence so as to form a meaningful paragraph; then answer the questions given below them:*

(A) When he reached home, he found his father hale and hearty.
(B) He decided to rush home after finishing some urgent work.
(C) Suresh received a telegram saying that his father was sick.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

(D) He realised that it was a trick played by someone.
(E) In a few hours, he boarded the train for his home-town.

46. Which sentence should come **FIRST** in the paragraph?
(A) A (B) B (C) C (D) D (E) E

47. Which sentence should come **SECOND** in the paragraph?
(A) A (B) B (C) C (D) D (E) E

48. Which sentence should come **THIRD** in the paragraph?
(A) A (B) B (C) C (D) D (E) E

49. Which sentence should come **FOURTH** in the paragraph?
(A) A (B) B (C) C (D) D (E) E

50. Which sentence should come **LAST** in the paragraph?
(A) A (B) B (C) C (D) D (E) E

ANSWERS

SET 1

1. (B) immediately took off
2. (D)
3. (C) food into small cubes
4. (D) *Note:* "out of service" is an idiom. It means something which is no longer in use.
5. (C) stake in the country
6. (B) but to carry out
7. (C) from 8 in the morning to 5 in the evening
8. (C) and becomes its friend
9. (C) was drowned in the sea
10. (A) Neither of them is

11. (B) 12. (D) 13. (C) 14. (B)

15. (B) *Note:* politeness demands that you put yourself last.

16. (B) 17. (B) 18. (C) 19. (C) 20. (A)
21. (C) 22. (B) 23. (C) 24. (B) 25. (B)
26. (A) 27. (C) 28. (A) 29. (A) 30. (A)
31. (B) 32. (D)

33. (B) SRPQ 34. (C) QSRP 35. (A) PQRS
36. (D) RPQS 37. (A) RSPQ 38. (A) RSPQ
39. (C) PRQS 40. (D) QSPR 41. (B) SPRQ
42. (C) RPSQ 43. (B) QSRP 44. (B) RSQP

45. (B) 46. (B) 47. (C) 48. (A) 49. (B)
50. (C)

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

SET 2

1. (A)	2. (C)	3. (C)	4. (B)	5. (B)
6. (C)	7. (A)	8. (A)	9. (C)	10. (D)
11. (B)	12. (C)	13. (B)	14. (A)	15. (A)
16. (D)	17. (A)	18. (D)	19. (B)	20. (C)
21. (B)	22. (D)	23. (B)	24. (A)	25. (B)
26. (D)	27. (A)	28. (A)	29. (C)	30. (C)
31. (A)	32. (C)	33. (D)	34. (B)	35. (D)
36. (A)	37. (B)	38. (B)	39. (A)	40. (C)
41. (C)	42. (B)	43. (C)	44. (B)	45. (D)
46. (A)	47. (D)	48. (D)	49. (C)	50. (C)

Explanatory Notes

1. Use 'I' for 'me', Preposition is always followed by pronoun in objective case.
2. Substitute 'he shouts more' by 'the more he shouts'.
3. Change 'came of' to 'came off' (It means 'got separated'.)
4. Remove either 'suppose' or 'if' because both mean the same here.
5. Change 'has' to 'had'.
11. Correct spelling: 'Occasion'.
12. Correct spelling: 'Offence'.
13. Correct spelling: 'Suppression'.
14. Correct spelling: 'Beginning'.
15. Correct spelling: 'Embarrassment'.

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

SET 3

1. (B)	2. (C)	3. (D)	4. (B)	5. (C)
6. (C)	7. (B)	8. (C)	9. (B)	10. (B)
11. (C)	12. (B)	13. (B)	14. (C)	15. (B)
16. (C)	17. (C)	18. (A)	19. (C)	20. (C)
21. (B)	22. (D)	23. (D)	24. (B)	25. (C)
26. (B)	27. (A)	28. (C)	29. (B)	30. (D)
31. (B)	32. (A)	33. (A)	34. (A)	35. (C)
36. (D)	37. (C)	38. (A)	39. (D)	40. (B)
41. (B)	42. (D)	43. (B)	44. (B)	45. (B)
46. (B)	47. (C)	48. (D)	49. (B)	50. (D)
51. (A)	52. (B)	53. (D)	54. (C)	55. (D)
56. (C)	57. (D)	58. (B)	59. (C)	60. (C)
61. (B)	62. (D)	63. (C)	64. (B)	65. (D)
66. (B)	67. (C)	68. (B)	69. (D)	70. (B)
71. (B)	72. (D)	73. (A)	74. (C)	75. (B)
76. (D)	77. (C)	78. (C)	79. (D)	80. (D)
81. (C)	82. (D)	83. (D)	84. (C)	85. (A)

86. (D)	87. (D)	88. (B)	89. (D)	90. (C)
91. (B)	92. (C)	93. (D)	94. (D)	95. (A)

SET 4

1. (B)	2. (A)	3. (E)	4. (E)	5. (C)
6. (A)	7. (C)	8. (C)	9. (D)	10. (A)
11. (E)	12. (D)	13. (B)	14. (C)	15. (B)
16. (A)	17. (A)	18. (B)	19. (C)	20. (A)
21. (C)	22. (D)	23. (D)	24. (E)	25. (A)
26. (A)	27. (E)	28. (C)	29. (D)	30. (B)
31. (A)	32. (C)	33. (E)	34. (D)	35. (B)
36. (A)	37. (D)	38. (E)	39. (C)	40. (B)
41. (A)	42. (E)	43. (D)	44. (B)	45. (C)
46. (E)	47. (C)	48. (E)	49. (E)	50. (C)

Explanatory Notes

16. Change 'mentioned' to 'said'.
17. Change 'contribution' to 'contributions'.
18. Change 'Write of' to 'Write off'.
19. Delete 'quite' before 'well' since it is redundant here.
20. Change 'Having his breakfast finish' to 'Having finished his breakfast'.
21. Change 'worse' to 'the worst'.
22. Change 'favours' to 'favour' because the subject 'members' is plural.
23. Substitute 'have' by 'be'.
24. The sentence is correct.
25. Change 'What does a person do' to 'What a person does.'
47. Substitute 'experts' by 'excerpts'.
50. Change 'wide' to 'widely'.

SET 5

1. (C)	2. (A)	3. (D)	4. (E)	5. (A)
6. (D)	7. (A)	8. (B)	9. (C)	10. (D)
11. (E)	12. (B)	13. (B)	14. (C)	15. (E)

16. (2) 'award than there'
17. (5) No error
18. (4) 'being used'
19. (4) 'for ten years'
20. (1) 'as soon as the'
21. (3) 'anything that' or 'whatever'
22. (1) 'from thirty to'
23. (1) 'faster than'
24. (5) No error
25. (2) 'discussed' (delete 'which was')

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

26. (B)	27. (C)	28. (C)	29. (D)	30. (E)
31. (D)	32. (E)	33. (B)	34. (C)	35. (D)
36. (D)	37. (A)	38. (B)	39. (C)	40. (B)
41. (D)	42. (D)	43. (C)	44. (C)	45. (E)
46. (C)	47. (E)	48. (B)	49. (A)	50. (D)

SET 6

1. (B)	2. (C)	3. (C)	4. (B)	5. (A)
6. (B)	7. (D)	8. (D)		

9. (B): *Note:* In this sentence alternatives (A) and (C) fill in the blank but (B) is the most appropriate because the speaker is talking about his present situation.

10. (C)	11. (A)	12. (D)	13. (B)	14. (A)
15. (C)	16. (C)	17. (B)	18. (A)	19. (D)
20. (A)				

21. (B): that he could

22. (C): since his mother

23. (A): Sarita was so popular

24. (B): comes on televison

25. (A): Prakash led. *Note:* the sentence is perfectly correct. However, since no 'no error" number is given, we are compelled to change part (A).

26. (C)	27. (A)	28. (D)

29. (C): *Note:* there is no feminine gender for 'prosecutor'. The nearest is (B).

30. (A)	31. (C)	32. (A)	33. (B)	34. (C)
35. (C)	36. (D)	37. (C)	38. (B)	39. (B)
40. (A)				

SET 7

1. (B)	2. (D)	3. (C)	4. (B)	5. (C)
6. (A)	7. (E)	8. (D)	9. (D)	10. (E)
11. (E)	12. (E)	13. (B)	14. (D)	15. (A)
16. (A)	17. (D)	18. (C)	19. (E)	20. (B)
21. (D)	22. (E)	23. (A)	24. (D)	25. (C)
26. (E)	27. (D)	28. (A)	29. (D)	30. (A)
31. (D)	32. (A)	33. (B)	34. (D)	35. (B)
36. (B)	37. (C)	38. (D)	39. (B)	40. (A)
41. (E)	42. (A)	43. (C)	44. (E)	45. (D)
46. (C)	47. (B)	48. (E)	49. (A)	50. (D)

EXPLANATORY NOTES

26. (E) The sentence is correct.

27. (D) change 'better' into 'good' because if the comparison is between two persons or things in the positive degree, we use the construction:

'Subject + Verb + as + Positive Dergee + as .....'

If the sentence is negative, we use the construction:

"Subject + Verb 'to be' + not + so/as + Positive Degree + as..."

28. (A) Use 'at' after 'fired' because we 'fire at somebody/something'.

29. (D) Substitute 'has' by 'was' because part I of the sentence 'Poonam used to' is in the past tense.

30. (A) Change 'comes' into 'come' because the subject of the sentence 'They' is plural.

31. (D) Change 'nice' into 'nicely' because we want to modify the verb 'behaved' for which we should use an adverb.

32. (A) Change 'best' into 'good'. Refer to explanation No 27-(D).

33. (B) 'To' should be used not before but after 'about' because the construction is—

'Subject + verb 'to be' + about + to + V'.

34. (D) Change 'talked' into 'talking' because when two main verbs follow an auxiliary verb, they remain in the same form.

35. (B) Change 'hit' into 'hitting' because if a main verb is used after the prepositions like 'in, on, before, after, by, from, etc., it remains in the present participle form.

□

FB Page: @CSSExamPoint

Brush Up Your English is a book for those preparing for competitive examinations. Focus on grammar, help on vocabulary and common errors, and so on, are followed by exercises that provide extensive practice.

Bharti Bhawan